
OWNER'S MANUAL

Operation

Maintenance

Specifications

All information in this Owner's Manual is current at the time of publication. However, Genesis Branded Vehicle reserves the right to make changes at any time so that our policy of continual product improvement may be carried out.

This manual applies to all models of this vehicle and includes descriptions and explanations of optional as well as standard equipment.

As a result, you may find material in this manual that does not apply to your specific vehicle.

Please note that some models are equipped with Right-Hand Drive (RHD). The explanations and illustrations for some operations in RHD models are opposite of those written in this manual.

CAUTION: MODIFICATIONS TO YOUR GENESIS BRANDED VEHICLE

Your Genesis Branded Vehicle should not be modified in any way. Such modifications may adversely affect the performance, safety or durability of your Genesis Branded Vehicle and may, in addition, violate conditions of the limited warranties covering the vehicle. Certain modifications may also be in violation of regulations established by the Department of Transportation and other government agencies in your country.

WARNING! (IF EQUIPPED)

The vehicle is equipped with a device of the system Pan-European eCall which calls emergency services. Any self-or unauthorised interference in the system Pan-European eCall in vehicle systems and its components, installing of equipment which is not recommended by vehicle manufacturer and/or in authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products can cause incorrect operation (of the device of) the system Pan-European eCall making erroneous calls, causing failure of the device (in cars) in case of traffic accident or other accidents, when you need emergency care.
This may be dangerous and threaten your life!

HYUNDAI MOTOR COMPANY

Copyright 2025 Hyundai Motor Company. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in any retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of Hyundai Motor Company.

SAFETY AND VEHICLE DAMAGE WARNING

Your safety, and the safety of others are very important. This Owner's Manual provides you with many safety precautions and operating procedures. This information alerts you to potential hazards that may hurt you or others, and may damage your vehicle.

Safety messages found on vehicle labels and in this manual describe these hazards and what to do to avoid or reduce the risks.

Warnings and instructions contained in this manual are for your safety. Failure to follow safety warnings and instructions can lead to serious injury or death.

Throughout this manual WARNING, CAUTION, NOTICE, and the SAFETY ALERT SYMBOL  will be used.

Obey all safety messages that follow this symbol to avoid possible injury or death. The safety alert symbol precedes the signal words WARNING and CAUTION.



WARNING

WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.



CAUTION

CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE

NOTICE indicates a situation which, if not avoided, could result in vehicle damage.

Table of Contents

1. Introduction	1
2. Picture index	5
Exterior overview (Front view)	5
Exterior overview (Rear view)	7
Interior overview	8
Centre console overview	10
Steering wheel control overview	12
Motor compartment overview	13
3. Seats and Safety system	15
Important safety precautions	15
Seats overview	17
Adjusting front seats	20
Adjusting rear seats	32
Head restraints	35
Seat warmer and air ventilation seat	41
Seat belts	44
Child Restraint System (CRS)	55
Airbag - supplemental restraint system	66
Airbag operating conditions	79
4. Instrument cluster	85
Instrument cluster overview	85
Gauges and meters	88
Warnings and indicators	94
Cluster display settings	115
5. Convenience features	121
Smart key	121
Genesis digital key	128
Fingerprint authentication system	141
Face connect	145
Door locks	149
Rear Occupant Alert (ROA)	157
Advanced Rear Occupant Alert (ROA)	158
Theft-alarm system	162
Integrated Memory System (IMS)	165
Steering wheel	168
Mirrors	173

Digital Side Mirror (DSM)	183
Windows	190
Vision roof	194
Bonnet	197
Power tailgate	200
Smart tailgate	207
Head-Up Display (HUD)	209
Vehicle system Over-the-Air (OTA) update	212
Exterior lights	215
High Beam Assist (HBA)	222
Intelligent Front-lighting System (IFS)	225
Interior lights	229
Wipers and washers	235
Automatic climate control system	238
Windscreen defrosting and defogging	252
Climate control additional features	254
Storage compartment	259
Interior features	263
Exterior features	275
Infotainment system	276
Using V2L function	281
Aux. Battery Saver+	287

6. Driving your vehicle 289

Before driving	289
Understanding your electric vehicle	291
Using Electric Vehicle functions	295
Charging your electric vehicle	307
Start/Stop button	326
Gear shifting	331
Regenerative braking system (paddle shifter)	339
Smart regeneration system	343
Braking system	350
All Wheel Drive (AWD)	364
Electronic control suspension	369
Electronically controlled suspension with road preview	370
Electronic limited slip differential	372
Drive mode integrated control system	373
Virtual Gear Shift (VGS)	376
Boost mode	378

Drift mode	379
Active Air Flap (AAF)	380
Road active noise control	381
Active sound design	382
Special driving conditions	383
Trailer towing	390

7. Driver assistance system 397

Driver assistance system information	397
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)	403
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)	420
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)	424
Safe Exit Warning (SEW)	432
Safe Exit Assist (SEA)	435
Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA)	438
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA)	440
Driver Attention Warning (DAW)	445
Forward Attention Warning (FAW)	450
Blind-Spot View Monitor (BVM)	453
Smart Cruise Control (SCC)	455
Emergency Stop (ES)	468
Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control (NSCC)	470
Lane Following Assist (LFA)	475
Highway Driving Assist (HDA)	479
Rear View Monitor (RVM)	489
Surround View Monitor (SVM)	493
Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA)	498
Parking Distance Warning (PDW)	504
Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist (PCA)	508
Remote Smart Parking Assist 2 (RSPA 2)	514
Sensor information	535
Declaration of conformity	540

8. Emergency situations 541

Hazard warning flasher	541
In case of vehicle malfunction	542
Towing	560
Countermeasures for accidents or fire	563
Emergency commodity	565
Pan-European eCall System	567

9. Maintenance	575
Important safety precautions	575
Maintenance services	576
Owner maintenance	577
Motor compartment	579
Vehicle inspection and maintenance	580
Fuses	602
LED Lights	617
Appearance care	627
10. Vehicle information	635
Vehicle specifications	635
Vehicle load limit	640
Vehicle identifications	642
Vehicle data collection and event data recorders	645
Declaration of conformity	646
Importer information (for Europe)	647
Importer Information For United Kingdom	648
Open source software notice	649
Manufacturer Information for Antenna	650

1. Introduction

Congratulations, and thank you for choosing Genesis Branded Vehicle. We are pleased to welcome you to the growing number of discerning people who drive Genesis Branded Vehicle. We are very proud of the advanced engineering and high-quality construction of each Genesis Branded Vehicle we build.

Your Owner's Manual will introduce you to the features and operation of your new Genesis Branded Vehicle. To become familiar with your new Genesis Branded Vehicle, so that you can fully enjoy it, read this Owner's Manual carefully before driving your new vehicle.

This manual contains important safety information and instructions intended to familiarize you with your vehicles controls and safety features so you can safely operate your vehicle.

This manual also contains information on maintenance designed to enhance safe operation of the vehicle. It is recommended that all service and maintenance on your car be performed by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products. An authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products are prepared to provide high-quality service, maintenance and any other assistance that may be required.

This Owner's Manual should be considered a permanent part of your vehicle, and should be kept in the vehicle so you can refer to it at any time. The manual should stay with the vehicle if you sell it to provide the next owner with important operating, safety and maintenance information.

Vehicle modifications



WARNING

If you use unauthorised electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge and fire. For your safety, do not use unauthorised electronic devices.

NOTICE

Some vehicle interior sounds (including welcome sound, navigation alerts, or warning sounds) may be generated from the interior speakers and amplifier. Do not replace these components with anything other than the original Genesis/Hyundai factory parts. Any unauthorised product may cause a malfunction of the vehicle interior sounds that may affect the intended operation of the vehicle.

Two-way radio or mobile telephone installation

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic components. It is possible for an improperly installed/adjusted two-way radio or mobile telephone to adversely affect electronic systems. For this reason, we recommend that you carefully follow the radio manufacturer's instructions or consult your authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products for precautionary measures or special instructions if you choose to install one of these devices.

Vehicle handling instructions

Specific design characteristics (higher ground clearance, track, etc.) give this vehicle a higher centre of gravity than other types of vehicles. In other words they are not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional 2-wheel drive vehicles. Avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres. Failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover. For more information, refer to the **Reducing the risk of rollover**.

Returning used vehicles (for Europe)

Genesis Branded Vehicle promotes an environmentally sound treatment for end of life vehicles and offers to take back your Genesis Branded Vehicle end of life vehicles in accordance with the European Union (EU) End of Life Vehicles Directive.

You can get detailed information from your national Genesis Branded Vehicle homepage.

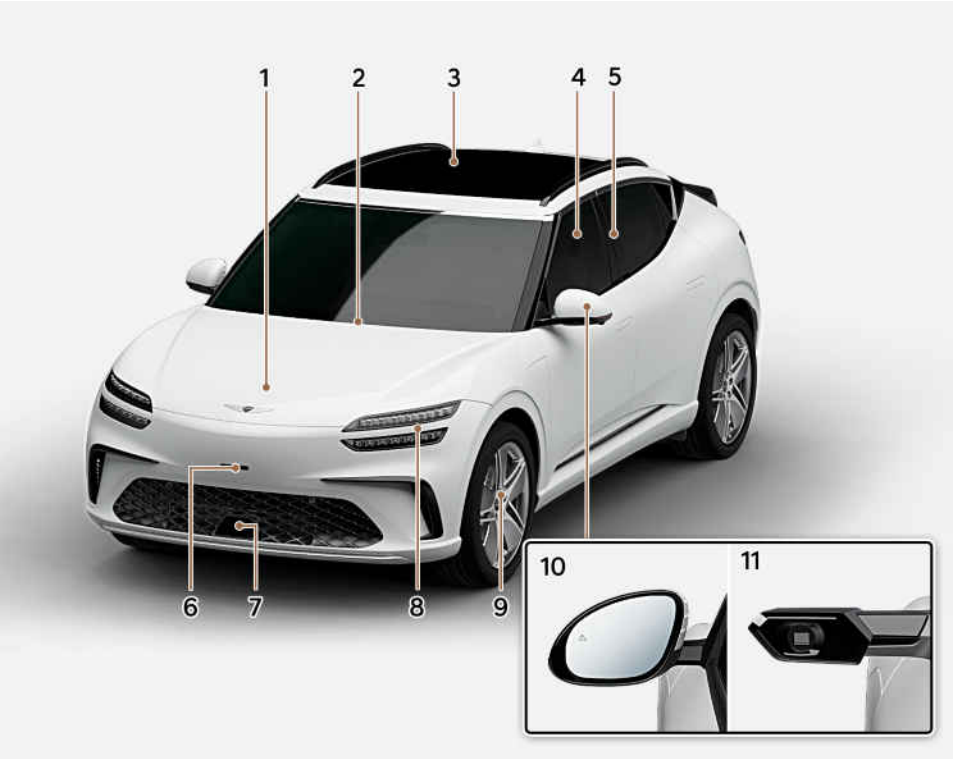
2. Picture index

This chapter shows the names of the vehicle components and the locations of the control systems.

Information

- The illustrations are shown as a guide. The actual shape may differ from the illustration.
- The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

Exterior overview (Front view)



1. Bonnet.....	197
2. Front windscreen wiper blades	235,585
3. Vision roof.....	194
4. Windows	190
5. Face Connect	145
6. Wide-front view camera	493,508,514
7. Front radar	403,455,479

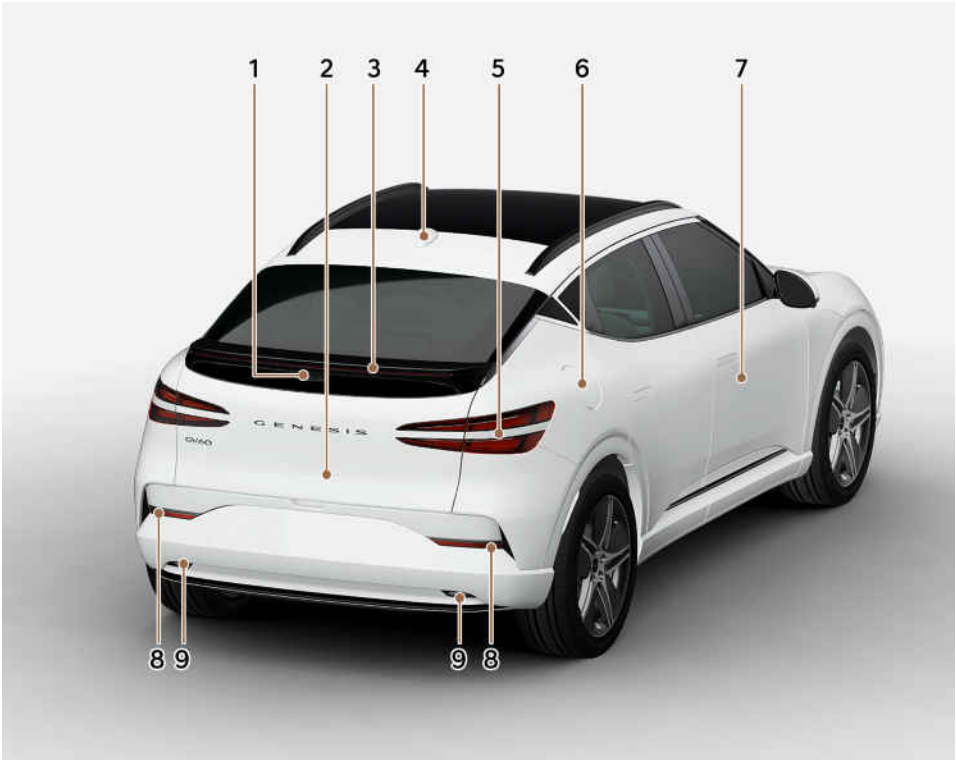
8. Headlight 215,618

9. Tyres and wheels 592

10.Outside rearview mirror 178

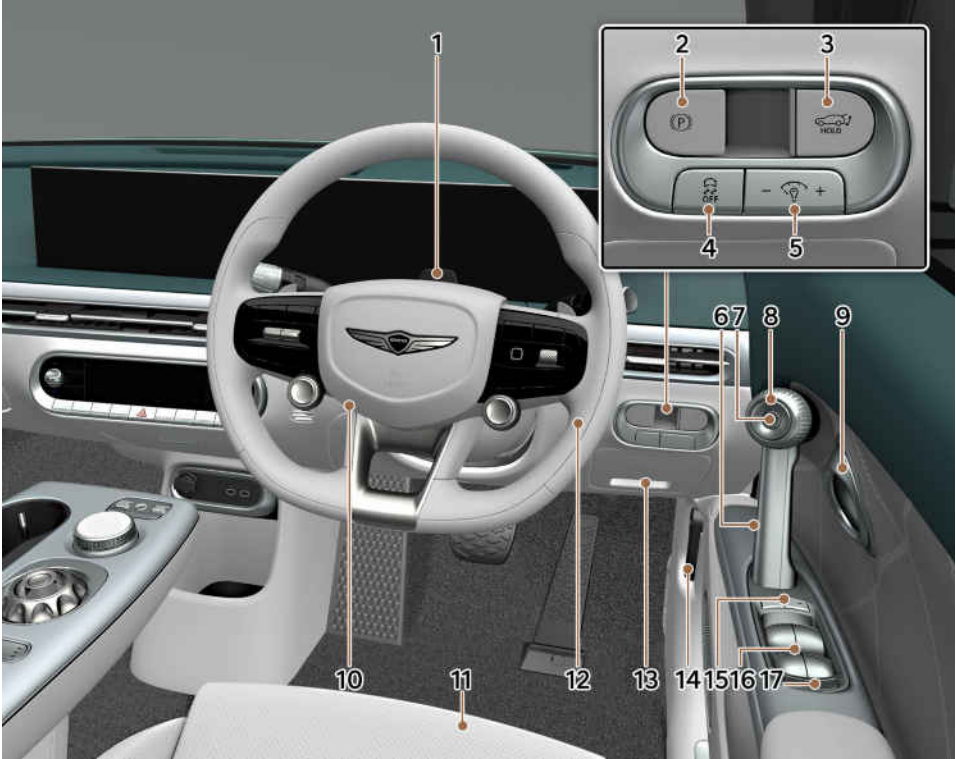
11.Digital side mirror (DSM) 183

Exterior overview (Rear view)



1. Wide-rear view camera	489,493,508,514
2. Power tailgate	200
3. High mounted stop lamp	620
4. Antenna	277
5. Rear combination lamp	215,620
6. Charging door	316
7. Door	149
8. Rear turn signal light	620
9. Reverse guide light	620
10. Rear fog light	620

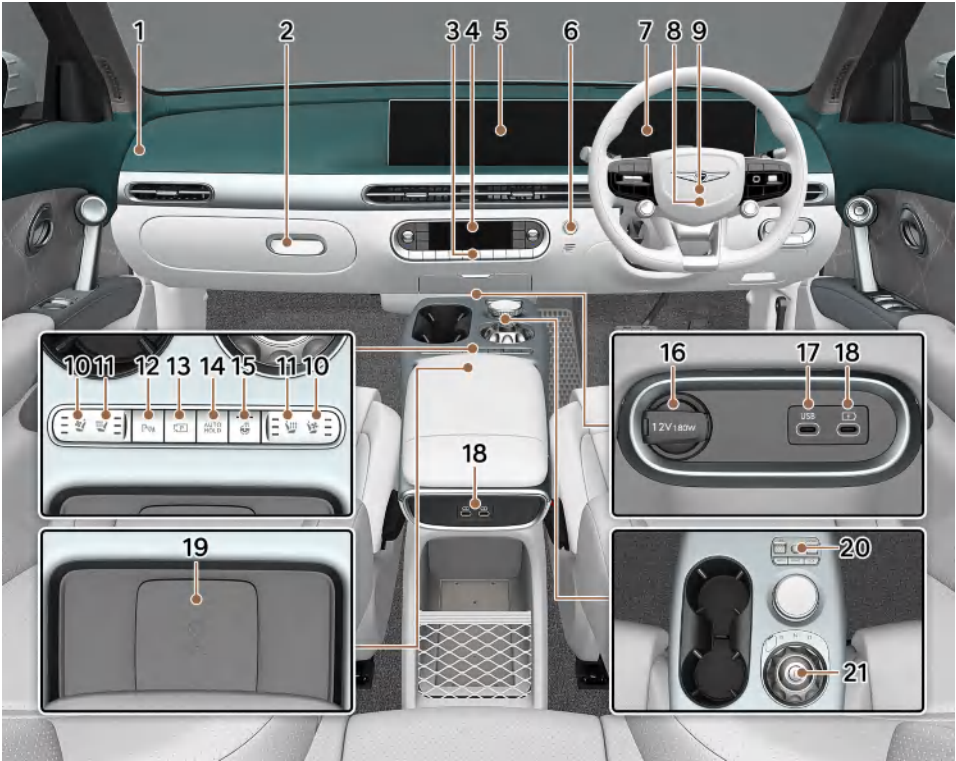
Interior overview



1. In-cabin camera	450
2. EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) switch	351
3. Power tailgate open/close button	200
4. ESC (Electronic Stability Control) OFF button.....	357
5. Instrument panel illumination control button.....	86
6. Integrated memory system button.....	165
7. Outside rearview mirror folding button.....	180
8. Outside rearview mirror control knob	179
9. Inside door handle.....	151
10. Seats	17
11. Steering wheel tilt/telescopic switch	168
12. Steering wheel.....	168
13. Fuse box	602
14. Bonnet release lever	197
15. Central door lock switch.....	152
16. Power window switches.....	190

17.Power window lock button, Electronic child safety lock button 192, 155

Centre console overview



1. Passenger's front air bag.....	73
2. Glove box.....	260
3. Hazard warning flasher button.....	541
4. Automatic climate control system.....	238
5. Infotainment system.....	276
6. Start/Stop button.....	326
7. Instrument cluster.....	85
8. Driver's front air bag	73
9. Horn	172
10. Air ventilation seat	43
11. Seat Warmer	42
12. Parking Safety button.....	504, 508
13. Parking/View button.....	489, 493, 514
14. Auto Hold button	354
15. Heated steering wheel button	170
16. Power outlet	265

17.USB port..... 279

18.USB charger..... 266

19.Wireless charging system..... 267

20.Fingerprint authentication system 141

21.Rotary shifter (Rotary gear shift dial) 331

Steering wheel control overview



1. Lighting control lever	215
2. Wiper and washer control lever	235
3. Paddle shifter	339
4. Driving Assist button	456
5. Cluster display control	115
6. Vehicle Distance button	457
7. Lane Driving Assist button	420, 475
8. Drive mode button	373
9. Voice recognition button	280
10. Optical mouse	277
11. Audio remote control buttons	277
12. Bluetooth® hands-free phone button	279
13. Mode button	277
14. Boost mode button	378

Motor compartment overview

For more information, refer to the **Motor compartment**.

3. Seats and Safety system

This chapter explains how to use the seats and safety systems installed in the vehicle.

Information

- The illustrations are shown as a guide. The actual shape may differ from the illustration.
 - The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.
 - The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.
-

Important safety precautions

You will find many safety precautions and recommendations throughout this section, and throughout this manual. The safety precautions in this section are among the most important.

Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of accidents. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not to replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, always make sure you and your passengers wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

Restrain all children

All children under age 13 should ride in your vehicle properly restrained in a rear seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in an appropriate Child Restraint System. Larger children should use a booster seat with the lap/shoulder belt until they can use the seat belt properly without a booster seat.

Airbag hazards

Whilst airbags can save lives, they can also cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or who are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk of being injured by an inflating airbag. Follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

Driver distraction

Driver distraction presents a serious and potentially deadly danger, especially for inexperienced drivers. Safety should be the primary concern when behind the wheel and drivers need to be aware of the wide array of potential distractions, such as drowsiness, reaching for objects, eating, personal grooming, other passengers, and using mobile phones.

Drivers can become distracted when they take their eyes and attention off the road or their hands off the wheel to focus on activities other than driving. To reduce your risk of distraction and an accident:

- Set up your mobile devices (for example, MP3 players, phones, navigation units, etc.) ONLY when your vehicle is parked or safely stopped.

- ONLY use your mobile device when allowed by laws and conditions permit safe use. NEVER text or email whilst driving. Most countries have laws prohibiting drivers from texting. Some countries and cities also prohibit drivers from using handheld phones.
- NEVER let the use of a mobile device distract you from driving. You have a responsibility to your passengers and others on the road to always drive safely, with your hands on the wheel as well as your eyes and attention on the road.

Never drink or take drugs and drive

Drinking alcohol or taking drugs can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions and emergencies. Do not drink or take drugs and drive, and do not let your friends drink or take drugs and drive.

Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

Seats overview

Safety precautions

Adjusting the seats so that you are sitting in a safe and comfortable position plays an important role for the safety of the driver and passengers, as much as seat belts and airbags when in an accident.



WARNING

Do not use a cushion that reduces friction between the seat and the passenger. The passenger's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt during an accident or a sudden stop.

Serious or fatal internal injuries could result because the seat belt cannot operate properly.

Airbags

You can take steps to reduce the risk of being injured by an inflating airbag. Sitting too close to an airbag greatly increases the risk of injury in the event the airbag inflates. Move your seat as far back as possible from front airbags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.



WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating airbag:

- Adjust the driver's seat as far to the rear as possible whilst maintaining your ability to control the vehicle.
 - Adjust the front passenger seat as far to the rear as possible.
 - Hold the steering wheel by the rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to minimise the risk of injuries to your hands and arms.
 - Never place anything or anyone between you and the airbag.
 - Do not allow the front passenger to place feet or legs on the dashboard to minimise the risk of leg injuries.
-

Seat belts

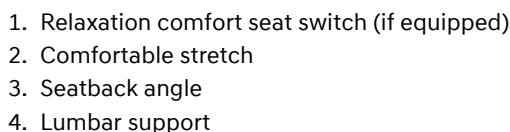
Always fasten your seat belt before starting any trip. At all times, passengers should sit upright and be properly restrained with a seat belt. Infants and small children must be restrained in appropriate Child Restraint Systems. Children who have outgrown a booster seat and adults must be restrained using the seat belts.



- Never use one seat belt for more than one occupant.
- Always position the seatback upright with the lap portion of the seat belt snug and low across the hips.
- Never allow children or small infants to ride on a passenger's lap.
- Do not route the seat belt across your neck, across sharp edges, or reroute the shoulder strap away from your body.
- Do not allow the seat belt to become caught or jammed.

Familiarize yourself with seat control switches and adjust the seat position, angle, height, etc., before driving.

- When adjusting the seat, refer to the **Safety precautions**.



5. Seatback bolster
6. Seat sliding forward or rearward/Seat height/Seat cushion angle
7. Seat cushion extension/Seat cushion support
8. Relaxation comfort seat switch
9. Walk-in seat switch
10. Air ventilation seat
11. Seat warmer
12. Seat warmer
13. Seatback angle
14. Armrest
15. Head restraint

Information

Select **Setup** > **Vehicle** > **Seats** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system, you may use various convenience functions.

For more information, refer to the **Seat easy access operation**.

Adjusting front seats

Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so that you can easily control the steering wheel, foot pedals and controls on the instrument panel.



WARNING

Take the following precautions when adjusting your seat:

- NEVER attempt to adjust the seat whilst the vehicle is moving. The seat could respond with unexpected movement and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.
 - Do not place anything under the front seats. Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, causing an accident.
 - Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position and proper locking of the seatback.
 - Do not place a cigarette lighter on the floor or seat. When you operate the seat, gas may exit out of the lighter causing a fire.
 - Use extreme caution when picking up small objects trapped under the seats or between the seat and the centre console. Your hands might be cut or injured by the sharp edges of the seat mechanism.
 - If there are occupants in the rear seats, be careful whilst adjusting the front seat position.
 - Make sure that the seat is locked in place after the adjustment. If not, the seat might move unexpectedly resulting in an accident.
 - NEVER ride with a reclined seatback when the vehicle is moving.
 - Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop.
 - Driver and passengers should ALWAYS sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.
-



CAUTION

To prevent injury:

- Do not adjust your seat whilst wearing your seat belt. Moving the seat cushion forward may cause strong pressure on your abdomen.
 - Do not allow your hands or fingers to get caught in the seat mechanisms whilst the seat is moving.
-

Reclining seatback

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the protections of your restraint system (seat belts and airbags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seatback.

Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. When the seatback is reclined, the shoulder belt cannot do its job because it will not be snug against your chest. Instead, it will be in front of you. During an accident, you could be thrown into the seat belt, causing neck or other injuries.

The more the seatback is reclined, the greater chance the passenger's hips will slide under the lap belt or the passenger's neck will strike the shoulder belt.

Power adjustment

The front seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the outside of the seat cushion.



WARNING

NEVER allow children in the vehicle unattended. The power seats are operable when the vehicle is turned off.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the seats:

- Always stop adjusting the seats when the seat has moved as far forward or rearward as possible.
- Do not adjust the seats for longer than necessary when the vehicle is turned off. This may result in unnecessary battery drain.
- Do not operate two or more seats at the same time. This may result in an electrical malfunction.

Forward and rearward adjustment



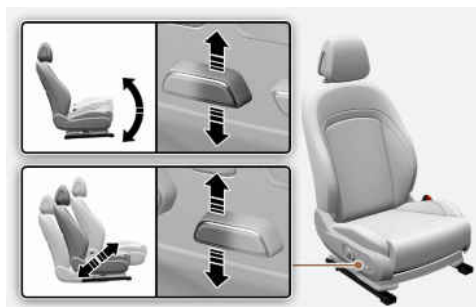
Push the control switch forward or rearward to adjust the seat to the desired position.

Seatback angle adjustment



Push the control switch forward or rearward to adjust the seatback angle.

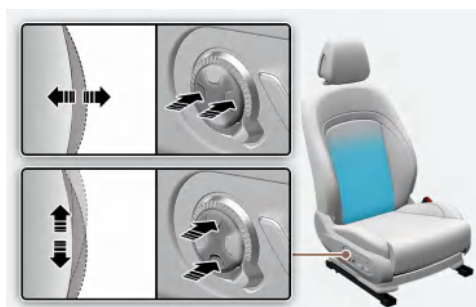
Seat cushion angle/height adjustment



Push the front or rear portion of the control switch up or down to control the seat cushion angle or height.

Lumbar support

 if equipped



Press the front or rear portion of the switch to increase or decrease lumbar support.
Press the top or bottom portion of the switch to move the support position up or down.

CAUTION

Do not continue to operate the lumbar support when the lumbar support provides its maximum support. Damage to the lumbar support motor could occur.

Seat bolster adjustment (for driver's seat)

 if equipped



Push the adjustment lever clockwise, the seatback bolster is adjusted inward.
Push the lever counterclockwise, the seatback bolster is adjusted outward.
Release the lever once the bolster reaches the desired position.

Seat cushion extension adjustment (for driver's seat)

 if equipped



Push the control switch forward or rearward.
Release the switch once the seat cushion reaches the desired length.

Seat cushion support adjustment (for driver's seat)

 if equipped



Push the control switch up to increase cushion support or down to decrease cushion support.

Release the switch once the seat cushion support reaches the desired position.

Relaxation comfort seat

 if equipped

Relaxation comfort seats help distribute body pressure and concentrated weight on specific body parts that occur whilst sitting in the same position for a long period of time. The seat helps relieve fatigue and discomfort by providing the optimal sit position.



CAUTION

Take the following precautions when using the relaxation comfort seat:

- Do not use the relaxation comfort seat whilst the vehicle is moving. Using the comfort seat could increase the risk of injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop.
- Do not use the relaxation comfort seat when the luggage or other objects are placed at the rear seat.
- Do not use the relaxation comfort seat whilst the vehicle is moving. Seat belts may not operate normally due to the lack of adherence between the shoulder belts and the body.
- Do not use the relaxation comfort seat when the rear seats are not in the rearmost position and upright.

Information

Press the auto return button to return to the original seat position after operating the Relaxation comfort seat.

Using the seat adjustment switch other than the auto return button may restrict the downward cushion movement.

Using the relaxation comfort seat



Press and hold the rear portion of the Relaxation mode switch with the Start/Stop button in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.

- The seat position, seatback angle, seat cushion height, and seat cushion angle moves to the relaxation position.

Information

- When relaxation comfort seat is activated, the seat cushion and seatback angle are adjusted automatically.
 - If the relaxation mode is operated unintentionally, use the seat adjustment switches to deactivate or control the seat.
 - In the following situation, the relaxation comfort seat does not return to the original position.
 - When the gear is not in P (Park) (Driver's seat)
 - When the vehicle speed is above 1.8 mph (3 km/h) (Driver's seat)
 - When the corresponding seat system needs to be initialized
-

Returning to the original seat position



Press and hold the front portion of the Relaxation mode switch to return the seat to the original position.

- The driver seat returns to the original position when the gear was in P (Park)
- Passenger seat returns to the original position

In the following situation, the relaxation comfort seat does not return to the original position.

- When the gear is not in P (Park) (Driver's seat)
- When the vehicle speed is above 3 mph (5 km/h) (Driver's seat)
- When the corresponding seat system needs to be initialized

NOTICE

- Only use the relaxation switch to stop using relaxation and return to the original position. The seat cushion may not move downward if you use other seat switches.
 - Do not use the seat switches simultaneously. It may damage the seat system.
-

Saving front passenger seat original position



To set the desired position for the front passenger seat, adjust the seat to your preferred position and then quickly press the front portion of the relaxation switch three times consecutively.

Resetting the Relaxation mode



WARNING

Before resetting the Relaxation mode, make sure there are no objects on or around the seat.

Driver's seat



- 1 With the Start/Stop button in the DRIVE READY position, shift to P (Park), and then open the driver's door.
- 2 Pull the driver's seat forward as far as possible, and adjust the seatback to the fully upright position.
- 3 Push the seat's forward/rearward switch towards the forward position and the seatback angle control switch towards the upright position, simultaneously for more than 2 seconds.
- 4 An audible warning sounds 3 times, and seat resetting begins.
- 5 The resetting process is complete after the seat, seatback angle, seat height and cushion tilt are returned to their original positions.

Conditions that disable resetting

The resetting process and audible warning stop, if:

- The driver's seat control switch is pressed,
- The vehicle speed increases to above 3 mph (5 km/h),
- The driver's door closes, or
- The Start/Stop button is changed to the OFF position.

Information

If the driver's seat position adjustment or audible warning stops during resetting, try resetting again.

For more information, refer to the **Integrated Memory System (IMS)**.

Passenger's seat



- 1 Press the following switches for about 5 seconds at the same time.
 - Push the seatback angle control switch rearward.
 - Push the seat height switch downward.
 - Press the front portion of the relaxation switch.
- 2 The seat position, seatback angle, seat cushion height, and seat cushion angle will automatically adjust in sequence.
 - Resetting is completed when all adjustments are made. If the seat control switch is operated, the resetting procedure may stop.

NOTICE

If resetting stops before the process is complete, restart the resetting procedure. The use of Relaxation mode may be limited if resetting has not been completed.

Information

After resetting is completed, adjust the seat to the desired position.

Ergo-motion seat (Driver's seat)

 if equipped

Select **Setup > Vehicle > Seats > Ergo-motion seat** from the infotainment system's Settings menu to select and set up supplemental functions.



WARNING

Before actually using each function, try the functions with the vehicle parked.

Comfortable stretch

Comfortable stretch is a function that helps relieve fatigue of the pelvis and lower back due to driving.



Every time you press the button, you may select a mode or turn off the function in the following order.

- Pelvic stretching: The cushion portion moves, helping the left and right movement of the pelvis.
- Lumbar stretching: The seatback portion moves, helping back and forth movement of the lower back.
- Whole Body stretching: The cushion and seatback moves in sequence, helping the whole body reduce fatigue.
- Off: Turns off Comfortable Stretch.

Also, you can change the operation intensity and operation time from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.

- Intensity: **Setup > Vehicle > Seats > Ergo-motion seat > Comfortable stretch > Intensity > High/Moderate**
- Time: **Setup > Vehicle > Seats > Ergo-motion seat > Comfortable stretch > Session length > Long (20 min)/Medium (15 min)/Short (10 min)**

Smart posture assist

After driving for an hour, Smart Posture Assist automatically adjusts the pelvis and back portion of the seat to assist the posture.

You can activate or deactivate Smart Posture Assist function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

Setup > Vehicle > Seats > Ergo-motion seat > Smart Posture Assist

Smart support

The seat bolster support increases when SPORT mode is selected for Drive Mode and when driving at high speed.

You can activate or deactivate Smart Support function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

Setup > Vehicle > Seats > Ergo-motion seat > Smart support

Pre-active Safety Seat (PSS)

 if equipped

Pre-active Safety Seat enhances crashworthiness and driving stability by pulling up the backrest before collision and hazardous situations when the passenger seat is reclined.



WARNING

Pre-active Safety Seat is a supplementary device. The drivers should keep their eyes on the road and verify that there are no obstructions ahead. If there is not a passenger or the seatbelt is not fastened, the system does not work. In addition, the seat belt interval is increased whilst a passenger's seat is reclined so that its performance might be degraded.

System Operation

- Crashworthiness

Pre-active Safety Seat limits passenger's movement and decreases the chance of injury from the early stage of collision by reducing the seat belt interval with putting the seat in the upright position. The operation conditions are as follows.

- It is considered as a risky situation due to emergency braking.
- It is considered as a dangerous situation due to the difficulties of vehicle operation.
- It is considered as a hazardous situation due to vehicle distance detection sensor.

- Driving stability

Pre-active Safety Seat pulls up the backset whilst sudden braking or rapid turning to boost the tightness of seat belt in order to prevent leaning forward or laterally and increase driving stability. The operation conditions are as follows.

- There is a leaning forward of the upper body due to sudden braking.
- There is a lateral leaning of the upper body because of rapid turning.
- Driving on the slippery frozen road
- Driving on the unpaved road
- High risk of rollover



WARNING

Whilst the system operates automatically, please do not be surprised or misunderstand it as a system failure.

- Inoperative status

If the passenger adjusts the seat manually, the system stops immediately.

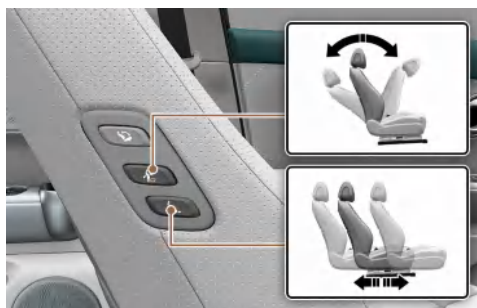
However, it restarts to operate after 5 seconds when the hazardous signal continues.

System Malfunction

If the Pre-active Safety Seat system does not operate properly, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Walk-in switch

 if equipped



Passengers may use the switches to control the front passenger seat.

- Press the front or rear portion of the switch to move the seat forward, rearward or adjust the seatback angle.



CAUTION

Do not adjust the front seat when a passenger is getting on or off the vehicle.

Seatback pocket



The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the front seatbacks.



WARNING

Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In an accident they could come loose from the pocket and injure occupants.

Adjusting rear seats

Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position for passengers or cargo.



WARNING

Take the following precautions:

- Adjusting the seats
 - NEVER attempt to adjust the seat whilst the vehicle is moving. The seat may suddenly move and may injure the passenger.
 - Make sure that the seat is locked in place after the adjustment. If not, the seat might move unexpectedly resulting in an accident.
 - Folding the seats
 - Do not fold the seatback when the seat is occupied (for example, passenger, pets or luggage). It may injure the passenger or pet, or damage the luggage.
 - Never allow passengers to sit on top of the folded down seatback whilst the vehicle is moving. This is not a proper seating position and no seat belts are available for use. This could result in serious injury or death in case of an accident or sudden stop.
 - Objects carried on the folded down seatback should not extend higher than the top of the front seatbacks. This could allow cargo to slide forward and cause injury or damage during sudden stops.
 - When returning the rear seatback from a folded to an upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly. Ensure that the seatback is completely locked into its upright position by pushing on the top of the seatback. In an accident or sudden stop, the unlocked seatback could allow cargo to move forward with great force and enter the passenger compartment, which could result in serious injury or death.
 - Loading cargo
 - Make sure the vehicle is off, the gear shifted to P (Park), and the parking brake is securely applied whenever loading or unloading cargo. Failure to take these steps may allow the vehicle to move if the shift lever or shift dial is inadvertently pressed or rotated to another position.
 - Cargo should always be secured to prevent it from being thrown about the vehicle in a collision and causing injury to the vehicle occupants.
 - Do not place objects in the rear seats, since they cannot be properly secured and may hit vehicle occupants in a collision causing serious injury or death.
-



CAUTION

Do not allow your hands or fingers to get caught in the seat mechanisms whilst adjusting the seats.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the vehicle:

- Rear seat belts

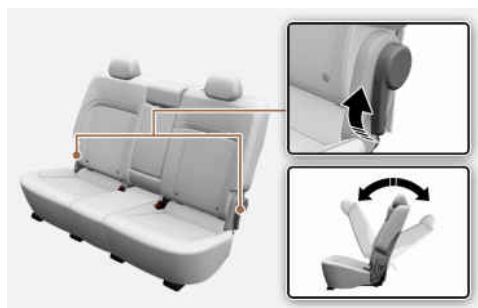
Before folding the seatback, insert the seat belt buckle in the holder between the seatback and cushion. And insert the seat belt webbing in the guide to prevent the seat belt from being damaged.

- Cargo

Be careful when loading cargo through the rear passenger seats to prevent damage to the vehicle interior.

Rear seat adjustment

Seatback angle adjustment

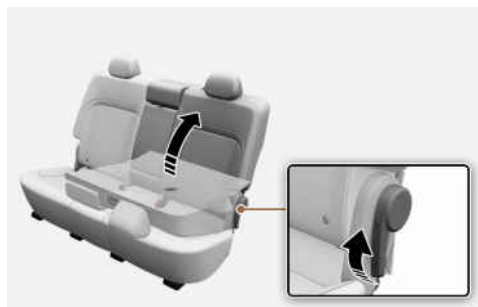
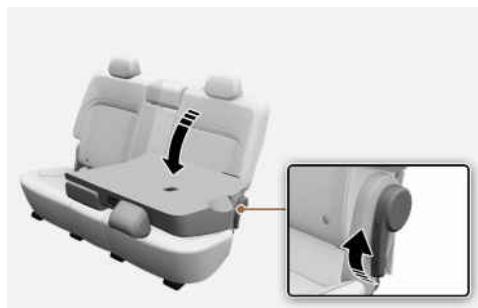


- 1 Pull up the seatback recline lever.
- 2 Hold the lever and adjust the seatback of the seat to the position you desire.
- 3 Release the lever and make sure the seatback is locked in place. The lever **MUST** return to its original position for the seatback to lock.

Folding the rear seats

The rear seatbacks can be folded to facilitate carrying long items or to increase the luggage capacity of the vehicle.

- 1 Locate the seat belt toward the outboard position before folding down the seatback to avoid the seat belt system interfering with the seatback.
- 2 Lower the rear head restraints to the lowest position.
- 3 Route the seat belt webbing through the rear seat belt guides to prevent the belts from being trapped behind or under the seats.



- Pull the seatback folding lever to completely fold the seat toward the front of the vehicle. Make sure the seatback is locked in place.
- When using it as a seat, pull the seatback folding lever to fully raise the seatback. Adjust the seatback to the desired angle and release the lever to lock in place.

Armrest



The armrest is located in the centre of the rear seat. Pull the armrest down from the seatback to use it.

NOTICE

Do not put any items on the rear centre seat. Those items may get damaged, when the armrest is pulled down.

Head restraints

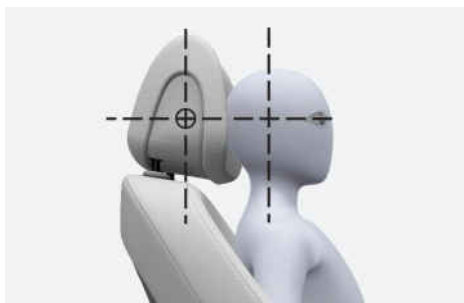
The vehicle's front and rear seats have adjustable head restraints. The head restraints provide comfort for passengers, but more importantly they are designed to help protect passengers from whiplash and other neck and spinal injuries during an accident, especially in a rear impact collision.



WARNING

To help reduce the risk of serious injury or death in an accident, take the following precautions when adjusting your head restraints:

- Always properly adjust the head restraints for all passengers BEFORE starting the vehicle.
- NEVER let anyone ride in a seat with the head restraints removed or reversed.
- Adjust the head restraints so the middle of the head restraints is at the same height as the height of the top of the eyes.



- NEVER adjust the head restraints position of the driver's seat when the vehicle is in motion.
 - Adjust the head restraints as close to the passenger's head as possible. Do not use a seat cushion that holds the body away from the seatback.
 - Always make sure the head restraint locks into position after reinstalling and adjusting it properly.
-

CAUTION

- When there is no occupant in the rear seats, adjust the height of the head restraint to the lowest position. The rear seat head restraint can reduce the visibility of the rear area.
- If you recline the seatback towards the front with the head restraint and seat cushion raised, the head restraint may come in contact with the sunvisor or other parts of the vehicle.



NOTICE

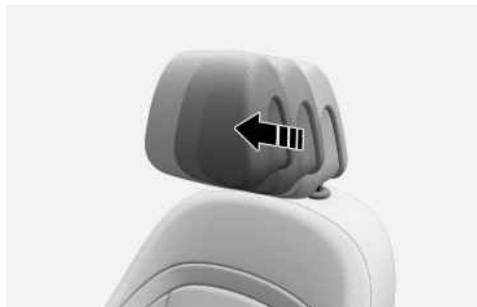
To prevent damage, NEVER hit or pull on the head restraint.

Front seat head restraint



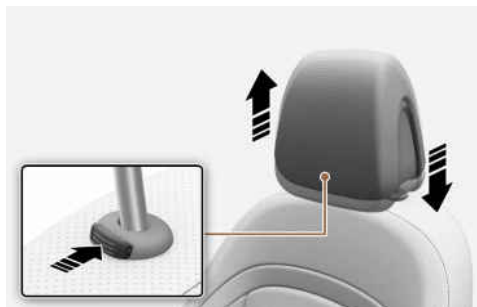
The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with adjustable head restraint for the passengers safety and comfort.

Forward and rearward adjustment



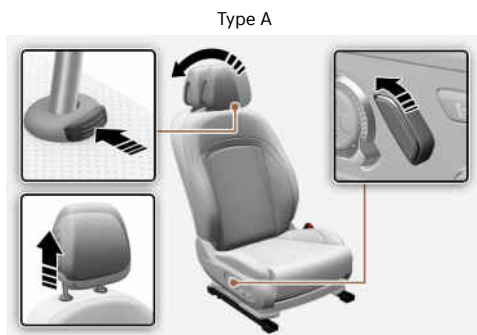
The head restraint may be adjusted forward to 3 different positions by pulling the head restraint forward to the desired position. To adjust the head restraint to its furthest rearwards position, pull it fully forward to the farthest position and release it.

Adjusting the height up and down



Press and hold the release button on the head restraint support to adjust the height.

Removing the head restraint



Type B



- 1 Recline the seatback with the seatback angle switch.
- 2 Raise the head restraint as far as it can go.
- 3 Press the head restraint release button whilst pulling the head restraint up.

Reinstalling the head restraint



- 1 Recline the seatback.
- 2 Put the head restraint poles into the holes whilst pressing the release button.
- 3 Adjust the head restraint to the appropriate height.
- 4 Recline the seatback with the seatback angle switch.

Rear seat head restraints



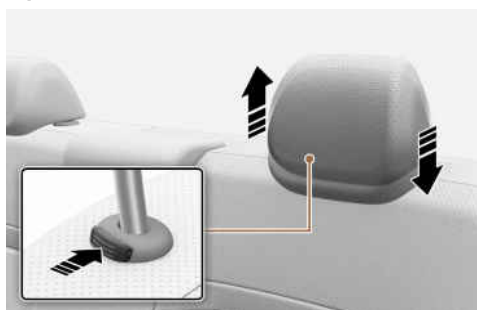
The rear seats are equipped with head restraints in all the seating positions for the passenger's safety and comfort.

 WARNING



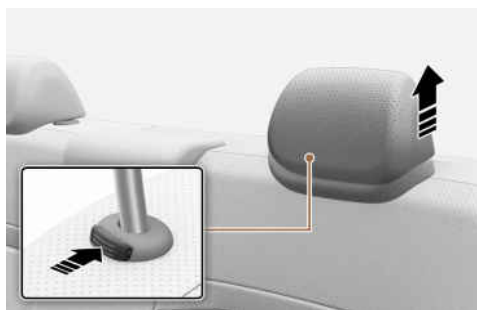
When sitting on the rear seat, do not adjust the height of the head restraint to the lowest position.

Adjusting the height up and down



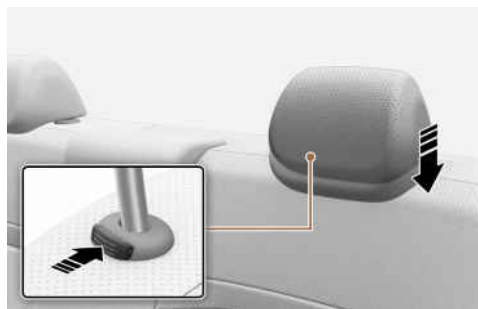
Press and hold the release button on the head restraint support to adjust the height.

Removing the head restraint



- 1 Raise the head restraint as far as it can go.
- 2 Press the head restraint release button whilst pulling the head restraint up.

Reinstalling the head restraint



- 1 Put the head restraint poles into the holes whilst pressing the release button.
- 2 Adjust the head restraint to the appropriate height.

Seat warmer and air ventilation seat



WARNING

The seat warmers can cause a serious burns, even at low temperatures and especially if used for long periods of time.

Passengers must be able to feel if the seat is becoming too warm so they can turn it off, if needed.

Seat warmers consumes huge amount of electricity. Please avoid using seat warmers whilst the vehicle is off in order to prevent the battery discharge.

People who cannot detect temperature change or pain to the skin should use extreme caution, especially the following types of passengers:

- Infants, children, elderly or disabled persons, or hospital outpatients.
- People with sensitive skin or who burn easily.
- Fatigued individuals.
- Intoxicated individuals.
- People taking medication that may cause drowsiness or sleepiness.

Never place anything on the seat that insulates against heat when the seat warmer is operating, such as a blanket or seat cushion.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the seat warmers, air ventilation seats, and seats:

- Never use a solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol or petrol to clean the seats.
 - Do not place heavy or sharp objects on seats equipped with seat warmers.
 - Do not change the seat cover. It may damage the seat warmer.
 - Do not change the seat covers. It may damage the air ventilation seat.
 - Do not place materials such as plastic bags or newspapers under the seats. They may block the air intake causing the air vents not to work properly.
 - Avoid spilling liquids on the surface of the front seats and seatbacks. This may cause the air vent holes to become blocked and not to work properly.
 - If the air vents do not operate, restart the vehicle. If there is no change, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
-

Automatic Controls Linked to Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat)

The seat warmers and air ventilation seats automatically controls the seat temperature depending on the ambient temperature and the set climate control temperature when the vehicle is running.

To use this feature, it can be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.

Select: **Setup > Vehicle > Seats > Automatic controls linked to climate control settings > Driver seat warmer/ventilation**

- The seat warmers and air ventilation seats defaults to the OFF position whenever the Start/Stop button is pressed to the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position. However, if the **Automatic controls linked to climate control settings** function is on, the driver's

seat warmers and air ventilation seats turns on and off depending on the ambient temperature and the set climate control temperature.

Seat Heater Balance

The seat warmer temperature can be adjusted or turned off for the seatback or seat cushion, when the seat warmer is on.

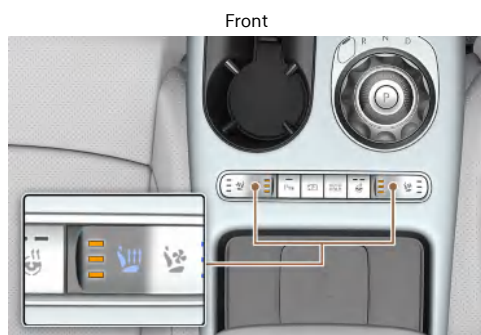
To use this function, enable it from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select: **Setup > Vehicle > Seats > Heating/Ventilation > Seat heater balance**

Seats warmers

 if equipped

Seat warmers are provided to warm the seats during cold weather.

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the seat warmers off.



Whilst the vehicle is running, press the seat warmer switch to warm the seat.

- Press the button repeatedly to cycle through the seat warmer temperature from high, medium, low, off.
- When pressing the seat warmer switches for more than 1.5 seconds with the seat warmer operating, the seat warmer will turn off.

Information

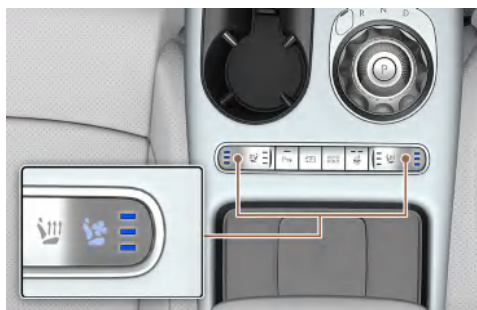
- The seat warmer temperature is lowered automatically and then goes off after a certain time to prevent low temperature burns. If high temperature is selected again after the seat warmer turns off, the temperature is controlled automatically again.
 - The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the Start/Stop button is pressed to the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.
-

Air ventilation seats

 if equipped

The air ventilation seats cool the front seats by blowing air through small vent holes on the surface of the seat cushions and seatbacks.

Front air ventilation seats



Whilst the vehicle is running, press the air ventilation switch to cool the driver's seat or front passenger's seat.

- Press the button repeatedly to cycle through the air ventilation temperature from high, medium, low, off.
- When pressing the air ventilation switches for more than 1.5 seconds with the air ventilation seat operating, the operation will turn off.

Information

- If the air ventilation seat is positioned at high, the airflow speed increases depending on vehicle speed.
 - It may take 3 to 5 minutes after switch operation to feel the temperature change.
 - Use the air ventilation seat with the air conditioning on for more effective ventilation.
-

Seat belts

This section describes how to use the seat belts properly. It also describes some of the things not to do when using seat belts.

Seat belt safety precautions

Always fasten your seat belt and make sure all passengers have fastened their seat belts before starting any trip. Airbags are designed to supplement the seat belt as an additional safety device, not a replacement. Most countries require all vehicle occupants to wear seat belts.



WARNING

Seat belts must be used by ALL passengers whenever the vehicle is moving. To prevent serious injury or death:

- Children under the age of 13 should be properly restrained in the rear seats.
- Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat, unless the airbag is deactivated. If a child is seated in the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible. And the child must always be restrained in the seat properly.
- NEVER allow an infant or child to be carried on an occupant's lap.
- NEVER ride with the seatback reclined when the vehicle is moving.
- Do not allow children to share a seat or seat belt.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back.
- Never wear a seat belt over fragile objects. If there is a sudden stop or impact, the seat belt can damage it.
- Do not use the seat belt if it is twisted. A twisted seat belt will not protect you properly in a collision.
- Do not latch the seat belt into the buckles intended for other seating positions.
- Never unfasten the seat belt whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.
- Make sure there is nothing in the buckle that could interfere with the seat belt latch mechanism from fastening securely.
- Never modify seat belt or install devices that may prevent seat belt assembly from removing slack.
- Do not use a seat belt if the webbing or hardware is damaged. We recommend that the seat belt be replaced by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Damaged seat belts and seat belt assemblies do not operate properly. Always replace:

- Frayed, contaminated, or damaged webbing.
 - Damaged hardware.
 - The entire seat belt assembly after it has been worn in an accident, even if damage to webbing or assembly is not apparent.
-

Seat belt use during pregnancy

The seat belt should always be used during pregnancy. The best way to protect your unborn child is to protect yourself by always wearing the seat belt.

Pregnant women should always wear a lap-shoulder seat belt. Place the shoulder belt across your chest, routed between your breasts and away from your neck. Place the lap belt below your belly and pull the shoulder portion so that it fits **SNUGLY** across your hips and pelvic bone, under the rounded part of your belly.



WARNING

- Pregnant women and patients are more vulnerable to any impacts on the abdomen during an abrupt stop or collision. If you are in an accident whilst pregnant, consult your doctor.
 - To reduce the risk of serious injury or death to an unborn child during an accident, pregnant women should **NEVER** place the lap portion of the seat belt above or over the area of the abdomen where the unborn child is located.
-

Seat belt use and children

Infant and small children

Most countries have Child Restraint System laws that require children to travel in approved Child Restraint System devices, including booster seats. The age at which seat belts can be used instead of Child Restraint System may be different among countries, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in your country, and where you are travelling. Infant and Child Restraint System must be properly placed and installed in a rear seat.

For more information, refer to the **Child Restraint System (CRS)**.

Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly restrained in the rear seat by a Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country. Before buying any Child Restraint System, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets the applicable Safety Standards.

The Child Restraint System must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the Child Restraint System for this information. For more information, refer to the **Child Restraint System (CRS)**.



WARNING

- Always properly restrain infants and small children in a Child Restraint System appropriate for the child's height and weight.
 - To reduce the risk of serious injury or death to a child and other passengers, never hold a child in your lap or arms when the vehicle is moving. Violent forces during a collision will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the interior or to be ejected from the vehicle.
-

Larger children

Children under age 13 and who are too large for a booster seat should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. A seat belt should be snug against the hips and be snug across the shoulder and chest to restrain the child safely. A child's squirming could move the belt out of position. Adults should frequently check belt fit. In a collision, the safest place for children is in the rear seats, using a Child Restraint System appropriate for the child.

If a larger child over age 13 must be seated in the front seat, the child must be securely restrained by the available seat belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position.

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the centre of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck, the child needs to return to an appropriate booster seat in the rear seat.



WARNING

- Always make sure larger children's seat belts are buckled and properly adjusted.
 - Never allow the shoulder belt to contact the child's neck or face.
 - Do not allow more than one child to use a single seat belt.
-

Seat belt use and injured people

A seat belt should still be used when an injured person is being transported. Consult a physician for specific recommendations.

One person per belt

When two people (children or adults) are sitting together, never attempt to use a single seat belt. This could increase the severity of injuries in a collision.

Do not lie down

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is moving can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the protections of your restraint system (seat belts and/or airbags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seatback.

Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly.

During a collision, you could be thrown into the seat belt, causing neck or other injuries.

The more the seat back is reclined, the greater the chance for the passenger's hips to slide under the lap belt or the passenger's neck to strike the shoulder belt.



WARNING

- Never ride with a reclined seatback when the vehicle is moving.
 - Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop.
 - Driver and passengers should always sit well back in their seats with the seatbacks upright and should be belted properly.
-

Care of seat belts

Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified.

Periodic inspection

All seat belts should be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Any damaged parts should be replaced as soon as possible.

Keep belts clean and dry

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents, or abrasives must not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

When to replace seat belts

The entire seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. We recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products for assistance.

Seat belt features

Pretensioner seat belt



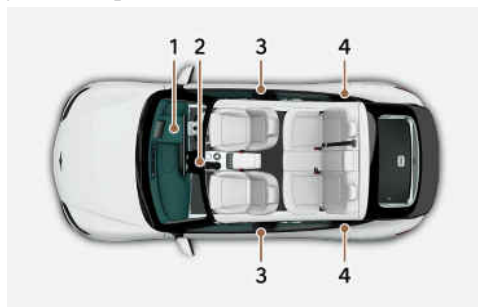
Your vehicle is equipped with driver's, front passenger's and rear passenger's pretensioner seat belts (retractor pretensioner). The pretensioner makes sure the seat belts fit tightly against your body in certain frontal or side collision(s). The pretensioner seat belts may be activated in crashes where the frontal or side collision(s) is severe enough, together with the airbags or sometimes it activate alone when wearing a seat belt.

When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor will lock into position.

In certain frontal collisions, the pretensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

If the system senses excessive tension on the driver or passenger's seat belt when the pretensioner system activates, the load limiter inside the retractor pretensioner will release some of the pressure on the affected seat belt (if equipped with load limiter).

Pretensioner seat belt system components



1. SRS airbag warning light
2. SRS control module
3. Front retractor pretensioner
4. Rear retractor pretensioner

WARNING

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always wear your seat belt and sit properly in your seat.
- Do not use the seat belt if it is loose or twisted.
- Do not place anything near the buckle.
- Always replace your pretensioners after activation or an accident.
- NEVER inspect, service, repair or replace the pretensioners by yourself. We recommend that the pretensioners be inspected, serviced, repaired, or replaced by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- Do not hit the seat belt assemblies.
- Do not touch the pretensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated. When the pretensioner seat belt mechanism deploys during a collision, the pretensioner can become hot and can burn you.

CAUTION

- Body work on the front area of the vehicle may damage the pretensioner seat belt system. Therefore, we recommend the system to be serviced by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- Pretensioner seat belts may be activated in certain frontal or side collisions or rollover situations (if equipped with rollover sensor).
- When the pretensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.
- Although it is non-toxic, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and must not be inhaled for prolonged periods. Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pretensioner seat belts were activated.

NOTICE

- The sensor that activates the SRS control module is connected with the pretensioner seat belt. The SRS airbag warning light on the instrument cluster illuminates for about 3-6 seconds after the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position, and then turns off.
 - If the pretensioner is not working properly, the warning light illuminates even if the SRS airbag is not malfunctioning. If the warning light does not illuminate when starting the vehicle or stays illuminated or illuminates whilst driving, we recommend the pretensioner seat belts and/or SRS control module be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.
-

Pre-Active Seat Belt (PSB)

 if equipped

The purpose of the Pre-Active Seat Belt is to tighten the seat belt when a collision is sensed, during emergency braking, or when a loss of control is sensed.

NOTICE

Pre-Active Seat Belt is a supplementary system. Pre-Active Seat Belt activates only when the passenger is wearing his/her seat belt.

Pre-Active Seat Belt operation

In order to maximise the safety of the passenger, Pre-Active Seat Belt system operates as below:

- Full retraction
The seat belt is tightened when:
 - Emergency braking situation occurs
 - Losing control of the vehicle
 - The vehicle detects a collision
 - Unstable rolling of the vehicle occurs
- Dynamic support
The seat belt is tightened where:
 - High longitudinal deceleration or acceleration occurs
 - Slips on icy or snow-covered roads
- Slack removal
Tightens a loose seat belt when the seat belt is fastened.
- Belt parking
Tightens a loose seat belt when the seat belt is unfastened.

Warning message

The '**Check PSB (Pre-active Seat Belt)**' warning message appears if there is a problem with your Pre-Active Seat Belt.

We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products if the warning message comes on whilst the vehicle is moving. When

the Pre-Active Seat Belt warning message disappears, the master (⚠) warning light illuminates.

Seat belt restraint system



WARNING

Improperly positioned seat belts may increase the risk of serious injury in an accident. Take the following precautions when adjusting the seat belt:

- Position the lap portion of the seat belt as low as possible across your hips, not on your waist, so that it fits snugly. This allows your strong pelvic bones to absorb the force of the crash, reducing the chance of internal injuries.
 - Position one arm under the shoulder belt and the other over the belt, as shown in the illustration.
 - Always position the shoulder belt anchor into the locked position at the appropriate height.
 - Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face.
-

NOTICE

If you cannot smoothly pull the seat belt out from the retractor, firmly pull the seat belt out and release it. After release, the belt may be pulled out smoothly.

Lap/shoulder belt

Fastening your seat belt



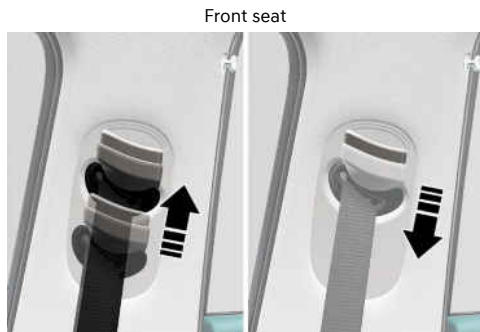
1. Height adjuster button
- 1 Pull the belt out of the retractor and insert the metal tab into the buckle. There will be an audible "click" sounds when the tab locks into the buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted.
- 2 Place the lap belt portion across your hips and the shoulder belt portion across your chest.

The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length after the lap belt portion is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt extends and moves with you.

If there is a sudden stop or impact, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

- 3 Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so that it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder nearest the door, not over your neck.
 - To raise the height, pull it up. To lower it, push it down whilst pressing the height adjuster button. Release the button to lock the anchor in place. Try pushing the height adjuster down to make sure that it is locked in place.

Height adjustment



Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so that it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder nearest the door, not over your neck.

- Pull it up to raise the height. To lower it, push it down whilst pressing the height adjuster button. Release the button to lock the anchor in place. Try pushing the height adjuster down to make sure that it is locked in place.

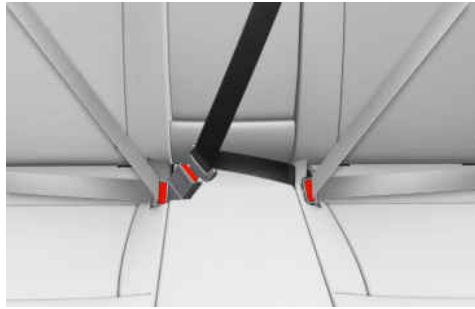
Releasing your seat belt



Press the release button in the locking buckle.

Once released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor. If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.

Rear centre seat belt

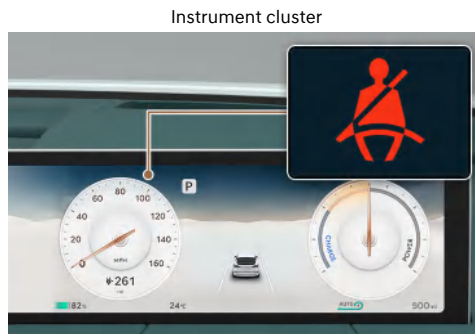


Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until an audible "click" is heard, indicating the latch is locked. Pull the shoulder portion of the belt to snug the belt across your hips and remove slack. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted.

When using the rear centre seat belt, use the buckle with the **CENTER** mark.

Seat belt warning light

Driver's and front passenger's seat belt warning



Driver's seat belt warning

As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light illuminates for about 6 seconds each time the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position regardless of belt fastening. If you continue not to fasten the seat belt or unfasten the seat belt and you drive below 20 km/h (12 mph), the warning light illuminates.

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt or unfasten the seat belt and you drive above 20 km/h (12 mph), the seat belt warning chime sounds for a certain period of time and the warning light blinks.

Front passenger's seat belt warning

As a reminder to the front passenger, the front passenger's seat belt warning light illuminates for about 6 seconds each time the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position regardless of belt fastening.

If the passenger continues to not fasten their seat belt or unfasten their seat belt and you drive below 12 mph (20 km/h), the seat belt warning light illuminates.

If the passenger continues to not fasten their seat belt or unfasten their seat belt and you drive above 12 mph (20 km/h), the seat belt warning chime sounds for a certain period of time and the warning light blinks.



WARNING

Riding in an improper position may adversely affect the front passenger's seat belt warning system. Instruct the passenger to properly be seated when the vehicle is moving.

NOTICE

- If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the seat belt warning light blinks or illuminate for about 6 seconds.
- The front passenger's seat belt warning may operate when luggage is placed on the front passenger seat.

Rear passenger's seat belt warning



Rear outboard seat seatbelt

 if equipped

- As a reminder to the rear outboard seat passengers, the corresponding seat belt warning lights illuminate for about 6 seconds each time the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position regardless of seat belt fastening.
- If the seat belt is still not fastened whilst driving, or unfastened whilst driving, it will operate as follows depending on vehicle speed.
 - Below 12 mph (20 km/h):
The corresponding seat belt warning light illuminates until the seat belt is fastened.
 - Above 12 mph (20 km/h):
The corresponding seat belt warning light blinks and the warning chime sounds for about 35 seconds, and then the warning light continues to illuminate until the seat belt is fastened.

For rear centre seat

 if equipped

- With the Start/Stop button in the POWER ON position, if the rear centre seat passenger's seat belt is not fastened, the seat belt warning light illuminates for 70 seconds. But, if the seat belt is fastened after 6 seconds, the seat belt warning light immediately turns off.
- If the seat belt is fastened, and then unfastened whilst driving, it will operate as follows depending on vehicle speed.
 - Below 12 mph (20 km/h):
The seat belt warning light continues to illuminate for about 70 seconds.
 - Above 12 mph (20 km/h):
The seat belt warning chime sounds for about 35 seconds and the warning light blinks.

Child Restraint System (CRS)

Our recommendation: Children always in the rear



WARNING

- Vehicles without passenger airbag ON/OFF switch

Always properly restrain children in the rear seats of the vehicle. Children of all ages are safer when restrained in the rear seat. A child riding in the front passenger seat can be forcefully struck by an inflating airbag resulting in serious injury or death.

- Vehicles with passenger airbag ON/OFF switch

Always properly restrain children in the vehicle. Children of all ages are safer when riding in the rear seats. Never place a rearward-facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat, unless the airbag is deactivated.

Children under age 13 should always ride in the rear seats and must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in a collision, sudden stop, or sudden manoeuvre.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat. Children too large for a Child Restraint System must use the seat belts provided.

Most countries have child restraint regulations that require children to travel in approved Child Restraint Systems.

The laws governing the age or height/weight restrictions at which seat belts can be used instead of Child Restraint System differs among countries, so you should be aware of the specific requirements where you are travelling.

Child Restraint Systems must be properly installed in the vehicle seat. Use a commercially available Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country.

Child Restraint Systems are generally designed to be secured in a vehicle seat by a lap/shoulder seat belt, or by a top tether and/or ISOFIX anchorage in the rear seats of the vehicle.

Child Restraint System

Infants and younger children must be restrained in an appropriate rearward-facing or forward-facing Child Restraint System that has first been properly secured to the seats of the vehicle. Read and comply with the instructions for installation and use provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System.

WARNING

Do not use an improperly secured Child Restraint System. It may increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision. When using a Child Restraint System:

- Always follow the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.
- Always properly restrain your child in the Child Restraint System.
- Do not use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback. It may not provide adequate protection in an accident.
- After an accident, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products to check the Child Restraint System, seat belts, ISOFIX anchorages, and top-tether anchorages.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

When selecting a Child Restraint System for your child, always:

- Make sure the Child Restraint System has a label certifying that it meets applicable Safety Standards of your country.
A Child Restraint System may only be installed if it was approved in accordance with the requirements of ECE-R44 or ECE-R129.
- Select a Child Restraint System based on your child's height and weight. The required label or the instructions for use typically provide this information.
- Select a Child Restraint System that fits the vehicle seating position where it is to be used.
- Read and comply with the warnings and instructions for installation and use provided with the Child Restraint System.

Child Restraint System types



There are three main types of Child Restraint Systems: rearward-facing, forward-facing, and booster seat Child Restraint Systems.

They are classified according to the child's age, height, and weight.

Rearward-facing Child Restraint System

With a rearward-facing Child Restraint System, the collision forces are absorbed by its shell instead of the child's body. The shell also supports the system's cradles and protects the head, neck and spine of the child. All children under the age of one year must always ride in a rearward-facing Child Restraint System. Convertible and 3-in-1 Child Restraint

Systems typically have higher height and weight limits for the rearward-facing position, allowing you to keep your child rearward-facing for a longer period of time.

Continue using the Child Restraint Systems in the rearward-facing position as long as the child is within the height and weight limits allowed by the Child Restraint System's manufacturer. It's the best way to keep them safe. Once your child has outgrown the rearward-facing Child Restraint System, your child is ready for a forward-facing Child Restraint System with a harness.

Forward-facing Child Restraint System

A forward-facing Child Restraint System provides restraint for the child's body with a harness. Keep children in a forward-facing Child Restraint System with a harness until they reach the top height or weight limit allowed by your Child Restraint System's manufacturer.

Once your child outgrows the forward-facing Child Restraint System, your child is ready for a booster seat.

Booster seats

A booster seat is a Child Restraint System designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's seat belt system. A booster seat positions the seat belt so that it fits properly over the stronger parts of your child's body. Keep your children in booster seats until they are big enough to fit in a seat belt properly.

For a seat belt to fit properly, the lap belt must lie snugly across the upper thighs, not the stomach. The shoulder belt should lie snug across the shoulder and chest and not across the neck or face. Children under age 13 must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop, or sudden manoeuvre.

Child Restraint System seating position

Suitability of each seating position for belted & ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems according to UN regulations

(Information for vehicle users and CRS manufacturers)

- Yes: Suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS.
- No: Not suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS.
- -: Not applicable.
- **F**: Forward facing
- **R**: Rearward facing
- The table is based on left-hand drive vehicle. Except for the front passenger seat, the table is valid for right-hand drive vehicle. For right-hand drive vehicle front passenger seat, use information for the seating position number 3.

CRS categories		Seating positions					
		1, 2	3		4	5	6
			Airbag ON	Airbag OFF			
Universal belted CRS	All mass groups	-	No	Yes* ¹ (F, R)	Yes (F, R)	Yes (F, R)	Yes (F, R)
i-size CRS	ISOFIX CRF: F2, F2X, R1, R2	-	No	No	Yes (F, R)	No	Yes (F, R)
Carry-cot (ISOFIX lateral facing CRS)	ISOFIX CRF: L1, L2	-	No	No	No	No	No
ISOFIX infant* CRS (*: ISOFIX baby CRS)	ISOFIX CRF: R1	-	No	No	Yes (R)	No	Yes (R)
ISOFIX toddler CRS - small	ISOFIX CRF: F2, F2X, R2, R2X	-	No	No	Yes (F, R)	No	Yes (F, R)
ISOFIX toddler CRS - large* (*: not booster seats)	ISOFIX CRF: F3, R3	-	No	No	Yes (F, R)	No	Yes (F, R)
Booster Seat - reduced Width	ISO CRF: B2	-	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Booster Seat - full Width	ISO CRF: B3	-	No	No	Yes	No	Yes

*1: To install Universal CRS, 1st row passenger seat should be adjusted to the appropriate position which do not interfere with stable installation (adjust to possible height or upright position).

Information

- Never place a rearward facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat, unless the airbag is deactivated.
- For semi-universal or vehicle specific CRS (ISOFIX or belted CRS), please see the vehicle list provided in the manual of CRS.
- If the vehicle head restraint prevents proper installation of a CRS, the head restraint of the seating position shall be readjusted or entirely removed.

Seat number	Position in the vehicle	Seating positions
1	Front right	
2	Front centre	
3	Front left	
4	2 nd row left	
5	2 nd row centre	
6	2 nd row right	

Recommended CRS for Vehicle according to UN regulations

(Information for use by vehicle users and CRS manufacturers)

Child Height or Mass Group	CRS Manufacturer	CRS Model name	Type of Fixation	ECE Approval Number
40-83 cm	Britax Römer	BABY-SAFE2 i-SIZE and BABY-SAFE i-SIZE BASE	ISOFIX with support leg, rearward facing	E1*129R00/05*0008
76-105 cm	Britax Römer	Trifix 2 i-size	ISOFIX and top-tether	E1*129R02/06*0015
100-150 cm	Britax Römer	KidFix 2 R	ISOFIX and vehicle belt, using CRS lap belt guide	E1*129R03/04*0061
Group III	Graco	Junior III/Booster Basic	Vehicle belt	R44: E11-0444165

CRS Manufacturer information

Britax Römer: <https://www.britax-roemer.com>

Graco: <https://www.gracobaby.com>

Installing a Child Restraint System



WARNING

- Before installing your Child Restraint System, always read and follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System and in this manual to prevent serious injury or death if a collision occurs.
 - If the vehicle head restraint prevents proper installation of a Child Restraint System (as described in the Child Restraint System manual), readjust or remove the head restraint for that seating position.
-



CAUTION

Check the seating surface and buckles before placing your child in the Child Restraint System to prevent burns. A Child Restraint System in a closed vehicle can become very hot.

After selecting a proper Child Restraint System for your child and checking that the Child Restraint System fits properly in a seating position, there are three general steps for a proper installation:

- **Properly secure the Child Restraint System to the vehicle.** All Child Restraint Systems must be secured to the vehicle with a lap/shoulder belt or with an ISOFIX top-tether and/or ISOFIX anchorage and/or with a support leg.
- **Make sure the Child Restraint System is firmly secured.** After installing a Child Restraint System to the vehicle, push and pull the seat forwards and backwards and from side to side to verify that it is securely attached to the seat. Install a Child Restraint System secured with a seat belt as tightly as possible. Some side-to-side movement can be expected.
- **Secure the child in the Child Restraint System.** Make sure the child is properly strapped in the Child Restraint System according to the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions.

Securing a Child Restraint System with the ISOFIX Anchorage System

WARNING

- Do not attempt to install a Child Restraint System using ISOFIX anchorages in the rear centre seating position. There are no ISOFIX anchorages provided for this seat. Do not use the outboard seat anchors for the centre seat. It may damage the anchorages that may break or fail in a collision resulting in serious injury or death.
- Before installing the Child Restraint System, make sure that there are no objects (for example, toys, pens, wires) near the ISOFIX anchorage area. Those objects may damage either the seat belt system or the Child Restraint System during installation. If necessary, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Take the following precautions when using the ISOFIX system:

- Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.
- To prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of unretracted seat belts, buckle all unused rear seat belts and retract the seat belt webbing behind the child. The child can be strangled if a shoulder belt becomes wrapped around their neck and the seat belt tightens.
- Never attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single anchorage. This may cause the anchorage or attachment to come loose or break.
- Always have the ISOFIX system inspected by your dealer after a collision. A collision can damage the ISOFIX system and may not properly secure the Child Restraint System.



The ISOFIX system connects a Child Restraint System to the vehicle during driving and in a collision. This system is designed to make installation of the Child Restraint System easier and reduce the possibility of improperly installing your Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system eliminates the need to use seat belts to secure the Child Restraint System to the rear seats.

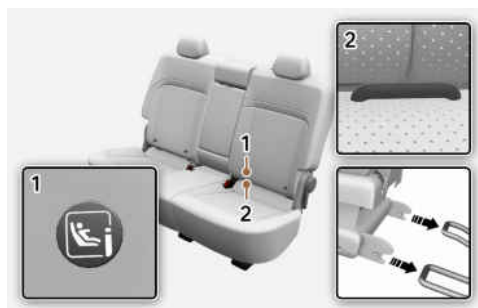
ISOFIX anchorages are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each ISOFIX seating position that accommodates a Child Restraint System with lower attachments.

To use the ISOFIX system in your vehicle, install a Child Restraint System with ISOFIX attachments. (An ISOFIX Child Restraint System may only be installed if it has vehicle

specific or universal approval in accordance with the requirements of ECE-R44 or ECE-R129.)

The Child Restraint System manufacturer provides you with instructions on how to use the Child Restraint System with its attachments for the ISOFIX anchorages.

ISOFIX anchorages have been provided in the left and right outboard rear seating positions. There are no ISOFIX anchorages provided for the centre rear seating position.



1. ISOFIX anchorage position indicator (Type A: , Type B: ),
2. ISOFIX anchorage

The ISOFIX anchorage position indicator symbols are located on the left and right rear seatbacks to identify the positions of the lower anchors in your vehicle.

Both rear outboard seats are equipped with a pair of ISOFIX anchorages as well as a corresponding top-tether anchorage on the back side of the rear seats.

(Child Restraint Systems with universal approval according to ECE-R44 or ECE-R129 need to be fixed additionally with a top-tether connected to the back side of the rear seats.)

The ISOFIX anchorages are located between the seatback and the seat cushion of the rear seat left and right outboard seating positions.

Installing with an i-Size or ISOFIX-compatible Child Restraint System in either of the rear outboard seating positions

- 1 Move the seat belt buckle away from the ISOFIX anchorages.
- 2 Move any other objects away from the anchorages that could prevent a secure connection between the Child Restraint System and the ISOFIX anchorages.
- 3 Place the Child Restraint System on the vehicle seat, then attach the seat to the ISOFIX anchorages according to the instructions provided by the Child Restraint System manufacturer.
- 4 Follow the instructions of the Child Restraint System's manufacturer for proper installation and connection of the ISOFIX attachments on the Child Restraint System to the ISOFIX anchorages.

Securing a Child Restraint System seat with Top Tether Anchorage system

WARNING

Take the following precautions when installing the top tether anchorage:

- Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.
- Never attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single ISOFIX top tether anchorage. This could cause the anchorage or attachment to come loose or break.
- Only attach the top tether strap to the correct top tether anchorage for that seating position.
- Child Restraint System anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted Child Restraint System.

Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts or harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.



Top-tether anchorages for Child Restraint Systems are located on the rear of the seatbacks.

Installing with the top tether anchor

- 1 Route the Child Restraint System top tether strap over the seatback. Route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts, or route the top tether strap over the top of the vehicle seatback. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
- 2 Connect the top tether strap hook to the top tether anchorage, then tighten the top tether strap according to the instructions of your Child Restraint System's manufacturer to firmly secure the Child Restraint System.



- 3 Check the Child Restraint System is secure by pushing and pulling the seat forward and back and side-to-side.

Securing a Child Restraint System with a lap/shoulder belt

⚠ WARNING

If a child restraint is installed in the rear centre seat, move the rear seat far back as possible, to minimise contact with the front centre side airbag (if equipped with front centre side airbag).



When not using the ISOFIX system, all Child Restraint Systems must be secured to a rear seat using the lap/shoulder belt.

Installing with a lap/shoulder belt

- 1 Place the Child Restraint System on a rear seat and route the lap/shoulder belt around or through the Child Restraint System, following the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.



- 2 Fasten the lap/shoulder belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct "click" sound.
 - Position the release button so that it is easy to access in an emergency.



- 3 Remove as much slack from the belt as possible by pushing down on the Child Restraint System whilst feeding the shoulder belt back into the retractor.
- 4 Push and pull on the Child Restraint System to confirm that the seat belt is holding it firmly in place.



If your Child Restraint System manufacturer instructs or recommends you to use a top tether anchorage with the lap/shoulder belt, refer to the **Securing a Child Restraint System seat with Top Tether Anchorage system**.

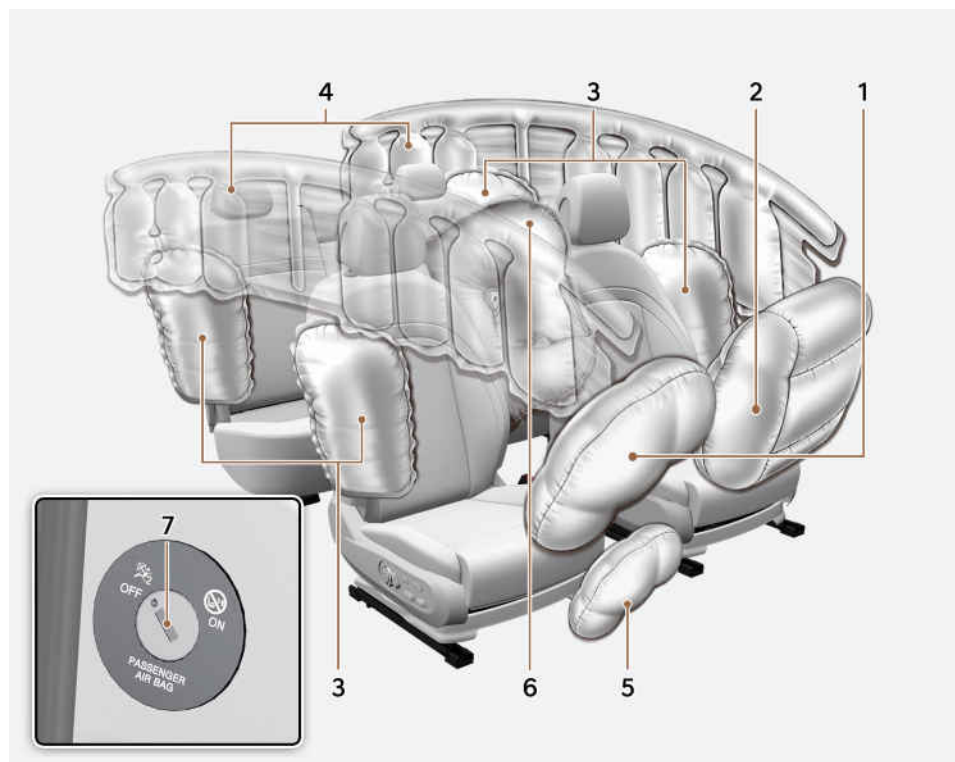
To remove the Child Restraint System, press the release button on the buckle and then pull the seat belt out of the Child Restraint System and allow the seat belt to retract fully.

Airbag - supplemental restraint system

Your vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Airbag System for the driver's and front passenger's seats.

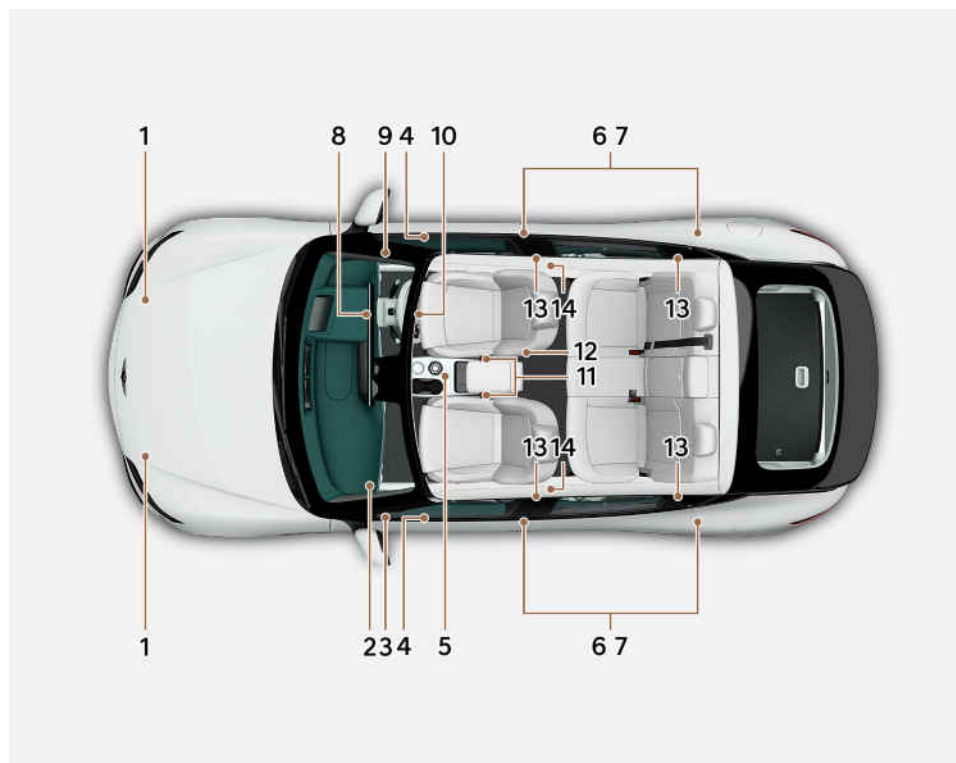
The front airbags are designed to supplement the three-point seat belts. For these airbags to provide protection, seat belts must be properly worn at all times when driving.

You can be severely injured or killed in an accident if you are not wearing a seat belt. Airbags are built into the vehicle as a supplementary system. They are not intended as a replacement for wearing 3-point seat belts. Also, airbags are not designed to deploy in every collision. In some accidents, the seat belts are the only restraint protecting you.



1. Driver's front airbag
2. Passenger's front airbag
3. Side airbag
4. Curtain airbag
5. Driver's knee airbag
6. Front centre side airbag
7. Front passenger airbag ON/OFF switch

SRS Components



1. Front impact sensors
2. Passenger's front airbag module
3. Side impact sensors (pressure)
4. SRS control module (SRSCM)/Rollover sensor
5. Side impact sensors (acceleration)
6. Retractor pretensioner
7. Airbag warning light
8. Driver's knee airbag module
9. Front passenger airbag ON/OFF switch
10. Driver's front airbag module
11. Driver's and passenger's seat belt buckle sensors
12. Front centre side airbag module
13. Side airbag modules
14. Curtain airbag modules

NOTICE

Front passenger's airbag ON/OFF indicator is located on the overhead console.

Airbag safety precautions

Passengers must not move out of or change seats whilst the vehicle is moving. A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a collision or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or be ejected from the vehicle.

Do not use any accessories on seat belts. Devices claiming to improve occupant comfort or reposition the seat belt can reduce the protection provided by the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a collision.

Do not modify the front seats. Modification of the front seats may interfere with the operation of the Supplemental Restraint System sensing components or side airbags.

Do not place items under the front seats. Placing items under the front seats may interfere with the operation of the Supplemental Restraint System sensing components and wiring harnesses.

Do not cause impact to the doors. Impact to the doors when the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position may cause the airbags to inflate.

WARNING

AIRBAG SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Always use seat belts and Child Restraint Systems - every trip, every time, everyone! Even with airbags, you can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if you are improperly belted or not wearing your seat belt when the airbag inflates.
- Never place a child in any Child Restraint System or booster seat in the front passenger seat, unless the airbag is deactivated. An inflating airbag could forcefully strike the infant or child causing serious or fatal injuries.
- ABC - Always Buckle Children under age 13 in the back seat. It is the safest place for children of any age to ride. If a child age 13 or older must be seated in the front seat, he or she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.
- Make sure that all occupants sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centred on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended, and their feet on the floor until the vehicle is parked and the vehicle is turned off. If an occupant is out of position during an accident, the rapidly deploying airbag may forcefully contact the occupant causing serious or fatal injuries.
- Move your seat as far back as possible from front airbags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.
- To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating airbag:
 - Hold the steering wheel with hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to minimise the risk of injuries to your hands and arms.
 - Never place anything or anyone between the airbag and the seat occupant.
 - Do not allow the front passenger to place their feet or legs on the dashboard.
 - Never place any objects (such as dashboard cover, mobile phone holder, cup holder, perfume or stickers) over or near the airbag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, windscreen glass, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box. Such objects may cause harm if the vehicle is in a collision severe enough to cause the airbags to deploy.
 - Do not install a container of liquid air freshener near the instrument cluster or on the instrument panel surface.
 - Do not allow passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and seats.
 - Do not use any accessory seat covers. It may reduce or prevent the effectiveness of the system.
 - Do not hang other objects except clothes. In a crash it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury especially when airbag is inflated.
 - Do not attach any objects around the area the airbag inflates such as door, side door glass, and front and rear pillar.

Adding equipment to or modifying your airbag equipped vehicle

If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal, or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's Supplemental Restraint System.

Airbags system operation

The SRSCM (Supplemental Restraint System Control Module) continually monitors all SRS components whilst the Start/Stop button is DRIVE READY to determine if a crash impact is severe enough to require airbag deployment or pretensioner seat belt deployment.

During a moderate to severe frontal collision, sensors detect the vehicle's rapid deceleration. If the rate of deceleration is high enough, the SRSCM inflates the front airbags with the force needed.

The front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which seat belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the side airbags help provide protection in the event of a side impact or rollover by supporting the side upper body area.

- Airbags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position, and it may be activated within 3 minutes after the vehicle is turned off.
- Airbags inflate in the event of certain frontal or side collisions to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.
- There is no single speed at which the airbags will inflate. Generally, airbags are designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. Airbag deployment also depends on a number of other factors including vehicle speed, angles of impact and the density and stiffness of the vehicles or objects which your vehicle impacts during a collision. The determining factors are not limited to those mentioned above.
- The front airbags completely inflate and deflate in an instant. It is virtually impossible for you to see the airbags inflate during an accident. It is much more likely that you simply see the deflated airbags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.
- In addition to inflating in serious side collisions, vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor, side and/or curtain airbags inflate if the sensing system detects a rollover. When a rollover is detected, curtain airbags remain inflated longer to help provide protection from ejection, especially when used in conjunction with the seat belts. (if equipped with a rollover sensor)
- To help provide protection, the airbags must inflate rapidly. The speed of airbag inflation is a consequence of extremely short time in which the airbag inflates between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries and is thus a necessary part of airbag design.

However, the rapid airbag inflation may also cause injuries that include facial abrasions, bruises, and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the airbags to expand with great force.

- There are even circumstances under which contact with the airbag may cause fatal injuries, especially when the occupant is positioned excessively close to the airbag.

- 1 When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it automatically deploys the front airbags.

Driver's front airbag



- 2 Upon deployment, tear seam in the pad cover separates from the expansion of the airbags.
 - A fully inflated airbag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver's or the front passenger's forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.
- 3 After complete inflation, the airbag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and steer or operate other controls.

Passenger's front airbag



What to expect after an airbag inflates

After a frontal or side airbag inflates, it deflates very quickly. Airbag inflation does not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windscreen or being able to steer. Curtain airbags may remain partially inflated for some time after they deploy.

WARNING

After an airbag inflates, take the following precautions:

- Open your windows and doors as soon as possible after impact to reduce prolonged exposure to the powder released by the inflating airbag.
- Do not touch the airbag storage area's internal components immediately after an airbag has inflated. The parts that come into contact with an inflating airbag may be very hot.
- Always wash exposed skin areas thoroughly with cold water and mild soap.
- We recommend that an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products inspect your vehicle and replace components as required before operating your vehicle again. Airbags are designed to be used only.

Noise and smoke from inflating airbag

When the airbags inflate, they make a loud noise and may release powder inside the vehicle. After the airbag inflates, you may feel discomfort whilst breathing. This may be due to the impact of the airbag or the seat belt with your chest and it may also be due to breathing residual powder in the air and around your vehicle. The powder may aggravate asthma for some people. If you experience breathing problems after an airbag deployment, seek medical attention immediately.

Though the powder is nontoxic, it may cause irritation to the skin, eyes, nose, throat, etc. If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and seek medical attention if the symptoms persist.

Do not install a Child Restraint System on the front passenger's seat



Never install a Child Restraint System in the front passenger seat, unless the airbag is deactivated.

WARNING

NEVER use a rearward facing Child Restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

SRS warning light



The SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) airbag warning light on the instrument panel displays the airbag symbol in the illustration. The light indicates if there is a potential problem with your airbag system, which could include your side and/or curtain airbags used for rollover protection (if equipped rollover sensor).



WARNING

If your SRS malfunctions, the airbags may not inflate properly during a collision increasing the risk of serious injury or death.

Your SRS malfunctions in the following conditions:

- The light does not turn on for about three to six seconds when the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position.
- The light stays on after illuminating for about three to six seconds.
- The light comes on whilst the vehicle is moving.
- The light blinks when the vehicle is running.

We recommend that an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products inspect the SRS as soon as possible if any of these conditions occur.

Airbag location

Driver's and Passenger's front airbags

Driver's front airbag



Driver's knee airbag



Passenger's front airbag



The SRS consists of airbags located in the centre of the steering wheel, in the driver's side lower crash pad below the steering wheel, and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box.

The airbag locations are embossed with the letters, **AIRBAG**.

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and front passenger with additional supplemental protection that the seat belt system does not provide in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity.

Passenger's front airbag ON/OFF switch

The purpose of the switch is to disable the passenger's front airbag to help reduce the risk of injury or death from an inflating airbag to certain front passenger seat occupants due to age, size, or medical condition.



Deactivating the passenger's front airbag

Insert the key or a similar rigid device into the passenger's front airbag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the OFF position (direction 2). The passenger airbag OFF  indicator illuminates and stays on until the passenger's front airbag is reactivated.

Reactivating the passenger's front airbag

Insert the key or a similar rigid device into the passenger's front airbag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the ON position (direction 1). The passenger airbag ON  indicator illuminates.

WARNING

Never allow an adult passenger to ride in the front passenger seat when the passenger airbag OFF indicator is illuminated. During a collision, the airbag does not inflate if the indicator is illuminated. Turn on the passenger's front airbag or have your passenger move to the rear seat.

NOTICE

The passenger's front airbag ON/OFF indicator illuminates for about 4 seconds after the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. If the Start/Stop button is pressed to the POWER ON position within 3 minutes after the vehicle was turned off, the indicator does not illuminate.

Side airbags and front centre side airbag

Front/Rear side airbag



Front centre side airbag (for driver's seat)



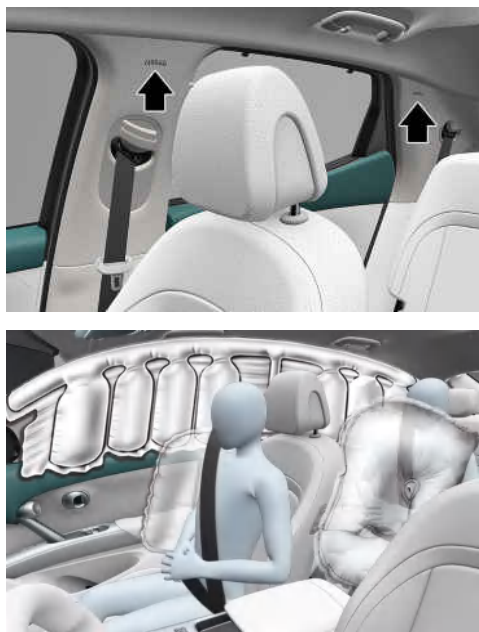
Side airbags are located in each front and outboard second row seat. Additionally, a front centre side airbag is located in the inboard side of the driver seatback.

The side airbags and front centre side airbag are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity.

For the vehicle equipped with a rollover sensor, the front centre side airbag, side and/or curtain airbags and pretensioners on both sides of the vehicle are designed to deploy if a rollover or possible rollover is detected.

The side airbags are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

Curtain airbags



Curtain airbags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors.

They are designed to help protect the heads of the front seat occupants and the rear outboard seat occupants in certain side impact collisions.

The curtain airbags are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity.

For the vehicle equipped with a rollover sensor, the side and/or curtain airbags and pretensioners on both sides of the vehicle may deploy if a rollover or possible rollover is detected.

The curtain airbags are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

SRS care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS airbag warning light does not illuminate when the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position or continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be immediately inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

We recommend any work on the SRS system, such as removing, installing, repairing, or any work on the steering wheel, the front passenger's panel, front seats, and roof rails should be performed by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products. Improper handling of the SRS system may result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- Do not attempt to modify or disconnect the SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure.
 - Do not place objects over or near the airbag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box.
 - Clean the airbag pad covers with a soft cloth moistened with water. Solvents or cleaners may adversely affect the airbag covers and proper deployment of the system.
 - We recommend that inflated airbags be replaced by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
 - If components of the airbag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, observe safety precautions. We recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products for the necessary information.
-

Airbag warning labels



Airbag warning labels are attached to alert the driver and passengers of potential risks of the airbag system. Be sure to read all of the information about the airbags that are installed on your vehicle in this Owners Manual.

Airbag operating conditions

There are certain types of accidents in which the airbag would not deploy including rear impacts and second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts. Damage to the vehicle indicates a collision energy absorption, and is not an indicator of whether or not an airbag should have inflated.

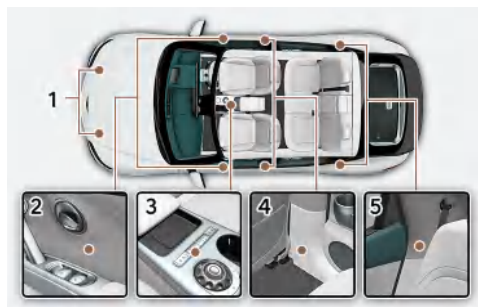
Airbag collision sensors



WARNING

To reduce the risk of an airbag deploying unexpectedly and causing serious injury or death:

- Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where airbags or sensors are installed.
 - Do not perform maintenance on or around the airbag sensors. If the location or angle of the sensors is changed, the airbags may deploy when they must not or may not deploy.
 - Do not install bumper guards with non genuine Genesis or non-equivalent parts. It may adversely affect the collision and airbag deployment performance.
 - Press the Start/Stop button to the OFF or POWER ON position and wait for 3 minutes before the vehicle is towed to prevent unintended airbag deployment.
 - We recommend that all airbag repairs are conducted by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
-



1. Front impact sensor
2. Side impact sensor (Pressure): Front door
3. SRS control module/Rollover sensor
4. Side impact sensor (Acceleration): B-Pillar
5. Side impact sensor (Acceleration): C-Pillar

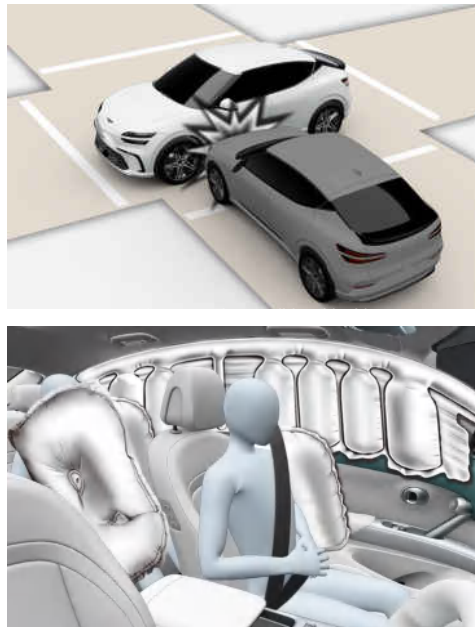
Airbag inflation conditions

Front airbags



Front airbags are designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the severity of impact.

Side and curtain airbags and front centre side airbag



Side, curtain airbags and the front centre side airbag are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side collision sensors depending on the severity of impact resulting from a side impact collision.

Although the driver's and front passenger's airbags are designed to inflate in frontal collisions and side, curtain airbags and the front centre side airbags are designed to inflate in side impact collisions, airbags may inflate in other types of collisions if the sensors detect a sufficient impact.

Also, the side, curtain airbags and the front centre side airbags inflate when a rollover is detected by a rollover sensor. (if equipped with a rollover sensor)

If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads, the airbags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended airbag deployment.

Airbag non-inflation conditions

- In certain low-speed collisions, the airbags may not deploy. The airbags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts.



- Front airbags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved backward by the force of the impact.



- Front airbags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move in the direction of the collision.

Side, curtain airbags and the front centre side airbag may inflate depending on the severity of impact.



- In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the airbags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any airbags.



- Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to 'nosedive'. This is particularly important when the vehicle in front has a higher ground clearance. Airbags may not inflate if your vehicle is in a 'nosedive' condition because the collision forces detected by the sensors may have been significantly reduced.



- Front airbags may not inflate in rollover accidents because front airbag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

The side, curtain airbags and the front centre side airbags may inflate in a rollover situation, when detected by the rollover sensor. (if equipped with a rollover sensor)



- Airbags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated and the collision energy is absorbed by the vehicle structure.



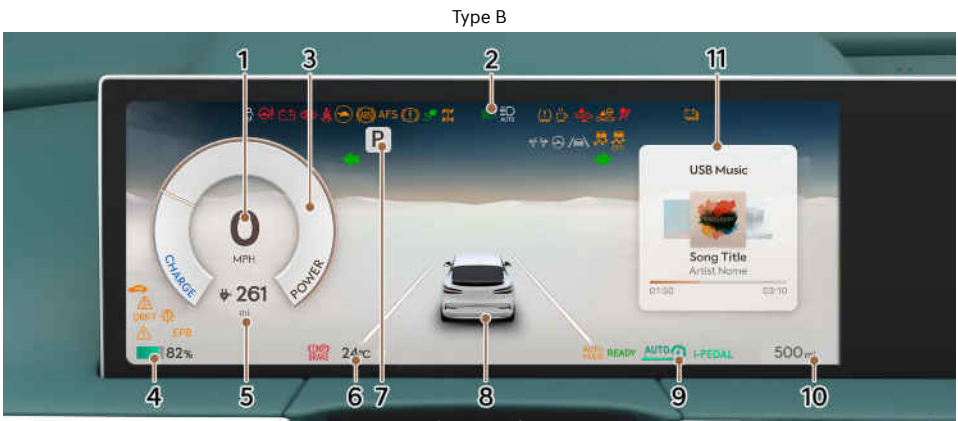
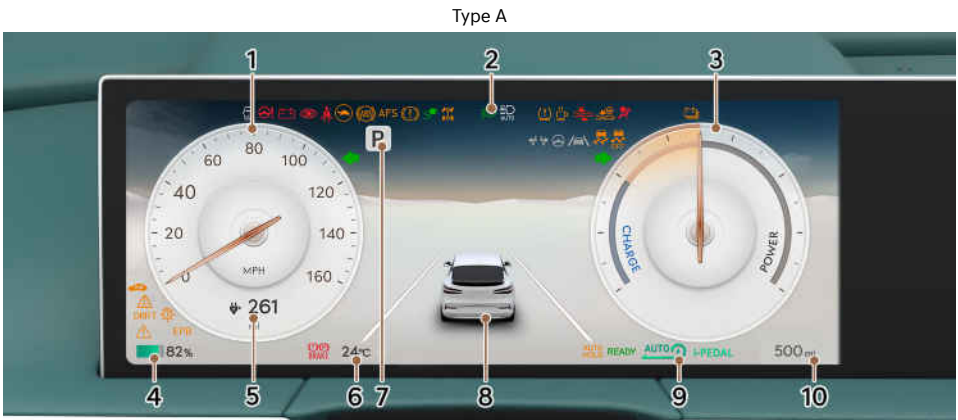
4. Instrument cluster

This chapter explains the vehicle information, warning lights and status indicators that appear on the instrument cluster.

Information

- The illustrations are shown as a guide. The actual shape may differ from the illustration.
- The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.
- The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Instrument cluster overview



1. Speedometer

2. Warning indicator light
3. CHARGE/POWER gauge
4. Battery SOC (State of Charge) gauge
5. Distance to empty
6. Outside temperature
7. Gear shift indicator
8. Cluster display
9. Regenerative braking level indicator
10. Odometer
11. Widget

Instrument cluster control

Instrument cluster theme selection

Infotainment system

You can adjust the theme of the instrument cluster in the infotainment system. Select **Setup > Vehicle > Cluster/Head-up display > Cluster > Cluster theme selection**.

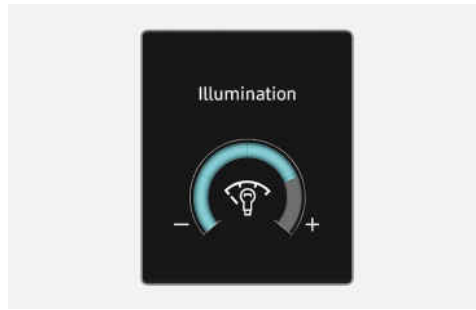
Instrument panel illumination

Control button

Press the illumination control button to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel illumination.



When pressing the illumination control button, the interior switch illumination intensity is also adjusted.



- The brightness of the instrument panel illumination is displayed.
- When the brightness setting reaches either the minimum or maximum level, a chime sounds.

Infotainment system

You can adjust the brightness of the instrument panel illumination from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select **Setup > Vehicle > Cluster/Head-up display > Cluster > Brightness**.



WARNING

Never adjust the instrument cluster whilst driving. This could result in loss of control and lead to an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or vehicle damage.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

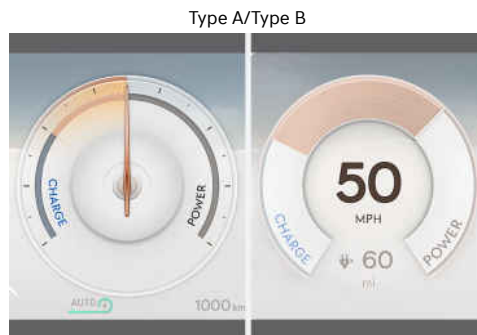
Gauges and meters

Speedometer



The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle and is calibrated in miles per hour (MPH) and/or kilometers per hour (km/h).

Charge/Power gauge



The CHARGE/POWER gauge displays the charging and discharging status of the electric energy produced by the regenerative braking and the energy consumption of the electric motor.

- **CHARGE:** Shows the charging status of the electric motor when vehicle is decelerating or driving on a downhill road (being charged by the regenerative brakes). The more electric energy is charged, the lower the gauge level.
- **POWER:** Shows discharging status of the electric motor when vehicle is accelerating or driving on an uphill road. The more electric energy is discharged (used), the higher the gauge level.

State of charge (SOC) gauge for high voltage battery



The SOC gauge shows the charging status of the high voltage battery.

The low percentage number on the indicator indicates that there is not enough energy in the high voltage battery. 100 % indicates that the driving battery is fully charged.

- When the remaining battery of the high voltage battery is lower than 20 %, the High voltage battery level  warning light appears.
- When the High voltage battery level  warning light appears, charge the vehicle.

NOTICE

- After the warning light appears, immediately charge the vehicle at a nearby charging station. The vehicle may not operate properly depending on the driving speed, weather, and other driving conditions.
- When the high voltage battery level is low, the power down indicator light illuminates and the vehicle power is limited. Charge the battery immediately since your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the indicator light ON.

Information

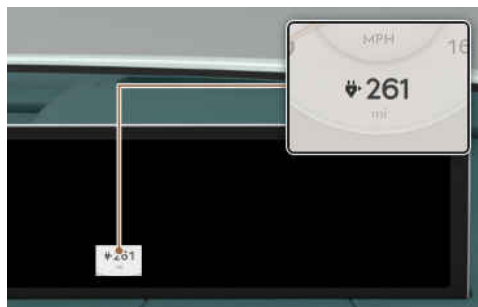
- To find a nearby charging station, refer to the **Searching for nearby charging stations**.
- Check if the SOC is enough before driving on highways or motorways.

Odometer



The odometer indicates the total distance that the vehicle has been driven and is used to determine when periodic maintenance is required.

Distance to empty



The distance to empty is the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining electric energy.

The distance to empty differs depending on which drive mode (ECO/COMFORT/SPORT/ SNOW) is selected.

- The distance to empty may differ from the actual driving distance because it is only an estimate of the available driving distance.
- The distance to empty may differ significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.
- If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the distance to empty function may not operate correctly.

Factors affecting the distance to empty

The distance to empty vary depending on many factors such as driving habits, power usage, driving conditions, and high voltage battery. The distance to empty may be increased or decreased than the certified figures as it reflects all the factors comprehensively.

- The driving habits: The driving speed and tendency of accelerating and decelerating. High-speed driving or frequent accelerating and decelerating reduces the distance to empty.
- The power usage: Additional power use, such as the air conditioner, heater, lamps, etc. As the power usage increases, the distance to empty reduces.
- The driving conditions: The weather, temperature, and terrain. If you drive in snow/rain/strong wind or low temperature, the distance to empty will be reduced. The distance to empty will also be reduced when driving uphill or on slippery or rough roads.
- The electric energy: Proportional to the State of Charge (SOC), but may vary depending on the battery temperature and the State of Health (SOH) of a battery.

Change in the distance to empty when 100 % charged

In case the distance to empty has been reduced due to learning of the driving habit or the driving conditions, you can increase the distance to empty again by continuously driving following the **Tips for enhancing the distance to empty**.

- Resetting the previously learned driving patterns at the service centre may increase the distance to empty displayed on the bottom of the instrument cluster, but it does not increase the actual distance to empty. The distance to empty may not be accurate until the learning proceeds.
- If the high voltage battery temperature is low in winter, the distance to empty reduces but it is not a permanent change. The distance to empty may increase again once the temperature rises.
- If you reduce the power usage, the distance to empty may increase.
- Natural degradation may occur with the high voltage battery depending on the number of years the vehicle is used. This may reduce the distance to empty.

When setting a destination

When the destination is set, the distance to empty may change. The distance to empty may vary significantly based on traffic conditions or driving speed.

Tips for enhancing the distance to empty

The distance to empty vary depending on the charge level of the high voltage battery, weather, temperature, duration of the battery use, terrain, driving habits, etc.

- The air resistance increases rapidly as the electric vehicle drives faster, so avoid speeding to increase the distance to empty and the electric energy economy.
- Rapid acceleration consumes a lot of driving energy and rapid deceleration limits the regenerative braking. Gradually depress and release the accelerator pedal.
- If you operate the air conditioner or heater too much, the high voltage battery uses excessive electricity. This may reduce the distance to empty. Therefore, set the cabin temperature to 22 °C (71.6 °F) AUTO level 2. Especially in winter, reducing heating and using heated seats instead can significantly increase the distance to empty. Turn off the air conditioner or heater if you do not need them.
- When using the air conditioner or heater, the energy consumption is reduced if recirculation mode is selected instead of fresh mode.
- Close the windows whilst driving.
- When using the air conditioner or heater whilst driving alone, use the **DRIVER ONLY** function.
- Always maintain specified tyre pressures and use tyres for electric vehicles.
- Do not use unnecessary electrical components whilst driving.
- Do not load unnecessary items in the vehicle.
- Do not mount parts that may increase air resistance.

When the distance to empty is insufficient

- When the battery warning indicator is displayed, immediately charge the vehicle at a nearby charging station.
- When the battery level is 0 %, do not try to drive. Move to a safe place and call for help.

Outside temperature gauge



The outside ambient temperature appears in the lower portion of the cluster display. The temperature reads in Fahrenheit or Celsius depending on the units selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.

The temperature indicated on the instrument cluster may not change as quickly as the outside temperature. Select **Setup > Vehicle > General > Unit > Temperature unit > °C/°F**

Both the temperature unit on the cluster display and climate control information screen is changed.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Gear shift indicator



This indicator informs the current gear engaged.

Regenerative braking level indicator



The regenerative brake indicates the level of the regenerative braking that you set. And it also indicates Smart regenerative system's operation status.

For more details, refer to the **Regenerative braking system (paddle shifter)** and **Smart regeneration system**.

Warnings and indicators

Warning and indicator lights

 **CAUTION** _____

If the warning light illuminates whilst driving or does not go off, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

(1)	READY	(2)	
(3)		(4)	
(5)		(6)	i-PEDAL
(7)		(8)	
(9)		(10)	
(11)		(12)	
(13)		(14)	
(15)		(16)	EPB
(17)	AUTO HOLD	(18)	
(19)		(20)	
(21)		(22)	

(23)		(24)	
(25)		(26)	
(27)		(28)	
(29)		(30)	
(31)		(32)	
(33)		(34)	
(35)		(36)	
(37)		(38)	
(39)		(40)	
(41)			

(1)READY Ready indicator

This indicator illuminates:

When the vehicle is ready to be driven.

- ON: Normal driving is possible.
- OFF: Normal driving is not possible, or a problem has occurred.
- Blinking: Emergency driving.

When the ready indicator goes OFF or blinks, there is a problem with the system. If this occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

(2) Power down indicator light

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the high voltage battery level is too low or voltage is decreasing. (Output limit occurs when the charge level is insufficient.)
- When the temperature of the high voltage battery is too high or too low.
- When the driving system temperature is overheated and requires protection.

If it illuminates alone, it is not failure.

- If both Power down indicator light and Service warning light illuminate at the same time, have your vehicle inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- When the indicator is illuminating, immediately charge the vehicle. The driving speed may be limited and the vehicle may not properly drive uphill.

NOTICE

- Do not accelerate or start the vehicle suddenly when the power down indicator light is ON.
 - When the power is limited for the safety of the high-powered parts of an electric vehicle, the power down indicator light illuminates. Your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the indicator light ON due to the limitation of vehicle power.
-

(3) Service warning light

This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a problem with related parts of the vehicle control system, such as sensors, etc.

When the warning light illuminates whilst driving, or does not go OFF after starting the vehicle, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

(4) Charging indicator light

This indicator illuminates:

When charging the high voltage battery.

(5) High voltage battery level warning light

This indicator light illuminates:

When the high voltage battery level is low.

Immediately charge the vehicle. The vehicle can drive an additional 18-25 mi. (30-40 km).

- The actual distance to empty depends on the driving conditions.

(6) i-PEDAL indicator light

This indicator illuminates:

When using the i-PEDAL.

For more information, refer to the **Regenerative braking system (paddle shifter)**.

(7) Seat belt warning light

This warning light illuminates:

When the seat belt is not fastened.

For more information, refer to the **Seat belts**.

(8) Airbag warning light

This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for 3-6 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the Safety Restraint System (SRS).

If the Airbag warning light remains illuminated whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

(9) Regenerative brake warning light

This warning light illuminates:

When the regenerative brake does not operate and the brake does not perform well.

This causes the Parking Brake warning light (red) and Regenerative Brake warning light (yellow) to illuminate simultaneously.

If this occurs, drive safely and we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The operation of the brake pedal may be more difficult than normal and the braking distance may increase.

(10) Parking brake & brake fluid warning light

This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off once the parking brake is released.
- Whenever the parking brake is applied.
- Whenever the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.
 - If the warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.
 - With the vehicle stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required (For more information, refer to the **Brake fluid**). After adding brake fluid, check all brake components for fluid leaks. If a brake fluid leak is found, or if the warning light remains on, or if the brakes do not operate properly, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

WARNING

If the parking brake warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates that the brake fluid level is low. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Information

Your vehicle is equipped with the dual-diagonal braking system. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail.

- With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal force are required to stop the vehicle. Also, the vehicle does not stop in a short distance if only a portion of the braking system is working.

(11) *Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) warning light*

This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with the ABS.

The hydraulic braking system still operates even if there is a malfunction with the ABS. If the ABS warning light remains illuminated whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

(12) *Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) System warning light*

These two warning lights illuminate at the same time whilst driving:

When the ABS and brake system does not work normally.

If both the ABS warning light and the parking brake & brake fluid warning light remain illuminated whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

WARNING

When both ABS and parking brake & brake fluid warning lights are on, the braking system does not work normally and you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking.

Avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking.

We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

Information

When the ABS warning light is on or both ABS and parking brake & brake fluid warning lights are on, the speedometer, odometer, or tripmeter may not work. Also, the MDPS warning light may illuminate and the steering effort may increase or decrease.

(13) Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS) warning light

This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with the MDPS.
If the MDPS warning light remains illuminated whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

(14) 12 V Battery charging system warning light

This warning light illuminates:

When there is a malfunction with electrical charging system.

If there is a malfunction with electrical charging system:

- 1 Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
- 2 Turn the vehicle off and check the electrical charging system.

If the Charging system warning light remains illuminated whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products or service partner.

(15) Low tyre pressure warning light

This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated. (The location of the under-inflated tyre appears on the cluster display.)

This warning light remains ON after blinking for about 60 seconds, or repeatedly blinks ON and OFF at 3 second intervals:

When there is a malfunction with the TPMS.

If this occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

For more information, refer to the **Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)**.

WARNING

- The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors.
- If you notice any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator pedal, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.

(16) Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light

This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with EPB.

If the EPB warning light remains illuminated whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Information

The EPB warning light may illuminate when the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) indicator light comes on to indicate that ESC is not working properly. This does not indicate malfunction of EPB.

(17) **AUTO HOLD indicator light**

This indicator light illuminates:

- White: When you activate Auto Hold by pressing the **AUTO HOLD** button.
- Green: When you stop the vehicle completely by depressing the brake pedal with Auto Hold activated.
- Yellow: Whenever a malfunction with the Auto Hold is detected.

If the  indicator light remains yellow whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more information, refer to the **Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)**.

(18) **AWD warning light**

 if equipped

This warning light illuminates:

Whenever there is a malfunction with the AWD system.

If this occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

For more information, refer to the **All Wheel Drive (AWD)**.

(19) **Forward Safety warning light**

 if equipped

This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Yellow: When Forward Safety or Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is deselected, disabled, or a malfunction is detected.

If the yellow warning light remains on after the sensor has been uncovered or unblocked when the Forward Safety is set, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

This warning light blinks:

- Red: When Forward Safety function or Forward Cross-Traffic Safety function is operating.

For more information, refer to the **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)**.

(20) **Emergency Steering warning light**

 If equipped

This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Yellow: When Forward/Side Safety is deselected or Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist disable/malfunction

If the yellow warning light is still on even after removing foreign material from the front of the sensors after Forward Safety select in settings, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

This warning light blinks:

- Red: When Forward/Side Safety or Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is operating

For more information, refer to the **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)**.

(21) **Lane Safety indicator light**

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Grey: When Lane Keeping Assist operating conditions are not satisfied.
- Green: When Lane Keeping Assist operating conditions are satisfied.
- Yellow: When Lane Safety is deselected, disabled, or a malfunction is detected.

If the yellow warning light remains on after the sensor has been uncovered or unblocked when Lane Safety is set, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

This indicator light blinks:

- Green: When Lane Keeping Assist is operating.

For more information, refer to the **Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)**.

(22) **Lane Following Assist indicator light**

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Green: When Lane Following Assist is operating.
- Grey: When Lane Following Assist operating conditions are not satisfied.

This indicator light blinks:

- White: When the steering wheel assist is cancelled.

For more information, refer to the **Lane Following Assist (LFA)**.

(23) **Speed Limiter indicator light**

This indicator light illuminates:

When the speed limiter is enabled.

For more information, refer to the **Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA)**.

(24) Intelligent Speed Limit Assist indicator light

 if equipped

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Yellow: When Intelligent Speed Limit Assist is off, disabled, or a malfunction is detected.
If the yellow indicator light remains on after the front view camera has been uncovered or unblocked, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more information, refer to the **Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA)**.

(25) Inattentive Driving Warning light

This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Yellow: When Driver Attention Warning is disabled or a malfunction is detected.
If the yellow indicator light remains on after the front view camera has been uncovered or unblocked, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

This warning light blinks:

- Yellow: Driver Attention Warning recommends to take a break.

For more information, refer to the **Driver Attention Warning (DAW)**.

(26) Forward Attention Warning light

 if equipped

This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Red: When Forward Attention Warning is disabled or a malfunction is detected.
If the red warning light remains on after the in-cabin camera has been uncovered or unblocked, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

This warning light blinks:

- Red: Forward Attention Warning warns the driver to keep eyes on the road.

For more information, refer to the **Forward Attention Warning (FAW)**.

(27) Master warning light

This warning light illuminates:

When there is a malfunction in operation in any of the following systems:

- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction or radar blocked

- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction or radar blocked
- LED headlight malfunction
- High Beam Assist malfunction
- Smart Cruise Control malfunction or radar blocked
- Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction

If the issue is resolved, the Master Warning Light turns off.

(28) LED headlight warning light

This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with a LED headlight.

If the LED Headlight warning light remains illuminated whilst driving, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

NOTICE

Driving with the LED Headlight warning light on may reduce LED headlight life.

(29) Intelligent Front-Lighting System warning light

 if equipped

This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever a malfunction with the Intelligent Front-Lighting System is detected.

If this occurs, drive your vehicle to the nearest safe location, and turn the vehicle off and restart the vehicle. If the warning light remains on, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

(30) Electronic Stability Control (ESC) indicator light

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with ESC system.

If this occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

This indicator light blinks:

Whilst ESC is operating.

For more information, refer to the **Electronic Stability Control (ESC)**.

(31) Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF indicator light

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position. It illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you deactivate ESC system by pressing the ESC OFF button.

For more information, refer to the **Electronic Stability Control (ESC)**.

(32) Immobiliser indicator light

This indicator light illuminates for up to 30 seconds:

When the vehicle detects the smart key in the vehicle with the Start/Stop button in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.

This indicator light blinks for a few seconds:

When the smart key is not in the vehicle, you cannot start the vehicle.

This indicator light illuminates for a few seconds and goes off:

If the smart key is in the vehicle and the Start/Stop button is POWER ON, but the vehicle cannot detect the smart key.

If this occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

This indicator light blinks:

Whenever there is a malfunction with the immobiliser system.

If this occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

(33) Turn signal indicator light

This indicator light blinks:

When you operate the turn signal lever.

If the turn signal indicator light illuminates but does not blink, blinks rapidly, does not illuminate at all, there may be a malfunction with the turn signal system.

If any of these occur, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

(34) Light ON indicator light

This indicator light illuminates:

When the position lights or headlights are on.

(35) Low beam indicator light

This indicator light illuminates:

When the headlights are on.

(36) **High beam indicator light**

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the headlights are on and the turn signal lever is moved to the high beam position.
- When the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

(37-1) **High Beam Assist indicator light**

This indicator light illuminates:

When the high beam is on with the light switch in the AUTO position.

- White: When Intelligent Front-Lighting system is ready to operate.
- Green: When Intelligent Front-Lighting system is operating.

If your vehicle detects oncoming or preceding vehicles, High Beam Assist switches the high beam to low beam automatically.

For more information, refer to the **High Beam Assist (HBA)**.

(37-2) **Intelligent Front-Lighting System indicator light**

 if equipped

This indicator light illuminates:

When the high beam is on with the light switch in the AUTO position.

- White: When High Beam Assist is ready to operate.
- Green: When Intelligent Front-Lighting system is operating.

If your vehicle detect oncoming or preceding vehicles, the Intelligent Front-Lighting system partially turns off the high beam LED lights.

For more information, refer to the **Intelligent Front-lighting System (IFS)**.

(38) **Door open indicator light**

This indicator light illuminates:

When any door or tailgate is left open or not fully closed.



WARNING

Before driving the vehicle, confirm the door and tailgate are fully closed and the light is off.



CAUTION

The 12 V battery may discharge if you leave the vehicle with the Door Open indicator light illuminated. Make sure you fully close the door and tailgate when leaving the vehicle.

(39) **Rear fog indicator light**

 if equipped

This indicator light illuminates:

When the rear fog lights are on.

(40) *Icy road warning light*

 if equipped

This indicator light illuminates:

To warn the driver the road may be icy.

When the outside temperature on the temperature gauge is below 4 °C (40 °F), a single chime sounds, both the outside temperature gauge and Icy Road Warning indicator blink several times, and then they remain illuminated.

You can activate or deactivate the Icy Road Warning function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select **Setup > Vehicle > Cluster > Content selection > Icy road warning**



CAUTION

If the Icy Road warning light appears whilst driving, avoid speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden braking, or sharp turning.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

(41) *DRIFT mode indicator light*

 if equipped

This indicator light illuminates:

When the drive mode is in the DRIFT mode.

For more information, refer to the **Drift mode**.

Cluster display messages



WARNING

- Do not drive with a warning message displayed.
- If a warning message does not go off after taking measures, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Low key battery

When the Start/Stop button is pressed to the OFF position, a message may appear, indicating the internal battery of the smart key is low. Replace the smart key battery.

Press brake pedal to start vehicle

This message appears if the Start/Stop button is pressed repeatedly without depressing the brake pedal.

Start the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal and then pressing the Start/Stop button.

Key not in vehicle

This message appears if the smart key is not in the vehicle when you have left the vehicle with the Start/Stop button in the POWER ON position.

Always turn off the vehicle before leaving your vehicle.

Press START button again

If you cannot start the vehicle after the Start/Stop button is pressed, attempt to start the vehicle by pressing the Start/Stop button again.

If the warning message appears each time you press the Start/Stop button, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Place Smart Key in emergency start position and press START button

This message is displayed if you press the Start/Stop button whilst the warning message "Key not detected" is displayed.

At this time, the immobiliser indicator light blinks.

Check BRAKE SWITCH fuse

This message appears if the brake switch fuse is disconnected. Replace the fuse before starting the vehicle.

If that is not possible, start the vehicle by pressing the Start/Stop button for 10 seconds in the OFF position.

Shift to P to start vehicle

This message appears if you try to start the vehicle in any other position except P (Park).

Check virtual engine sound system

This message appears when there is a problem with the Virtual Engine Sound System (VESS).

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Authenticated. The vehicle can now be started./Authentication successful. The vehicle can now be started

This message appears for 4 seconds when you place your finger on the fingerprint sensor, and it is verified whilst the vehicle is off.

You can start the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal and then pressing the Start/Stop button. However, the vehicle starts when the Start/Stop button is pressed within 30 seconds after your fingerprint is verified and the immobiliser () indicator light is illuminated. If the immobiliser indicator light is off, your fingerprint must be verified again.

Fingerprint authentication is locked out. Try again in XX min.

This message appears for 4 seconds when fingerprint authentication has failed more than five times whilst the vehicle is off. Whilst the message is displayed, fingerprint authentication does not work even if you place your finger on the fingerprint sensor, and the vehicle does not start even if the Start/Stop button is pressed.

Try again after the time indicated in the message has passed. Start the vehicle with the smart key or digital key.

If fingerprint authentication still does not work, refer to the **Fingerprint authentication system**.

Place digital key on the wireless charger to keep the vehicle running

 if equipped

If the vehicle is remotely started and Start Vehicle is deselected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system for Driver 1 and Driver 2, this message appears for up to 30 seconds when a door is opened after unlocking the doors with a digital key.

To drive your vehicle, place the registered digital key on the wireless charger, when this message appears.

Scan an authorised fingerprint to keep the vehicle running

 if equipped

If the vehicle is remotely started and **Start vehicle** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system for Driver 1 or Driver 2, this message appears for up to 30 seconds when a door is opened after unlocking the doors with a digital key or the Genesis Connected Services app.

To drive your vehicle, have an authorised fingerprint verified on the fingerprint sensor when this message appears.

Place digital key on the wireless charger or scan an authorised fingerprint

 if equipped

If the vehicle is remotely started and **Start Vehicle** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system for Driver 1 or Driver 2, this message appears for up to 30 seconds when a door is opened after unlocking the doors with a digital key or the Genesis Connected Services app.

To drive your vehicle, place the registered digital key on the wireless charger, or have your fingerprint verified on the fingerprint sensor when this message appears.

Vehicle is On (started by fingerprint)

This message appears for up to 10 seconds if the driver's door is opened and the driver's seat belt is not fastened after turning on the vehicle with a fingerprint. After the message appears, a warning sounds when the door is closed.

Information

Since the vehicle was started with a fingerprint, if the vehicle is turned off, and there is no smart key, digital key or a registered fingerprint in the vehicle, it may be difficult to start the vehicle again.

Check user authentication system

 if equipped

This message appears if there is a problem with the Digital Key or Fingerprint Authentication System. We recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Battery discharging due to external electrical devices

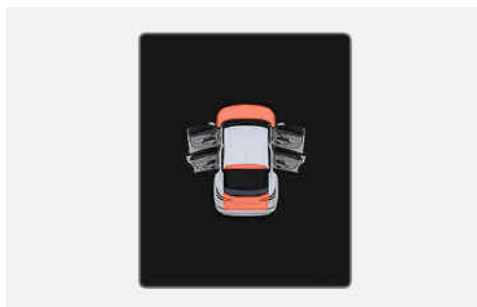
 if equipped

This message appears if the 12 V battery voltage is low or if a current draw is detected that could drain the vehicle battery.

Do not connect any external electronic devices to the battery system or battery discharge may occur.

If this message appears on the cluster display and there are no other external electronic devices connected to the vehicle, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Door, Bonnet, Tailgate open indicator



This warning appears if any door, bonnet, or tailgate is left open. The warning indicates which door is open on the cluster display.

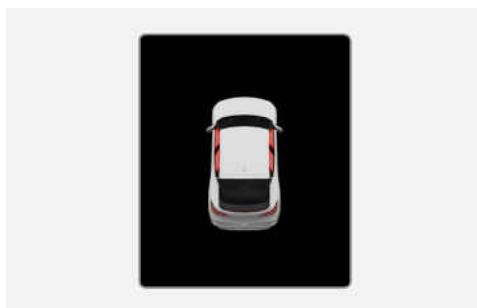


CAUTION

Before driving the vehicle, confirm the door, bonnet, and tailgate are fully closed.

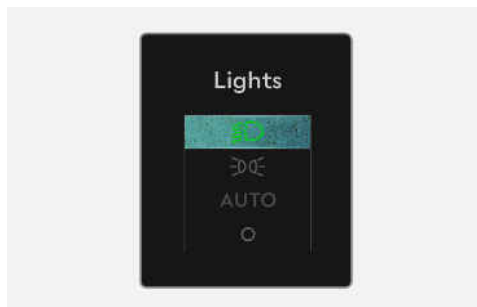
Window open indicator

 if equipped



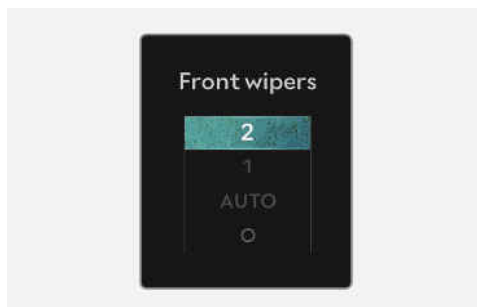
This warning appears if you turn off the vehicle when the window is open. Close the window securely before leaving your vehicle.

Lights



This indicator displays which exterior light is selected using the lighting control. You can activate or deactivate Wiper/Lights display function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select **Setup > Vehicle > Cluster/Head-up display > Cluster > Content selection > Wiper/Lights display**.

Wiper

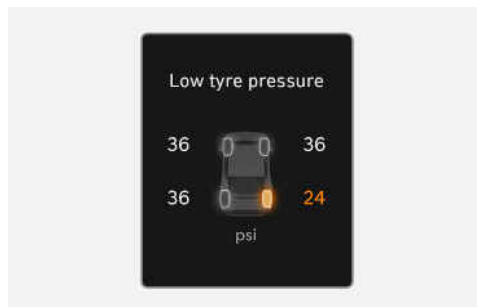


This indicator displays which wiper speed is selected using the wiper control. You can activate or deactivate Wiper/Lights display function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select **Setup > Vehicle > Cluster/Head-up display > Cluster > Content selection > Wiper/Lights display**.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Low tyre pressure



This warning message appears if the tyre pressure is low. The corresponding tyre on the vehicle is illuminated.

For more information, refer to the **Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)**.

Low washer fluid

This message appears if the washer fluid level in the reservoir is nearly empty.

Have the washer fluid reservoir refilled.

Check haptic steering wheel system

This message appears if there is a problem with the haptic steering wheel system. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Check headlight

This message appears if the headlights are not operating properly.

Replace the burned out LED with a new one with the same wattage rating.

Check turn signal

This message appears if the turn signal lights are not operating properly.

Replace the burned out LED with a new one with the same wattage rating.

Check headlight LED

This message appears if there is a problem with the LED headlight. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Check regenerative brakes

This message appears when the regenerative brake system does not work properly. If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Check Active Air Flap system

This message appears if there is a malfunction with the air flap or controller.

Depending on external vehicle conditions, a warning message may be displayed even when the AAF is not malfunctioning. Please check for freezing conditions, foreign objects, or any other obstructions on the flap.

Electric vehicle cluster display messages

Low EV charge

This message appears when the high voltage battery level reaches below 20 %.

The  warning light on the instrument cluster turns on simultaneously.

Charge the vehicle immediately.

Charge immediately. Power limited

This message appears when the high voltage battery level reaches below 10 %.

The  warning light and the power down  warning light on the instrument cluster turns on simultaneously.

The vehicle's power may be reduced to minimise the energy consumption of the high voltage battery.

Charge the battery immediately.

Check electric vehicle system

This message appears when there is a problem with the electric vehicle control system.

Do not drive when the warning message appears.

We recommend that you immediately tow the vehicle to an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products and have it inspected and repaired.

Power limited

This warning message appears when the power of the vehicle is limited to ensure the safety of high-powered components for the reasons below:

- The high voltage battery level is too low or voltage is decreasing.
- The temperature of the high voltage battery is too high or too low.
- When the driving system is overheated and requires protection.

Unless both Service warning light and Power down indicator light illuminate at the same time, it is not a failure.

- Charge the vehicle if the charge level is low.
- If both power down indicator light and service warning light illuminate at the same time, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- Do not accelerate or start the vehicle suddenly when the warning message appears.
- Be careful when the power down indicator appears. The vehicle may not properly drive uphill and roll back on a slope.

Low EV battery temp. Power limited.

If you start or turn off the vehicle when the outside temperature is low, this warning message appears to protect electric vehicle system.

If the high voltage battery charge level is low and parked outside for a long time, vehicle power could be limited due to the low battery temperature.

Charging the battery before driving helps increase power.

If this warning message still appears even after the ambient temperature has increased, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

EV Battery Overheated! Stop vehicle

This warning message appears to protect battery and electric vehicle system when the high voltage battery temperature is too high.

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the Start/Stop button and wait until the battery temperature decreases.

If this warning message still appears even after turning off the vehicle and waiting for a sufficient time, we recommend that you immediately tow the vehicle to an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products for inspection and repair.

Stop vehicle and check power supply

This warning message appears when a failure occurs in the power supply system.

Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place. We recommend that you tow the vehicle to an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products for inspection and maintenance.

Unplug vehicle to start

This message appears when you start the vehicle without unplugging the charging cable.

Unplug the charging cable and start the vehicle.

Charging door open

This message appears when the vehicle is driven with the charging door opened.

Check if the charging door is completely closed after charging the vehicle.

Charging Stopped. Check the AC/DC charger

This warning message appears when charging is stopped for the reasons below:

- There is a problem with the external AC charger or DC charger
- The external AC charger stopped charging
- The charging cable is damaged

In this case, check whether there is any problem with the external AC or DC charger and charging cable.

If the same problem occurs when charging the vehicle with a normally operating AC charger or genuine Genesis portable charger, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Charging Stopped. Check the cable connection

This warning message appears when charging is stopped for the reasons below:

- The charging connector is not correctly connected to the charging inlet.
- The unlock button on the charging connector is pressed.

In this case, separate the charging connector and reconnect it and check whether there is any problem (external damage, foreign substances, etc.) with the charging connector and charging inlet.

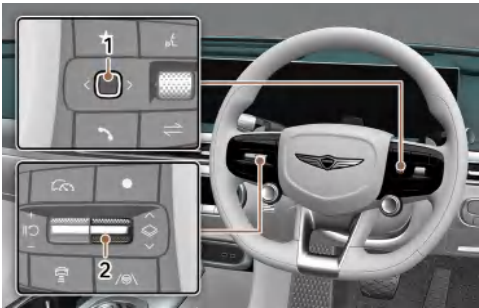
If the same problem occurs when charging the vehicle with a replaced charging cable or genuine Genesis portable charger, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Cluster display settings

Information

The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

Cluster display control



Switch		Operation	Function
1	■ (SELECT/RESET, Optical mouse)	Press	SELECT/RESET switch for selecting or hiding pop up. SELECT/RESET switch for entering or exiting widget navigation mode.
		Press and hold	SELECT/RESET switch for selecting certain pop up. SELECT/RESET switch for hiding or showing widget mode.
		Press 2 times	SELECT/RESET switch for resetting the selected Normal view mode.
		Tap up, down, left, right	When in widget mode, the switch is used to navigate the widgets. When not in widget mode, the switch is used to change to previous or next song.
2	◇ (MODE)	Press	MODE button for changing gauge mode.
	^, v (UP, DOWN)	Press	UP, DOWN switch for changing View modes.

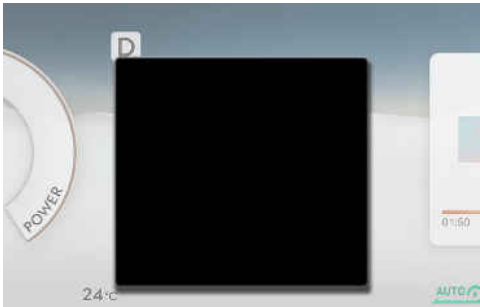
Information

If equipped with an infotainment system, only the Settings menu in the infotainment system is supported and not the instrument cluster.

Cluster display view modes

View modes	Explanation
Normal view	Show trip computer or widget on centre without background information.
Driving Assist view	Driving Assist view displays the status of the vehicle's Driver Assistance systems.
Map view	Show map and navigation related information.
Wide Map view	Show map and navigation related information.
AR view (if equipped)	Show AR navigation and navigation related information.

The information provided may differ depending on which functions are available on your vehicle.



Normal view, Driving Assist view, Map view, Wide Map view, and AR view mode are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Normal view is also shown in the widget mode.

Normal view

In the Normal view, using the  (Optical mouse), you may change through items in the following order.

Current trip



Trip distance, total driving time, average energy consumption, and instant energy consumption are displayed.

The information is combined for each ignition cycle. However, when the vehicle has been OFF for 3 minutes or longer the Drive Info screen is reset.

After charging



Trip distance, total driving time, average energy consumption, and instant energy consumption after the vehicle has been recharged are displayed.

To reset manually, press the  button two times on the steering wheel when 'After charging' appears.

Since last reset

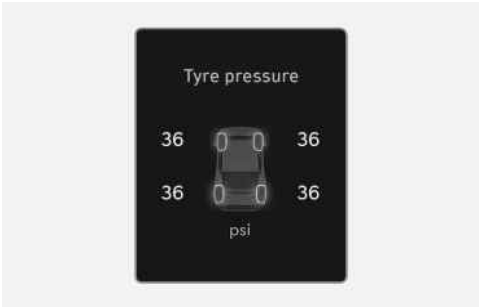


Accumulated trip distance, total driving time, average energy consumption, and instant energy consumption are displayed.

The information is accumulated starting from the last reset.

To reset manually, press the  button two times on the steering wheel when 'Since Last Reset' appears.

Tyre pressure



The tyre pressure of each tyre appears.

For more information, refer to the **Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)**.

Driving force distribution (AWD)

 if equipped



This mode displays information related to AWD driving force.

For more information, refer to the **All Wheel Drive (AWD)**.

Driving Assist view



Displays the state of Smart Cruise Control, Lane Following Assist, Lane Keeping Assist, Highway Driving Assist, etc., when Driving Assist view is selected.

For more information, refer to each system information section in chapter 7.

Information

The current operation condition of the vehicle's Driver Assistance systems appears.

5. Convenience features

This chapter explains how to use the user convenience features provided in the vehicle.

Information

- The illustrations are shown as a guide. The actual shape may differ from the illustration.
 - The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.
 - The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.
-

Smart key



1.  Tailgate open/close
2.  Door unlock
3.  Door lock
4.  Remote start
5.  Remote Smart Parking Assist (Forward/Backward) (if equipped)
6.  Charging door open/close

Opening/Closing the tailgate

To open the tailgate:

Have the smart key with you. Press the tailgate open button on the vehicle or press and hold the Tailgate open/close button on the smart key for more than 1 second. The hazard warning lights blink two times and the tailgate open.

To close the tailgate:

Press and hold the Tailgate open/close button on the smart key to close the opened tailgate. If you release the button whilst the tailgate is being closed, it stops working and the chime sounds for about 5 seconds.

The Tailgate open/close button only operates when the smart key is within 40 in. (1 m) from the tailgate.

Unlocking your vehicle

Touch the touch sensor on the door handle (the engraved part) or press the Door Lock button on the smart key.

- The chime sounds and hazard warning lights blink two times.
- The outside rearview mirrors unfold if **On door unlock** or **On driver approach** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.

Information

After unlocking the doors, the doors are locked automatically after 30 seconds unless a door is opened.

Setting the door lock/unlock prevention feature

The doors may lock or unlock if the touch sensor of the outer door handle is recognised whilst washing your car or due to heavy rain.

To prevent unintentional door lock or unlock, press the lock button on the smart key and immediately press the unlock button along with the lock button for more than 4 seconds. The hazard warning lights blink four times.

At this time, the doors do not lock or unlock even though the touch sensor is touched on the outside door handle.

To deactivate the function, press the door lock or unlock button on the smart key.

Smart key reminder

If the Smart key is in the vehicle, and the door is locked with the central door lock/unlock button in the vehicle with a door open, the doors are not locked but unlocked again.

Locking your vehicle

Close all doors, bonnet, and tailgate, and touch the touch sensor on the door handle (the engraved part) or press the Door Lock button on the smart key.

- The chime sounds and hazard warning lights blink.
- The outside rearview mirrors fold if **On door unlock** or **On driver approach** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.



WARNING

Do not leave the Smart Key in your vehicle with unsupervised children.

Unattended children could press the Start/Stop button and may operate power windows, lock the doors or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious injury or death.

NOTICE

Before you leave your vehicle with the Smart Key, verify that your vehicle is locked. When using the touch sensor on the front door handle, listen to hear that the lock has actuated, and then pull the handle within 3 seconds to confirm the doors are locked (If it has been longer than 3 seconds, verify the doors are locked by pressing the lock button on the Smart Key. You can hear a single beep.).

Remotely starting vehicle

- 1 Press the door lock button on the smart key within about 32 ft. (10 m) from the vehicle.

- 2 Press the Remote Start button on the smart key for more than 2 seconds within 4 seconds from when you have pressed the Door lock button. The vehicle starts.
 - The vehicle must be in P (Park) for the remote start function to start.
- 3 To turn off the vehicle, press the Remote Start button once.

Non-operating conditions

- The message '**Smart Key must be present to keep the vehicle running**' appears if you get on the vehicle without a registered smart key.
- The vehicle turns off if you do not get in the vehicle within 10 minutes after remotely starting the vehicle.
- The Remote Start button may not operate if the smart key is not within 32 ft. (10 m) from the vehicle.
- The vehicle does not remotely start if the bonnet or tailgate is open.

Remotely moving vehicle forward or backward

 if equipped

With the smart key, the vehicle can be moved forward or backward remotely to enter or exit a tight parking space.

For more information, refer to the **Remote Smart Parking Assist 2 (RSPA 2)**.

Remotely opening and closing the charging door

Press the charging door open/close button on the smart key.

For more information, refer to the **Electric charging door**.

Remotely initiating electricity charging

To remotely start charging the vehicle:

Press the charging door open/close button in the smart key more than 2 seconds whilst the charging connector is connected to the vehicle.

Stating the vehicle

Some models are equipped with a Start/Stop button instead of a key cylinder. For more information, refer to the **Start/Stop button**.

NOTICE

- To prevent damaging the smart key:
 - Keep the smart key in a cool, dry place to avoid damage or malfunction. Exposure to moisture or high temperature may cause the internal circuit of the smart key to malfunction. This may not be covered under warranty.
 - Avoid dropping or throwing the smart key.
 - Protect the smart key from extreme temperatures.
 - If the smart key is not moved for some time, the detection function for smart key operation will pause. Lift the smart key to activate the detection again.
-

Mechanical key/Key cylinder (Driver door)

For more information, refer to the **Using the mechanical key**.

Using mechanical key

If the smart key does not operate normally, you can lock or unlock the driver's door by using the mechanical key.

- 1 Press the GENESIS text section of the Mechanical key to remove the case.



- 2 Remove the mechanical key from the case.



Loss of a smart key

A maximum of two smart keys can be registered to a single vehicle. If you happen to lose your smart key, we recommend to immediately take the vehicle and remaining key to an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products or tow the vehicle, if necessary.

Smart key precautions

The smart key may not work if any of the following occur:

- The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as radio station or airport that may interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
- The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a mobile phone.
- Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.
- The smart key is near any normal electronic devices or credit cards.
- The vehicle battery is discharged.
- Connecting an external device to the power outlet and placing the smart key near the external device.
- If your windows are tinted, especially with metallic window tint, it may cause frequency interference, reducing the smart key operating range.

- Make sure the smart key battery is inserted in the correct polarity before use. Using an improperly positioned battery may cause smart key failure or premature discharge of the battery.

If the smart key does not work correctly, open and close the door with the mechanical key. To start the vehicle, press the Start/Stop button directly with the smart key. If you have a problem with the smart key, it is recommended to contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

NOTICE

- Keep the smart key away from electromagnetic materials that blocks electromagnetic waves to the key surface.
 - If the smart key is in close proximity to your mobile phone, the signal could be blocked by your mobile phone's normal operational signals. This is specifically relevant when the phone is active such as making and receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. When possible, avoid keeping the smart key and your mobile phone in the same location such as a pants or jacket pocket to avoid interference between the two devices.
 - Always have the smart key with you when leaving the vehicle. If the smart key is left near the vehicle, the vehicle battery may be discharged.
-

Replacing the battery

Battery type: CR2450

- 1 Press the button to remove the keyring fixed appliance.



1. Keyring unlock button
- 2 Insert a flat head screwdriver into the inner groove to remove the smart key cover.
- 3 Remove the old battery.

- 4 Install a new battery and reinstall the smart key cover in the reverse order of removal. Make sure the battery position is correct. An improperly positioned battery may discharged the battery, causing smart key failure.



If you suspect your smart key might have sustained some damage or you feel your smart key is not working correctly, it is recommended to contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.



WARNING

This product contains a button battery.

If swallowed, a lithium button battery can cause severe or fatal injuries within 2 hours. Keep batteries out of reach of children.

If you think batteries may have been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, seek immediate medical attention.

NOTICE



An inappropriately disposed battery may be harmful to the environment and human health. Always dispose of a used battery according to your local law(s) and regulations.

Immobiliser system

The immobiliser system helps protect your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the vehicle is disabled.

When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position, the immobiliser system indicator should come on briefly, then go off. If the indicator starts to blink, the system does not recognise the coding of the key.

Press the Start/Stop button to the POWER ON or DRIVE READY again.

The system may not recognise your key's coding if another immobiliser key or other metal object (for example, key chain) is near the key. The vehicle may not start because the metal may interrupt the transponder signal from transmitting normally.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of the key, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Do not attempt to modify this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems may occur making your vehicle inoperable.



CAUTION

To prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle. Your immobiliser password is a customer unique password and should be kept confidential.

NOTICE

Avoid exposing the key to moisture, static electricity, and rough handling. The immobiliser system may malfunction.

Genesis digital key

 if equipped

Genesis digital key provides convenience to the driver, which the driver can use to lock or unlock the all doors or the tailgate and turn on the vehicle.

Digital key (Smartphone)

Information

- Genesis digital keys are only available on smartphone that support digital key functions, and digital key functions of smartphones are provide by smartphone manufacturers.
 - Available smartphone brands and models can be found on smartphone manufactures' website or Genesis website (<https://owners.genesis.com>).
 - Certain functions may not operate depending on whether the service is provided in the vehicle.
 - Depending on the availability of service on the vehicle, some functions may not operated.
-

Setting your smartphone

To use the digital key (smartphone), download the Genesis Intelligent Assistant App and sign up for a Genesis account and service.

Registering your digital key (smartphone)



- 1 Turn on the vehicle with a smart key and have your smart key with you in the vehicle.
- 2 Put the gear in P (Park), select **Setup > Vehicle > Digital key > Smartphone key > Pers. smartphone key** from the infotainment system.
- 3 After selecting **Digital key > Set Up Digital Key** from the Genesis Intelligent Assistant App in the smart phone, register the digital key according to the guidance in the smart phone screen.
 - Ultra Wide Band unsupported smartphone
 - Place your smartphone on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) with the screen facing up.
 - The NFC Antenna position on Samsung device can be found in the following path: **Setup > Connections > NFC and contactless payments.**

- The NFC Antenna position on Google Pixel phone can be found in the following path: **Setup > Connected devices > Connection preference > NFC**.
- Ensure that the NFC Antenna position on the smartphone is in contact with the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad).
- The NFC Antenna position on Apple iPhone is located at the top of the rear and Apple WATCH is located at the centre of the screen.



- The location of the NFC Antenna on the smartphone may vary by phone model, so please contact the smartphone manufacturer for details.
 - NFC communication may not work for some smartphones depending on the internal structure of the smartphone. Move the smartphone to the left or right of the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) to operate.
- Ultra Wide Band supported smartphone
 - The digital key can be registered if the smartphone is inside the vehicle even without placing it on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad).
- 4 Press **Save** button in the infotainment system to start registration.
- When the digital key (smartphone) is saved, a message appears on the infotainment system.

Information

- If you want to register a different digital key (smartphone), refer to **Deleting your digital key (smartphone)** and delete the digital key (smartphone) before re-registering. An active Digital Key can be shared through the Genesis Connected Services App with a different smartphone (Only for countries available with Genesis Connected Services).
 - During the digital key saving process, the process may cancel when:
 - The smartphone is removed from the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad)
 - The infotainment system is changed
 - The vehicle is turned off
 - The gear is shifted
 - The registering process does not start if a smart key is not in the vehicle.
 - Some smartphones may not start the registering process depending on the internal structure. Move the smartphone to the left or right on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charger pad) and try registering the smartphone.
 - Ultra Wide Band (UWB) is a radio technology that can use a very low energy level for short-range, high-bandwidth communications over a large portion of the radio spectrum.
-

Using the digital key (smartphone)

Digital key touch control

The driver can lock or unlock the door by placing the smartphone on the outside door handle, and the vehicle can be started by placing the smartphone on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad).

Information

The location of the NFC Antenna on the smartphone may vary by phone model, so please contact the smartphone manufacturer for details.

Digital key close proximity control

- If you have the smartphone in possession, the doors can be locked or unlocked without touching the smartphone to the door handle, but by touching the door lock/unlock sensor (engraved part) on the door handle. Also, the vehicle can be started by pressing the Start/Stop button without placing the smartphone on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad).
- When the smartphone and vehicle is connected by Bluetooth, the Door Lock/Unlock, Remote Start and Tailgate open functions are available using the App provided by the smartphone manufacturer.

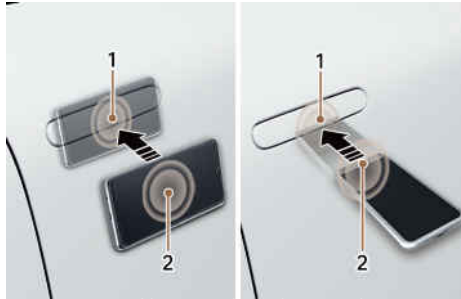
Information

- The function is only available for Ultra Wide Band supported smartphone digital keys. To use the function, the smartphone's Bluetooth must be activated.
 - The necessary distance between the smartphone and vehicle for Bluetooth connection may vary depending on the surroundings of the vehicle and smartphone.
 - The Remote Start or Tailgate open function may not be available depending on the country or vehicle type (hybrid, plug-in hybrid or electric vehicle).
-

Locking/Unlocking the doors

- Ultra Wide Band unsupported smartphone

Samsung smartphones/Apple iPhone



1. Door handle authentication pad
2. NFC Antenna

- If the driver places the digital key (smartphone) NFC antenna to the driver's or passenger's door handle authentication pad for more than 2 seconds, the door locks or unlocks.
- Ultra Wide Band supported smartphone
 - If you touch the door lock/unlock sensor (engraved part) on the door handle with the smart phone in possession, the door locks or unlocks.

After unlocking the doors, the doors are automatically re-locked after 30 seconds unless a door is opened.

If the smartphone digital key does not operate, try again after moving the smartphone away from the door handle authentication pad (more than 4 in. (0.1 m)).

Information

- You cannot lock your vehicle using the digital key (smartphone) if any of the following occurs:
 - The smart key is in the vehicle.
 - The Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.
 - Any of the doors, bonnet, or tailgate are open.
 - The door may not unlock automatically if you stay near the vehicle for several minutes with the Ultra Wide Band supported smartphone in possession.
 - If the smartphone is kept in the back pocket or bag, it may cause poor Bluetooth connection, or the door lock/unlock or vehicle start-up operation may be delayed.
-

Starting the vehicle

- Ultra Wide Band unsupported smartphone
 - After placing your registered digital key (smartphone) on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad), depress the brake pedal and press the Start/Stop button.
 - After starting the vehicle, the digital key (smartphone) may be removed from the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad).
 - NFC communication may not work for some smartphones depending on the internal structure of the smartphone. Move the smartphone to the left or right of the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) to operate.
- Ultra Wide Band supported smartphone
 - With the smartphone inside the vehicle, depress the brake pedal and press the Start/Stop button.
 - To start the vehicle remotely, use the App provided by the smartphone manufacturer to lock the vehicle with the Door Lock button, and press the Remote Start button. The vehicle starts and the hazard warning lights blink.
 - Press the remote start button again to turn off the vehicle.

For more information on the basic way to start the vehicle, refer to the **Start/Stop button**.

Information

If a shared digital key (smartphone) is used for the first time, the activating time may take longer.

- Place the shared digital key (smartphone) on the door handle authentication pad until the vehicle door lock/unlock activates.
 - If a shared digital key (smartphone) is first used on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charger pad), the initial start of the vehicle may fail.
 - If the door lock/unlock is activated once with the shared digital key (smartphone) or the vehicle is started with the digital key (smartphone) on the vehicle authentication pad, the digital key (smartphone) is registered in the vehicle.
-

WARNING

The vehicle can be started when the registered smartphone is placed on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad). Therefore, do not leave unsupervised children or people who are not aware of the system since it can result in serious injury or death. In addition, always have the registered smartphone with you to prevent vehicle theft when leaving the vehicle.

Operating the tailgate

Ultra Wide Band supported smartphone

- If the vehicle is locked, press the tailgate open button with the smartphone in possession to open the tailgate.
- If you are in the detecting area behind the tailgate for more than 3 seconds with the smartphone in possession when **Smart Tailgate** is set, the tailgate opens automatically.

WARNING

The vehicle can be started when the registered smartphone is placed on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad). Therefore, do not leave unsupervised children or people who are not aware of the system since it can result in serious injury or death. In addition, always have the registered smartphone with you to prevent vehicle theft when leaving the vehicle.

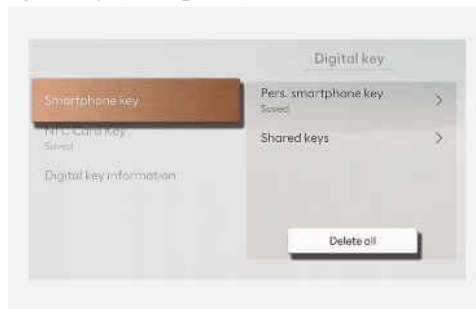
Information

- The Ultra Wide Band supported smartphone digital key can be used only when the smartphone and vehicle are connected with Bluetooth.
 - The necessary distance between the smartphone and vehicle for Bluetooth connection may vary depending on the surroundings.
 - Window tinting substances may cause poor Bluetooth connection.
 - If the smartphone is kept in the back pocket or bag, it may cause poor Bluetooth connection, or the door lock/unlock or vehicle start-up operation may be delayed.
 - The Ultra Wide Band supported smartphone digital key can be used only for a certain amount of time to optimize the performance of the smartphone and vehicle battery. If you stay near the vehicle for several minutes with the Ultra Wide Band supported smartphone, the Auto Unlock feature may not operate.
 - Check the smartphone's setting menu or the App provided by the smartphone manufacturer for the connection of the vehicle and smartphone.
 - The Ultra Wide Band supported smartphone digital key can also use the NFC function.
-

Deleting your digital key (smartphone)

Turn on the vehicle with a smart key. Have your smart key with you in the vehicle.

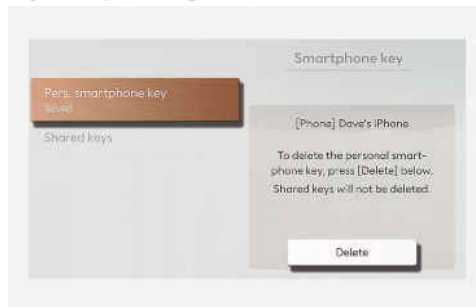
Deleting all registered digital key (smartphone)



To delete all the registered digital key (smartphone), select **Setup > Vehicle > Digital key > Smartphone key > Delete all** from the infotainment system.

- The **Delete all** button is disabled if there is no registered digital key (smartphone).

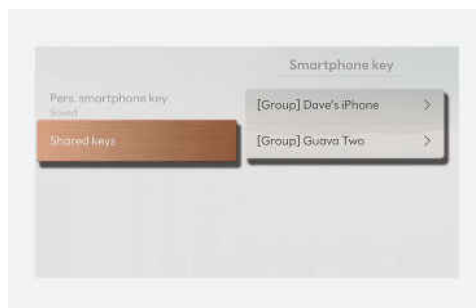
Deleting my registered digital key (smartphone)



To delete only my registered digital key (smartphone), select **Setup > Vehicle > Digital key > Smartphone key > Pers. smartphone key > Delete** from the infotainment system.

- A new smartphone can be registered after deleting the existing digital key (smartphone) from **Pers. smartphone key** menu.

Deleting shared keys





To delete a shared key (smartphone), select **Setup > Vehicle > Digital key > Smartphone key > Shared keys > [Group] > Delete all** from the infotainment system.

- Shared keys regards the digital key (smartphone) as **[Group]** except **Pers. smartphone key**.
- If the account you log on to has not been changed, then it will be under the same **[Group]**.
- You may delete **Shared keys** by the **[Group]**.

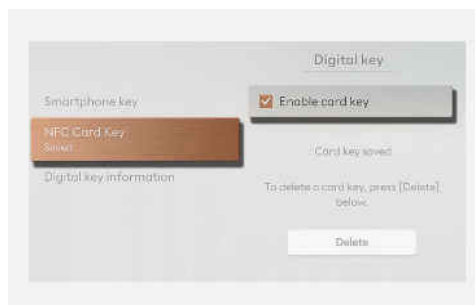
Information

- If the registered digital key (smartphone) is deleted, the digital key saved in the smartphone is also deleted.
 - If the digital key is deleted from the smartphone, the digital key (smartphone) registered in the vehicle is also deleted.
 - Even though the Genesis Connected Services App is deleted from the smartphone, the digital key saved in the smartphone is not deleted.
 - Management of the digital key saved in the smartphone is available from the Digital Key App provided by the smartphone manufacturer.
-

Digital key (Card key)

How to register Digital key (Card Key)

To use the card key as a digital key, follow the following procedure.





- 1 Have both of your smart keys with you in the vehicle.
- 2 Select **Setup > Vehicle > Digital key > NFC Card Key**, and check whether **Enable card key** is selected in the infotainment system.
- 3 Place your card key on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) whilst the vehicle is on.
- 4 Register your card key by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Digital key > NFC Card Key > Enable card key** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.

Information

- Only one digital key (card key) can be registered to the vehicle. If it must be replaced, delete the existing card key before registering the new card key.
 - To register a digital key (card key), both of your smart keys must be in the vehicle.
 - Once a digital key (card key) is registered, it cannot be registered in another vehicle. It is possible to re-register it to the original vehicle.
-

Using the digital key (card key)

The driver can lock or unlock the door by placing the card key on the outside door handle, and the vehicle can be started by placing the card key on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad).

Locking/Unlocking the doors

If the driver places the digital key (card key) to the driver's or passenger's door handle authentication pad for more than 2 seconds, the door locks or unlocks.

After unlocking the doors, the doors are automatically re-locked after 30 seconds unless a door is opened.

Information

You cannot lock your vehicle using the digital key (card key) if any of the following occurs:

- The smart key is in the vehicle.
 - The Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.
 - Any of the doors, bonnet, or tailgate are open.
-

Starting the vehicle

After placing your registered digital key (card key) on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad), depress the brake pedal and press the Start/Stop button.

For more information on the basic way to start the vehicle, refer to the **Start/Stop button**.



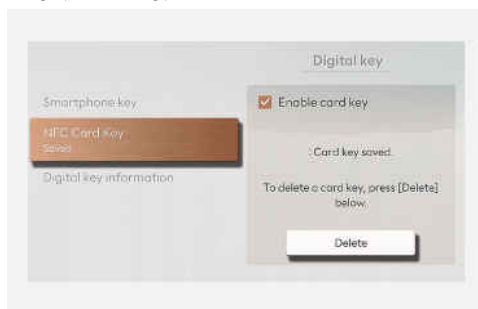
WARNING

The vehicle can be started when the registered card key is placed on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad). Therefore, do not leave unsupervised children or people who are not aware of the system since it can result in serious injury or death. In addition, always have the registered card key with you to prevent vehicle theft when leaving the vehicle.

NOTICE

- The digital key (card key) may not work under the following conditions:
 - The digital key (card key) is not placed on the door handle authentication pad or vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) correctly.
 - The digital key (card key) is near NFC-enabled cards such as credit cards or smartphones.
If the digital key (card key) does not work, try again after moving the digital key (card key) away from the door handle authentication pad (more than 4 in. (0.1 m)).
 - The digital key (card key) can be damaged by impacts. If the digital key (card key) is damaged, replace the digital key (card key) with a new one and register it again.
 - Long-time exposure to high temperature may cause the digital key (card key) to malfunction. Be careful not to expose the digital key (card key) to direct sunlight or high temperature.
 - Leaving the digital key (card key) on the in-vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) whilst driving may cause the digital key (card key) to malfunction. Remove the digital key (card key) from the in-vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) after starting the vehicle.
 - Keep the digital key (card key) away from the smartphone when charging the smartphone. If the digital key (card key) is placed between the smartphone and the in-vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad) whilst the smartphone is being charged, the digital key (card key) may malfunction. For example, when charging smartphone whilst the digital key (card key) is attached to the back of the smartphone case.
-

Deleting your digital key (card key)



- 1 Turn on the vehicle with a smart key. Have your smart key with you in the vehicle.
- 2 Select **Setup > Vehicle > Digital key > NFC Card Key > Delete** from the infotainment system.
 - The '**Delete**' button is disabled if there is no digital key (card key) registered.

Personalized profile and vehicle settings

You can link the user profile with the registered digital key (smartphone). If the account you log on to a smartphone has not been changed, then it will be under the same **[Group]**. All digital keys (smartphone) will be connected to the **[Group]**.

Your vehicle will automatically activate with the registered profile if you get on the vehicle with your digital key (smartphone). You can refer to the following menus for keys under the same **[Group]**, except my smartphone key.

Select **Setup > Vehicle > Digital key > Smartphone key > Shared keys > [Group]** from the infotainment system.

Linking/Unlinking profile

How to link user profile

- 1 Select **Setup > User profile > Link digital key (Smartphone)** from Settings menu in the infotainment system.
- 2 Select '**Link**' to connect the registered smartphone's digital key and the user's profile.
- 3 Follow the instructions according to the message on the infotainment system.

How to unlink user profile

Select **Setup > User profile**, and then deselect '**Link digital key (Smartphone)**' from Settings menu in the infotainment system.

- Unlinking is possible only when user profile is linked.

Information

- User profile cannot be linked to both Driver 1 and Driver 2 that are connected to single smartphone. Personalization operates with the recently linked user profile, and the previously linked user profile will be automatically cancelled.
- User profile link works only when the digital key is registered to the vehicle.
- Digital key (card key) cannot be linked with a user profile.
- If the user profile linked digital key in the smartphone is deleted, the digital key should be re-registered and personalized by linking the user profile again.

Vehicle personalization operation

- The personalization function linked with digital key works when the profile linked smartphone is placed on the outside door handle authentication pad to lock or unlock the doors.
- The profile set by the digital key can be changed manually from the infotainment system.
- The personalization function using the digital key can be operated after linking the digital key in the infotainment system profile menu.
- The personalization function works only when the vehicle is OFF or when the vehicle is started remotely. If the vehicle is not started remotely, the personalization function does not work with the digital key.

Information

User profile operation according to door lock/unlock system is as follows:

Item	Personalization Operation
Initial value	Guest
Profile linked smartphone key	Linked profile
Profile unlinked smartphone key	Recently activated profile
NFC card key	
Smart key	

Used vehicle/Digital key maintenance

Purchasing used vehicle

When purchasing a used vehicle, make sure to delete the smartphone key and card key registered by the previous user.
If the card key comes with the vehicle, check whether it operates properly.

Digital Key maintenance

If you need to have your Digital Key system repaired or replaced, the registered smartphone key or card key can be deleted.

Limitations of the system

- Genesis Digital Key may not operate if any of the following occurs:
 - Smartphone battery or the vehicle battery is discharged.
 - NFC or Bluetooth is turned off on the smartphone settings.
 - A credit card is near your smartphone, or a metal or thick smartphone case is used.
 - The card key is in a wallet or card holder, or overlapped with other cards.
 - There is electronic interference by other vehicles, objects, etc.
 - If you use a smartphone cover that uses wireless communication or is made of metal, remove the smartphone cover.
- The vehicle may not be controlled by the smartphone if any of the following occurs:
 - Other smartphone functions (calls, urgent calls, or audio), apps, or wireless earphones are operating.
 - The Genesis Connected Services App function such as basic setting or app launching is limited by the prior policy according to the manufacturer.

Fingerprint authentication system

Fingerprint Authentication system provides features such as starting the vehicle, having access to personal information, unlocking profile, and exiting valet mode with a registered fingerprint.

A fingerprint must be registered in the User Profile Settings from the infotainment system to use the system.

The maximum of two fingerprints can be registered. Driver 1 and Driver 2 can register one fingerprint each.

Information

If no fingerprint is registered in the infotainment system, Fingerprint Authentication system does not operate.

Fingerprint authentication system settings

You can set or delete a fingerprint through the infotainment system.

Follow the following procedure.

Registering fingerprint



- 1 Have both of your smart keys with you in the vehicle.
- 2 Turn on the vehicle and select **Setup > User profile > Driver 1 (or Driver 2) > Fingerprint identification** from the infotainment system.
- 3 After entering the profile password, select **Set/Delete fingerprint > Save**.
- 4 Place your finger that you wish to register on the fingerprint sensor according to the instruction.
- 5 Following the instructions, place several parts of your fingerprint until the scanning process is complete.

When scanning is complete, the '**Saving fingerprint....**' appears and the fingerprint registering process is proceeded.

Information

- Remove all substances including protection film on the fingerprint sensor, and then register your fingerprint.
- The fingerprint registering process is cancelled when the following condition occurs:
 - The infotainment system screen is altered.
 - The Start/Stop button turns on or off.
 - The gear is shifted, and the vehicle is driven.

Deleting fingerprint

- 1 Have one of your smart key with you in the vehicle.
- 2 Turn on the vehicle and select **Setup > User profile > Driver 1 (or Driver 2) > Fingerprint identification** from the infotainment system.
- 3 After entering the profile password, select **Set/Delete fingerprint > Delete**.
- 4 Delete the registered fingerprint according to the message '**Delete all Driver 1 (or Driver 2) fingerprints?**'.



CAUTION

Do not participate in duplicating your fingerprint with anyone.

Fingerprint authentication system operation

Using features with touch control

The convenience features such as starting the vehicle, accessing personal information, unlocking profile, and exiting valet mode are available with the Fingerprint Authentication system.

When the fingerprint shape appears on the infotainment system screen, you should place your finger on the fingerprint sensor in the vehicle according to the instruction message for authorization and then you can operate the linked features without entering the password.

If the Fingerprint Authentication system does not work, pull your finger away from the fingerprint authentication sensor and then try again.

Fingerprint linked features can be turned on or off from the Settings menu.

Select: **Setup > User profile > Driver 1 (or Driver 2) > Fingerprint identification**

Fingerprint linked features	Characteristic
Starting vehicle	Start vehicle with fingerprint but without smart key.
Personal information access	Use features with fingerprint but without a password.
Profile unlock	
Valet mode exit	

Information

If the same fingerprint is registered for Driver 1 and Driver 2, the authentication result is linked to Driver 1, when authentication is successful.

Starting the vehicle

Place your finger on the fingerprint sensor to verify your fingerprint. After it is successfully verified, start the vehicle by pressing the Start/Stop button within 30 seconds.



1. Fingerprint sensor
2. Start/Stop button

Fingerprint authentication status	Light colour	Message on cluster
Standby	White	-
Succeed	Blue	'Authentication successful. The vehicle can now be started'
Fail	Yellow	-
Restricted due to consecutive failure	Red	'Fingerprint authorization is locked out. Try again in XX min'

Information

- Fingerprint authorization is restricted for 1 minute, 3 minutes, or 5 minutes when failed every 5 times.
- For more information on how to start your vehicle with the Start/Stop button, refer to the **Start/Stop button**.
- If you are in the vehicle for an extended period without starting the vehicle, the fingerprint sensor may turn off. If this occurs, depress the brake pedal and verify your fingerprint again when the fingerprint sensor illuminates.

Limitations of the system

- Fingerprint Authentication system may not work when:
 - Fingerprint authentication is performed with an unregistered fingerprint.

- The fingerprint is not placed on the centre of the fingerprint sensor.
- The fingerprint sensor or fingerprint is wet or dirty.
- The film on the sensor is not removed.
- The registered fingerprint is wounded or swollen.
- The hand is overly dry.
- The sensor is touched shortly.
- If fingerprint authentication fails repeatedly, fingerprint recognition is temporarily restricted. You should try it later or try other methods such as inputting your password.
- All registered fingerprints may be deleted during repair due to a malfunction of the fingerprint authentication system or related parts. Have your smart key when you visit an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- You cannot use the fingerprint sensor when the vehicle is discharged.
- Gently place your finger on the fingerprint sensor. Fingerprint authentication attempts with excessive force may fail.



WARNING

Do not register children's fingerprints in the vehicle.

If you register children's fingerprints and leave them in the vehicle, unexpected accidents may occur.

When purchasing a used vehicle

If you purchase a used vehicle, you should confirm and delete all of the registered fingerprints in Driver 1 and Driver 2 profile.

Face connect

 if equipped

Face Connect allows the driver to lock and unlock the vehicle without a smart key, by recognizing the driver's face.

Register the face in the **'User profile'** from the infotainment system to use Face Connect. A maximum of 2 faces can be registered, one for each driver profile.

Face connect settings

The driver can register a new face or delete the registered face from the profile menu in the infotainment system.

Registering face



1. Face recognition camera
 - 1 Place both smart keys inside the vehicle.
 - 2 Select **Setup > User profile > Driver 1 (or Driver 2)** from the infotainment system whilst the Start/Stop button is in the DRIVE READY position.
 - 3 Enter the profile password and select **Set/Delete Facial recognition > Save**. The circular light on the face recognition camera illuminates in white and starts rotating.
- It indicates the progress of face registration:

Progress	Circular light
Face registration in progress	Rotating in white
Face registration completed	Green
Face registration failed	Red

- 4 Follow the instruction and exit the vehicle. Look into the camera lens whilst keeping your face 12-31 in. (0.3-0.8 m) away from the camera. The system will start registering your face.
 - Keep the driver's door opened whilst registering your face. Audio guidance may be provided from the speaker inside the vehicle.
 - If the audio guidance is provided whilst the door and window are both closed, the window may open automatically.

- Check if the camera lens is covered with foreign substances such as raindrop or dust. If so, clean the camera lens before registering your face.

Information

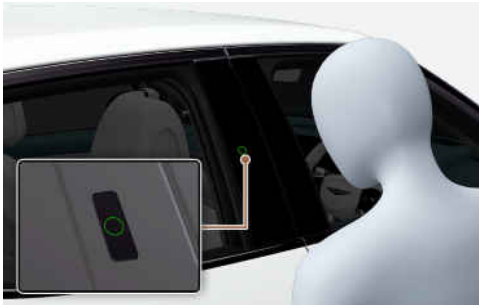
- To increase recognition rates whilst registering the face.
 - Do not cover the face with masks or other accessories and look into the face recognition camera lens straight ahead.
 - From the centre of the face, naturally change directions of the face to register.
 - Register the face indoors or away from direct sunlight.
 - If face registration is not possible, audio guidance is provided from the vehicle's interior speaker 15 seconds after registration starts. Faces cannot be registered in the following situations.
 - When the face is covered by a mask, sunglasses, hat, etc.
 - When the driver is not in front of the face recognition camera.
 - When the face is not directly facing the camera lens.
 - When the face is too far away (over 31 in. (0.8 m)) from the camera.
 - When the face is too close (12 in. (0.3 m) or less) to the camera.
 - Face registration may be cancelled in the following situations.
 - When the infotainment system screen is changed.
 - When the vehicle is turned off.
 - When you start driving.
 - After registration, if there are difficulties recognizing the face due to changes in appearance such as makeup, beard, or glasses, register the face again.
 - The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.
-

Deleting registered face information

- 1 Place one or more smart keys inside the vehicle.
- 2 Whilst the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position, select **Setup > User profile > Driver 1 (or Driver 2) > Facial recognition** from the infotainment system.
- 3 Enter the profile password and select **Set/Delete Facial recognition > Delete**.
- 4 Delete the registered face information according to the message '**Delete all Driver 1 facial recognition?**'.

Face connect operation

Lock/Unlocking doors with face recognition



By recognizing a registered face, the vehicle door can be locked or unlocked without a smart key. Touch the centre of the door lock/unlock sensor on the outer door handle to start face recognition. The circular light on the face recognition camera illuminates in white and starts rotating. Look into the camera lens straight ahead within a distance of 12-31 in. (0.3-0.8 m). When the face recognition is complete, the circular light will change its colour to green and the vehicle door will lock or unlock.

Category	Circular light colour
Recognizing	White
Recognition successful	Green
Recognition failed	Red

Information

- The camera cannot recognise the face if it is covered with a mask. Take off the mask or at least lower the mask until the nose is completely visible.
- Touching the sensor on the outer door handle whilst carrying a smart key will lock or unlock the door. At this time, Face Connect does not operate.
- For more details on locking and unlocking the door, refer to **Smart key**.

Limitations of the system

- Face Connect may not work when:
 - Scanning an unregistered face.
 - The registered face is not directly in front of the camera.
 - The camera lens is covered with water or foreign substances.
 - The face is significantly different from the registered face due to changes in appearance from heavy makeup, beard, or plastic surgery.
 - The eyes are not visible due to wearing sunglasses.
 - The sunlight is strong, or when there is heavy rain or snow.

- The face is partially covered with an umbrella or raincoat during bad weather.
- Faces of similar appearance (such as twins) may be recognised by Face Connect and lock or unlock the door.
- If you cannot lock or unlock the vehicle door due to malfunction of the face recognition camera or controller, we recommend that you have your vehicle be checked by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- When you have your vehicle serviced due to failures of the Face Connect system or related parts, all registered faces may be deleted during the repair. Carry two smart keys to your visit and re-register your face immediately after your vehicle is repaired.
- You cannot use the Face Connect system when the vehicle is discharged.
- If the face entry check box in infotainment system is unchecked, face connect system is deactivated. It is activated automatically when the face is registered.
- If you have left your smart key or digital key in your vehicle and locked the vehicle door with Face Connect, keep the smart key out of sight to prevent theft.



WARNING

Do not register a child's face on the vehicle as unexpected accidents may occur.

When purchasing a used vehicle

If you purchase a used vehicle, you should confirm and delete all registered face in Driver 1 and Driver 2 profile.

If a face is registered, the message 'Biometric authentication active' appears on the instrument cluster once when the vehicle is turned on whilst the doors are unlocked.

Legal compliance

This system uses facial recognition and authentication which may be considered 'biometrics' under law. Use of this system consents to the collection, use, and storage of your data for the disclosed activities. (By setting your Facial Recognition Profile, you consent to using facial recognition for locking and unlocking the vehicle.) We will only use or share your data as needed for system use, maintenance, and storage. Stored data cannot be converted into your facial image. You may delete your facial recognition data at any time.

Door locks

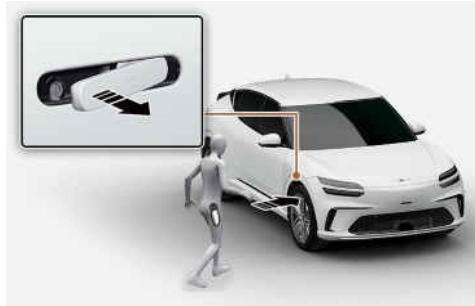
Operating door locks from outside the vehicle

Locking the door

Have the smart key with you and touch the outer part of the door handle on or press the Door Lock button on the smart key, all doors will lock.

- The chime sounds and hazard warning lights blink.

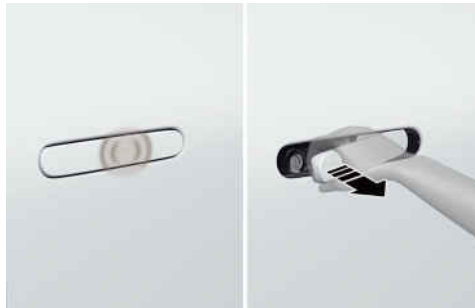
When 'Auto Unlock on Approach' is set



Approach within 40 in. (1 m) to the front outside door handle whilst carrying the smart key or digital key.

- Outside door handles of all doors pop out.
- The hazard warning lights blink two times and all doors unlock.

When 'Auto Unlock on Approach' is not set



Touch the front door lock/unlock sensor (engraved part) on the front outside door handles.

- Outside door handles of all doors pop out.
- The hazard warning lights blink two times and all doors unlock.

Setting door lock/unlock features

The function can be activated or deactivated from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

Setup > Vehicle > Door > Unlock on approach or touch

NOTICE

- If you lock the door with the touch sensor, the doors cannot be unlocked with the touch sensor within 3 seconds.
- If you lock the doors using the door handle touch sensor, the doors are not locked under the following circumstances:
 - The Smart Key is in the vehicle.
 - The Start/Stop button is in the DRIVE READY or POWER ON position.
 - Any door is open.

If this occurs, a chime sounds for about 3 seconds. Check the vehicle before attempting to lock the vehicle again.

Unlocking the door

Have the smart key with you and touch the touch sensor on the door handle or press the Door Unlock button on the smart key.

- The chime sounds and hazard warning lights blink two times.

NOTICE

- The door handle touch sensor only operates when the smart key is within 1 m (40 in.) from the outside door handle.
 - In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.
 - If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.
 - During a car wash or rain, in order to minimise unintentional operation of the touch sensor, the touch sensor may become insensitive. This is not a malfunction.
 - The doors may not lock or unlock in the following situations.
 - If the touch sensor is touched with gloves on
 - If the door is suddenly approached
-

Operating door locks from inside the vehicle



WARNING

- Always close and lock the doors whilst the vehicle is moving. If the doors are unlocked, the risk of being thrown from the vehicle in a collision increases.
 - Do not pull the inner door handle of the driver's or passenger's door whilst the vehicle is moving.
 - Do not leave the elderly, children, or animals unattended in your vehicle. An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot and the elderly, unattended children or animals who cannot escape the vehicle may be seriously injured or killed.
 - Always park your vehicle properly. Depress the brake pedal, change the gear to P (Park), apply the parking brake, press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position, close all windows, lock all doors, and always take the keys with you.
 - Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles, or pedestrians approaching the vehicle to prevent serious injury or death.
-

With the door inside handle



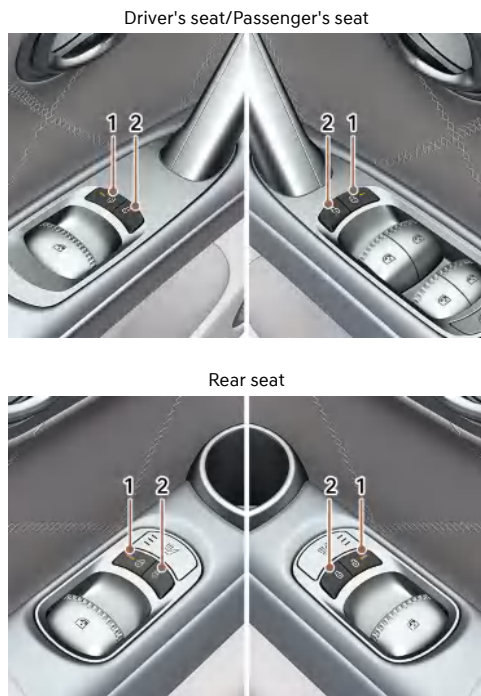
Driver's door/Passenger's door

If the inner door handle is pulled when the door is locked, the door is unlocked and opened.

Rear door

If the inner door handle is pulled once when the door is locked, the door is unlocked. If the inner door handle is pulled once more, the door is opened.

With the central door lock/unlock switch



1. Door unlock (🔓) switch
2. Door lock (🔒) switch

When pressing the 🔓 portion on the switch, all vehicle doors are locked.

If any door is opened, the doors are not locked even though the lock switch of the door is pressed.

When pressing the 🔒 portion on the switch, all vehicle doors are unlocked.

NOTICE

To exit the vehicle if the power door lock does not function:

- Operate the door unlock feature repeatedly (both electronic and manual) whilst simultaneously pulling on the door handle.
- Operate the other door locks and handles.
- Lower the driver's front window and use the mechanical key to unlock the door from outside.

Using the mechanical key

If the smart key does not operate normally, you can lock or unlock the driver's door by using the mechanical key.

Unlocking with the mechanical key

- 1 Pull the door handle whilst pressing the front part of the outside door handle (front side of the vehicle).



1. Lock
 2. Unlock
- 2 Insert the mechanical key into the key cylinder, and turn the key clockwise to unlock the vehicle (direction 2) or counterclockwise to lock the vehicle (direction 1).
Once the doors are unlocked, pull the door handle.
 - 3 After using the mechanical key, turn the key knob and insert the key protector.

NOTICE

- When removing the key cylinder cover, avoid scratching or breaking the plastic material.
- If the key cylinder cover freezes and cannot be removed easily, lightly tap on the cover or try to warm the cover by placing your hands around it and blowing warm air on it.
- Do not apply excessive force to the door and door handle.

Information

Only the driver's door can be locked/unlocked using the mechanical key.

In case of an emergency



In case of emergency such as when the battery is discharged, the only way to lock the door(s) is with the mechanical key from the outside key hole.

Doors without an outside key hole can be locked as follows:

- 1 Open the door.
- 2 Insert a small blade tool (for example, screwdriver or similar) into the emergency door lock hole and turn it clockwise for left side door, or turn it counterclockwise for right side door.
- 3 Close the door securely.

Information

If the electrical power door lock switch does not operate (for example, discharged vehicle battery) and the tailgate is closed, you cannot open the tailgate until power is restored.

Automatic door lock and unlock features

Your vehicle is equipped with features that will automatically lock or unlock your vehicle based on settings you select in the infotainment system.

Auto Lock Enable on speed

When this feature is set in the infotainment system, all the doors will be locked automatically when the vehicle exceeds 9 mph (15 km/h).

Auto Lock Enable on shift

When this feature is set in the infotainment system, all the doors will be locked automatically when the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) whilst the vehicle is running.

Auto Unlock On shift to P

When this feature is set in the infotainment system, all the doors will be unlocked automatically when the vehicle is shifted back into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is running.

Auto Unlock Upon vehicle off

When this feature is set in the infotainment system, all the doors will be unlocked automatically when the vehicle is turned off.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Additional unlock safety feature airbag deployment

As an additional safety feature, all doors will be automatically unlocked when an impact causes the airbags to deploy.

Deadlocks

 if equipped

Some vehicles are equipped with a deadlock system. Deadlocks prevent opening of a door from either inside or outside the vehicle once the deadlocks have been activated providing an additional measure of vehicle security.

To lock the vehicle using the deadlock function, the doors must be locked by using the smart key. To unlock the vehicle, the smart key must be used again.

Child-protector rear door locks

 if equipped



The child safety lock is provided to help prevent children seated in the rear from accidentally opening the rear doors.

The rear door safety locks must be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

The child safety lock is located on the edge of each rear door. When the child safety lock is in the lock position, the rear door does not open if the inner door handle is pulled.

To lock the child safety lock, insert a small flat blade tool (for example, screwdriver or similar) into the slot and turn it to the lock position as shown.

To allow a rear door to be opened from inside the vehicle, unlock the child safety lock.



WARNING

Never allow children to open the rear doors whilst the vehicle is moving. They may fall out of the vehicle. Make sure to use the rear door safety locks whenever children are in the vehicle.

Electronic child safety lock

 if equipped



When the electronic child safety lock button is pressed and the indicator light on the button illuminates, the rear doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

- The rear door window cannot be opened or closed whilst the electronic child safety lock button is in the LOCK position (indicator light ON).

For more information, refer to the **Windows**.

- Electronic child safety lock does not automatically turn on unless the driver presses the electronic child safety lock button.
- If 3 minutes passes after the Start/Stop button is pressed to the OFF position, the indicator on the button turns off, and the driver cannot turn off electronic child safety lock by pressing the button. To turn off the function, press the Start/Stop button to the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position, and then press the electronic child safety lock button.
- If the power is supplied again after removing the battery or battery is discharged whilst the electronic child safety lock button is in the LOCK position, press the button once more to match the state of the indicator on the electronic child safety lock button and actual status of the electronic child safety lock function.
- If the airbag is activated whilst the electronic child safety lock button is in the LOCK position (indicator light ON), the rear doors will unlock automatically.
- Vehicles equipped with the electronic child safety lock feature is not provided with a manual child safety lock.



WARNING

If children accidentally opens the rear door whilst the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out of the vehicle. Electronic child safety lock should always be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

NOTICE

Child safety lock error/Child safety lock failure

When electronic child safety lock does not work even though the button is pressed, the message '**Child safety lock error**' appears and an alarm sounds. If this occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Safe Exit Assist (if equipped with electronic child safety lock)

Safe Exit Assist prevents the rear occupant from opening the rear door. When an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected after the vehicle stops, the rear doors will not unlock even when the driver tries to unlock the rear doors using the electronic child safety lock button.

For more information, refer to the **Safe Exit Assist (SEA)**.

Rear Occupant Alert (ROA)

 if equipped

ROA is provided to help prevent the driver from leaving with any rear passenger left in the vehicle.

ROA setting

To use ROA, it can be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select **Setup > Vehicle > Convenience > Rear Occupant Alert**

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

ROA operation

When you turn off the vehicle and open the driver's door after opening and closing the rear door, the '**Check rear seat for passengers and belongings**' warning message appears on the cluster display.



WARNING

Always check the rear seats before you leave the vehicle.

The ROA system does not actually detect the presence of objects or occupants in the rear seat but just informs you to check the rear seat by using the record of the rear door opening and closing.

Information

The record of the rear door opening and closing resets only when the driver turns the vehicle off and locks the vehicle door. Even if the rear door has not been reopened, an alert may occur if the door record is not reset. For example, if the driver opens the door and exits the vehicle again without locking the door after the ROA operates, the alert may occur again.

Advanced Rear Occupant Alert (ROA)

 if equipped

Advanced ROA is provided to help prevent the driver from leaving the vehicle with the rear passenger left in the vehicle.

The system is designed to help detect an infant and child's presence.

Advanced ROA setting

To use ROA, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select **Setup > Vehicle > Convenience > Rear Occupant Alert**

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Advanced ROA operation

- First alert

When you open the front door after opening and closing the rear door and turning off the vehicle, the '**Check rear seat for passengers and belongings**' warning message appears on the cluster display.

- Second alert

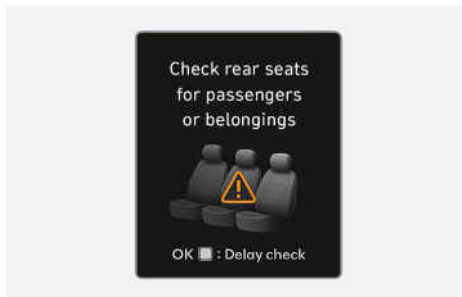
After the first alert, the second alert operates when it detects an infant or child's presence after the driver's door is closed and all the doors are locked.

The horn will sound for about 25 seconds. If the system continues to detect a movement, the alert operates up to 8 times.

Unlock the doors with the smart key to stop the alert. The system detects movement in the vehicle for 10 minutes after the door is locked.

To prevent the second alert from activating, press the  button on the steering wheel when the first alert appears on the cluster.

Cluster



Steering wheel



Information

- The second alert is available for vehicles equipped with the ROA sensor and is activated only after the first alert is activated.
 - If the vehicle is started remotely (if equipped with Remote Start), inside movement detection will stop.
-

Advanced ROA precautions



- Make sure that all the windows are closed. If the window is open, the alert may operate by the sensor detecting an unintended movement (for example, wind or bugs).
- The system is intended to detect the movement of infants sitting in the rear seats. But a movement detected in the driver or passenger seats may cause a false alert.
- If the rear door is opened, and an infant or child is in the rear seat, then the alert may operate after the vehicle is locked.
- An alert can occur if there is an impactor strong movement on the vehicle.
- If boxes or objects are stacked in the vehicle, the system may not detect passengers.
- The alert may operate if the vehicle is pushed, shaken, being washed, or in an environment with noise/vibration after the vehicle is locked.
- The alert may operate when there are metallic or liquid objects in the vehicle.



WARNING

Even if your vehicle is equipped with ROA, always make sure to check the rear seat before you leave the vehicle.

Advanced ROA may not operate when:

- Movement does not continue for a certain period of time.
 - A child is not seated in a child restraint system.
 - The detection may be weak if the signal is obstructed by the vehicle seat or Child Restraining System (for example, child is restrained in the forward facing position).
 - The rear passenger is a child over 6 years.
 - The rear passenger is covered with a fabric containing metallic substance such as a blanket.
 - An object in the vehicle blocks the sensor.
 - The sensor is contaminated by foreign material.
 - An animal at the rear seat is not large enough to be detected by the sensor or there is hardly any movement.
 - Attaching objects or modifying the interior ceiling, or the interior ceiling is deformed or damaged.
 - There are electronic interference around the vehicle.
 - Other environmental reasons that may affect the system.
-

Declaration of Conformity

The radio frequency components (ROA Radar Sensor) complies:

- For Europe and CE certified countries



Trade mark or Trade name : Hyundai Mobis
203, Teheran-ro, Gangnam-gu, Seoul, 06141,
Republic of Korea

M/Name : ICR010

Frequency : 60-64 GHz
Maximum Output Power : 5 dBm

The antenna(s) must be installed such that a minimum separation distance of at least 20 cm is maintained between the radiator (antenna) and all persons at all times. This device must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Hereby, Hyundai Mobis Co.,Ltd declares that the radio equipment type ICR010 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU.

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:
http://www.mobis-as.com/product_certificate.do

Theft-alarm system

This system helps to protect your vehicle and valuables. The horn sounds and the hazard warning lights blink continuously if any of the following occur:

- A door is opened without using the smart key.
- The tailgate is opened without using the smart key.
- The bonnet is opened.

The alarm continues for 30 seconds, then the system resets. To turn off the alarm, unlock the doors with the smart key.

The Theft Alarm System automatically sets 30 seconds after you lock the doors and the tailgate. For the system to activate, you must lock the doors and the tailgate from outside the vehicle by doing one of the following:

- Using the smart key.
- Touching the touch sensor on the outside door handle with the smart key in your possession.

The hazard warning lights blink and the chime sounds once to indicate the system is armed.

Once the security system is set, opening any door, tailgate, or bonnet without using the smart key causes the alarm to activate.

The Theft Alarm System is not set if the bonnet, tailgate, or door is not fully closed. If the system is not set, check the bonnet, tailgate, or doors are fully closed.

Do not attempt to modify this system or add other devices to it.

Information

- Do not lock the doors until all passengers have left the vehicle. If a door is opened after the system is armed, the alarm is activated.
- If the vehicle is not disarmed with the smart key, open the doors using the mechanical key and start the vehicle by pressing the Start/Stop button with the smart key.
- If the system is disarmed by unlocking the vehicle, and a door or the tailgate is not opened within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked and the system is rearmed automatically.
- Vehicles equipped with a theft alarm system will have a label attached to the vehicle.



Ultrasonic Intrusion Protection (UIP)

 if equipped

- To cancel the sensor operation, go to **Setup > Vehicle > Convenience** and turn Ultrasonic Intrusion Protection to OFF.
- If the system is armed when the sensor is in the OFF status, the intrusion/tilt sensor will not operate.

Then, the alarm will be activated when the system meets the intrusion/tilt sensor off condition of 'Theft-alarm' stage.

To reactivate the sensor operation, go to **Setup > Vehicle > Convenience** and turn Ultrasonic Intrusion Protection to ON again.

- Do not activate the sensor if there are any chances the vehicle tilts by the outward influences (for example, ferry boat travelling, tower parking etc.), because it could cause the siren to sound inadvertently.
- Make sure all windows are close whilst the system operates. If not, the sensor detects the inadvertent movement inside the vehicle (for example, blowing a wind or entering a butterfly) and it makes the siren sounds.
- If boxes are piled high in the vehicle, the sensor may not detect the movement behind the boxes. Also, the boxes may drop and it makes the siren sounds.
- If the sensor is stained with foreign matter such as cosmetics, spray type air freshener, or spray type window cleaner, the sensor may not operate normally.

Theft-alarm stage

The alarm will be activated if any of the following occurs whilst the system is armed.

- A door is opened without using the smart key.
- The tailgate is opened without using the smart key.
- The bonnet is opened.

The horn will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously for about 30 seconds. To turn off the system, unlock the doors with the smart key.

Ultrasonic Intrusion Protection (UIP) OFF condition

The alarm will be activated if any of the following occurs whilst the system is armed.

- A front or rear door is opened without using the smart key.
- The tailgate is opened without using the smart key.
- The bonnet is opened.
- The Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position.

NOTICE

Ultrasonic Intrusion Protection is in ON position whenever the vehicle is started again.

Ultrasonic Intrusion Protection (UIP) ON condition

 if equipped

The alarm will be activated if any of the following occurs whilst the system is armed when the sensor is activated.

- Someone or something moves in the vehicle.

- The inclination of the vehicle is changed to the certain degree.
- A front or rear door is opened without using the smart key.
- The tailgate is opened without using the smart key.
- The bonnet is opened.

The siren will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously for about 27 seconds and repeat max. 8 times when the system meets the alarm activation condition.

To turn off the system, unlock the doors with the smart key.

Integrated Memory System (IMS)

 if equipped



The IMS for the driver's seat is equipped on some models and allows the driver to store and recall the following memory settings with a simple button operation.

- Driver's seat position
- Outside rearview mirror position
- Steering wheel position (if equipped)
- Head-Up Display (HUD) position (if equipped)

It can be used conveniently in situations such as getting in and out of the driver's seat, adjusting the driving position depending on driving conditions, or for frequent driver shifts.

If the IMS does not operate normally, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

WARNING

Never attempt to operate the IMS whilst the vehicle is moving.

This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.

Information

If the battery is disconnected, the memory settings are erased.

Storing memory positions

- 1 Make sure the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position and the gear is in P (Park).
- 2 Adjust the driver's seat position, outside rearview mirror position, steering wheel position and HUD height to the desired position.
- 3 Press one of the memory buttons (**1** or **2**) within 4 seconds. The system will beep twice when the memory has been successfully stored.
- 4 **'Driver 1 (or 2) settings saved'** appears on the infotainment system.

Recalling memory positions

- 1 Make sure the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position and the gear is in P (Park).
- 2 Press the desired memory button (**1** or **2**). The system beeps once and then the driver's seat position, outside rearview mirror position, steering wheel position and HUD height are automatically adjusted to the stored positions.
- 3 **'Settings 1 (or 2) applied'** appears on the infotainment system.

Information

- To recall the IMS settings of memory button **2** whilst the settings of memory button **1** is being recalled, press memory button **1** to stop the IMS adjustment, and then press memory button **2**.
 - If you adjust the seat and outside rearview mirror whilst the IMS is adjusting the seat and mirror, the system stops the adjustments.
-

Resetting the IMS

- 1 Make sure that the gear is in P (Park) and the vehicle is DRIVE READY, and then open the driver's door.
- 2 Adjust the driver's seat and seatback to the foremost position.
- 3 Push the seat's forward/rearward switch towards the forward position and the seatback angle control switch towards the upright position, simultaneously for more than 2 seconds.
- 4 An audible warning sounds 3 times, and seat resetting begins.
- 5 The resetting process is complete after the seat, seatback angle, seat height and cushion tilt are returned to their original positions.

Whilst resetting IMS

A notification sound is heard and the seat is adjusted to the most rearward position. Then the seat and seatback move to the default centre position.

The resetting procedure and the notification sound may stop if:

- The memory button is pressed.
- The seat control switch is operated.
- The driving speed exceeds 3 mph (5 km/h).
- The driver's door is closed.
- The Start/Stop button is turned to the OFF position.

NOTICE

- If the seat movement or notification sound stops before the process is complete, restart the resetting procedure.
 - Before resetting the IMS, make sure there are no objects on or around the driver's seat.
 - After resetting the IMS, the driver's seat must be adjusted and stored again to recall the memory position.
-

Seat easy access operation

 if equipped

Seat easy access moves the driver's seat and steering wheel automatically as follows:

- **Exiting the vehicle (driver's seat)**

The driver's seat moves rearward when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position with the gear in P (Park) and the driver's door open.

- **Driver's seat:** Moves rearwards by the distance selected on the settings menu of the infotainment system.

Seat Easy Access operation may be limited when the driver's seat position setting is already close to the maximum rearward travel position.

- **Steering wheel:** Moves up to its fullest extent.

- **Entering the vehicle (driver's seat)**

The driver's seat and steering wheel moves forward when the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position or whilst carrying the smart key, the driver's door is closed with the Start/Stop button in the OFF position.

- You can set the Seat Easy Access feature from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:
 - Driver seat: **Setup > Vehicle > Seats > Seating easy access > Driver seat easy access > Extended/Normal/Off**
 - Steering wheel: **Setup > Vehicle > Seat > Seating easy access > Steering wheel easy access**



WARNING

To prevent injury or property damage, be aware if there are objects or passengers in the driver's side rear seat or seat floor. To stop movement of the front seat, press any of the driver's seat control switches.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Steering wheel

Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS)

If the vehicle is turned off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, you can still steer the vehicle, but it requires increased steering effort.

If you notice any change in the effort required to steer during normal vehicle operation, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.



CAUTION

- If the MDPS  warning light and the message '**Check motor driven power steering**' illuminates on the instrument cluster, you can continue to steer the vehicle, but it requires increased steering effort. We recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products and have the system inspected as soon as possible.
 - The steering effort may be high immediately after moving the Start/Stop button to the DRIVE READY position.
This happens as the system performs the MDPS system diagnostics. When the diagnostics are completed, the steering wheel effort returns to its normal condition.
 - When the battery voltage is low, you may have to use more effort to steer. This is a temporary condition and returns to normal condition after charging the battery.
 - A click noise may be heard from the MDPS relay after the Start/Stop button is in the DRIVE READY or OFF position.
 - Motor noise may be heard when the vehicle is at a stop or driving at low speeds.
 - When you operate the steering wheel in low temperatures, abnormal noise may occur. When the temperature rises, the noise disappears.
 - When an error is detected from MDPS, the steering effort assist function is not activated. Instrument cluster warning lights may illuminate or the steering effort may be high. If these symptoms occur, drive the vehicle to a safe location as soon as possible. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.
-

Tilt/Telescopic steering

Adjust the steering wheel toward your chest, not toward your face. Make sure you can see the instrument cluster warning lights and gauges. After adjusting, push the steering wheel up and down to be in the locked position.



WARNING

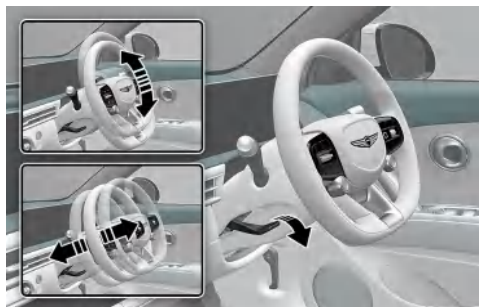
Never adjust the steering wheel whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.

NOTICE

Whilst adjusting the steering wheel position, please do not push or pull it hard since the fixture can be damaged.

Manual adjustment

 if equipped



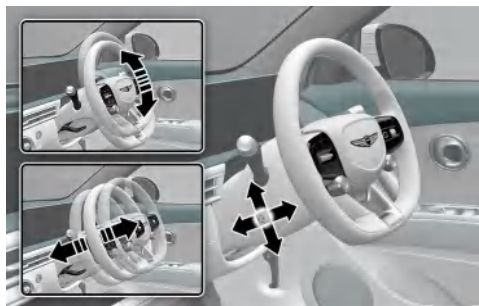
- 1 Pull down the lock-release lever.
- 2 Adjust the steering wheel to the desired angle and distance forward/back.
- 3 Pull up the lock-release lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

Information

Sometimes the lock release lever may not engage completely. Pull down on the lock-release lever, readjust the steering wheel again, and then pull back up on the lock-release lever to lock the steering wheel in place.

Power adjustment

 if equipped



- 1 Push the switch up and down to adjust the angle.
- 2 Push the switch forward or rearward to adjust the height.

NOTICE

Do not adjust the steering wheel longer than necessary when the vehicle is turned off. This may result in unnecessary battery drain.

Resetting steering wheel power adjustment

If adjustment is no longer possible within the operable range whilst adjusting the steering wheel position (angle or height), reset as follows.

- 1 From the position the steering wheel has stopped, push the control switch for 10 seconds in the direction you were adjusting the steering wheel. The steering wheel will move in the direction the control switch is pushed.
- 2 Continue pushing the switch for at least 3 seconds after the steering wheel has stopped. Resetting will be complete after the operational range is recognised. If the adjustment is still not possible after resetting the steering wheel power adjustment, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Steering wheel heater

 if equipped



When the vehicle is running, press the steering wheel heater button to warm the steering wheel.

The indicator on the button illuminates.

To turn the steering wheel heater off, press the button again. The indicator on the button turns off.

Adjusting temperature

Press the button repeatedly to cycle through the temperature from HIGH, LOW, and OFF.

- Pressing the button when temperature is high, the heated steering wheel turns off.
- When HIGH is manually selected, the heated steering wheel automatically changes to the LOW position after 30 minutes. You can turn off the heated steering wheel by pressing the button to the OFF position.

Link to climate settings for auto-adjustment

The heated steering wheel automatically controls the steering wheel temperature depending on the ambient temperature when the vehicle is running.

To use this feature, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select **Setup > Vehicle > Seats > Link to climate settings for auto-adjustment** or **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Link to climate settings for auto-adjustment > Steering wheel warmer**.

- If you press the heated steering wheel button when the feature is set, you must control the heated steering wheel manually.
- The heated steering wheel defaults to the OFF position whenever the Start/Stop button is pressed to the DRIVE READY position. However, if the **Link to climate settings for auto-adjustment** feature is ON, the heated steering wheel will turn on and off depending on the outside temperature.

NOTICE

- Do not install any cover or accessories on the steering wheel to prevent damage to the heated steering wheel system.
 - Do not strike the steering wheel surface with a sharp-pointed object. This may damage the heating element in the steering wheel.
 - Do not clean the steering wheel surface using the following products. Heater and steering wheel surfaces may be damaged.
 - Organic solvents such as thinner, alcohol and petrol
 - Chemical products such as leather cleaner, coating agent, and wax
-

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Steering wheel grip sensor

Whilst driving the vehicle with the Driver assistance system on, it detects whether the driver is holding the steering wheel and displays the Hands-off warning when the driver is not holding the steering wheel. For more information, refer to the Hands-off warning section in **Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)** or **Lane Following Assist (LFA)**.

In the following situations, the sensor may fail to detect the driver's hands although the driver is holding the steering wheel.

- When the driver is wearing gloves.
- When accessories such as a cover is attached on the steering wheel.
- When electronic device is touching the steering wheel.
- When the steering wheel is wet.

CAUTION

The steering wheel sensor may not work properly if the following precautions are not followed.

- Do not modify the steering wheel cover.
 - Do not attach accessories on the rim of the steering wheel.
 - Do not touch the steering wheel with electronic devices (for example, Laptop, tablet PC, etc.).
 - Do not touch the steering wheel with metallic or conductive objects (for example, Tumbler, soda can, etc.).
 - Do not excessively wet the steering wheel (for example, spilled water, wet tissue, vapour from steam wash).
-

Haptic warning/Steering wheel vibration warning

If haptic steering wheel is available, the Driver Assistance system vibrates the steering wheel to warn the driver when the system indicates hazardous situations.

Setting haptic warning

Whilst the vehicle is on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Warning methods > Haptic warning** in the infotainment system.

Horn



To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration). The horn operates only when this area is pressed.

NOTICE

- Do not strike the horn severely to or hit it with your fist. Do not press on the horn with a sharp-pointed object.
 - Do not clean the steering wheel surface with the following products:
 - Organic solvents such as thinner, alcohol and petrol
 - Chemical products such as leather cleaner, coating agent, and wax
-

Mirrors

Inside rearview mirror

Before driving your vehicle, check to see that your inside rearview mirror is properly positioned. Adjust the rearview mirror so that the view through the rear window is properly centred.



WARNING

- Make sure your line of sight is not obstructed. Do not place objects in the rear seat, cargo area, or behind the rear head restraints that may interfere with your vision through the rear window.
 - To prevent serious injury during a collision or deployment of the airbag, do not modify the rearview mirror and do not install a wide mirror.
 - Never adjust the mirror whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control and result in a collision.
-

NOTICE

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as this may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.

Electronic Chromic Mirror (ECM)

 if equipped



1. Sensor

When the vehicle is running, the glare from vehicle headlights behind you is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rearview mirror.

When the gear is shifted to R (Reverse), the mirror automatically goes to the brightest setting in order to improve the driver's view behind the vehicle.

Digital Centre Mirror (DCM)

 if equipped

The DCM is a system that uses the camera on the rear of the vehicle and displays its image on the screen of the DCM. The DCM allows the driver to see the rear view despite obstructions, such as the head restraint or luggage, ensuring rear visibility.

WARNING

Be sure to read the precautions and instructions before using the DCM. Failure to follow the precautions and instructions for proper use of DCM may result in serious injury:

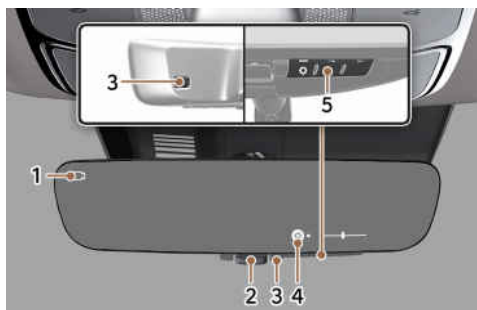
- You are responsible for driving safely when using the DCM. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Always check the blind spot of the DCM before driving.
- Never operate the DCM whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control and result in a collision.
- Never disassemble or modify the DCM's camera unit or wirings.

If you notice smoke or any smell coming from the DCM, stop using the system immediately. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

CAUTION

- The image areas displayed in the conventional rearview mirror mode and the DCM mode are different. Check the image areas displayed in different modes before driving the vehicle.
- Switch to the conventional rearview mirror mode when the DCM is not functioning normally. A light beam or flash may appear if strong light sources such as direct sunlight or vehicle headlights obstruct the rearview camera.
- Always keep the rear view camera lens clean. If the lens is blocked or covered, the DCM may not operate normally. Clean with a damp soft cloth.

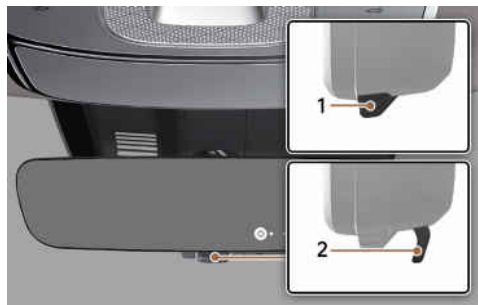
DCM components



1. Camera indicator
2. Mode selection lever (conventional rearview mirror/DCM)
3. Sensor
4. Icon display area

5. Menu/Adjustment button

Changing modes



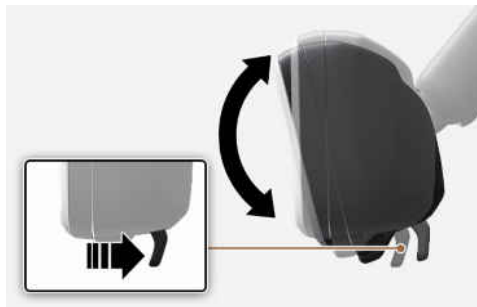
1. DCM mode
2. Conventional rearview mirror mode

Pull the lever towards you to use the digital centre mirror mode or push the lever towards the front windscreen to use the conventional rearview mirror mode.

Information

- If the DCM mode is selected, the rear view is shown on the inside rearview mirror and the camera  indicator appears on the top left side of the mirror.
 - The DCM turns on when the Start/Stop button is in the DRIVE READY position and turns off when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position.
 - The conventional rearview mirror can be used when the DCM mode is turned off.
 - Use the conventional rearview mirror mode when the display of the DCM mode seems blur due to strong light sources.
 - If the display is difficult to see due to reflected light, close the sunshade of the vision roof (if equipped).
 - When driving at night, the colour of the objects displayed on the DCM may differ from the actual colour.
 - Depending on your physical condition or age, it may take longer than usual to focus on the displayed image. If this occurs, use the conventional rearview mirror mode.
-

Adjusting the mirror height



Select the conventional rearview mirror mode, adjust the height of the rearview mirror so that the view through the rear window is properly centred.

Setting the DCM

- 1 Press the Start/Stop button to the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position and pull the lever towards you to use the DCM mode.
- 2 Press the menu  button, and then press the adjustment button to adjust the brightness and vertical angle of the display.



1. Icon display area

- Each time the menu  button is pressed the brightness  icon or angle  icon appears in the icon display area.
- The brightness and vertical angle can be adjusted by using the adjustment button when the icon is displayed.
- If a button is not operated for about 5 seconds or more, the icon disappears, and the display cannot be adjusted.

CAUTION

- Make sure the tailgate is closed before driving. When the tailgate is open, the rear image may not be displayed normally on the DCM.
 - Do not let the passengers stare at the displayed image when the vehicle is being driven. It may cause motion sickness.
 - Adjust the DCM to an appropriate brightness. If your eyes become tired, change the to conventional rearview mirror mode.
 - Do not block or cover the light sensors. If the light sensors are blocked or covered, the brightness may not be displayed normally.
-

Precautions whilst using the DCM

- Do not clean the mirror with cleaning agents containing thinner, benzene, alcohol, or other petroleum based cleaning products.
- Do not contaminate the rear view camera lens with organic solvent, vehicle wax, window cleaner, or glass coating when washing the vehicle. If contaminated, wipe it off as soon as possible.
- Clean the camera lens with a damp soft cloth. Scratching or damaging the lens surface may reduce DCM performance.
- Never disassemble or modify the DCM's camera unit or wirings, and never apply any impact on it.
- To prevent the battery from discharging, do not use the DCM when the vehicle is not running.
- Do not attach an antenna of a wireless device near the DCM. Electric wave from a wireless device may cause disturbed images.
- Never rotate the body of DCM more than 90 degrees or excessively press the adjustment buttons.

CAUTION

If you suspect a malfunction whilst using the DCM, push the mode selection lever towards the front windscreen to switch to the conventional rearview mirror mode. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.



- If the error  icon appears, the DCM may not be working properly. Change to conventional rearview mirror mode.
 - If the DCM is extremely hot, the high temp  icon appears, and the display gradually becomes dimmer.
 - If the temperature continues to increase, the DCM turns off.
 - The icon disappears when the mirror becomes cool.
-

Outside rearview mirrors



The mirrors can be adjusted with the mirror adjustment control switch. Adjust the outside rearview mirrors to your desired position before driving. The outside rearview mirrors can be folded to help prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash or when passing through a narrow street.

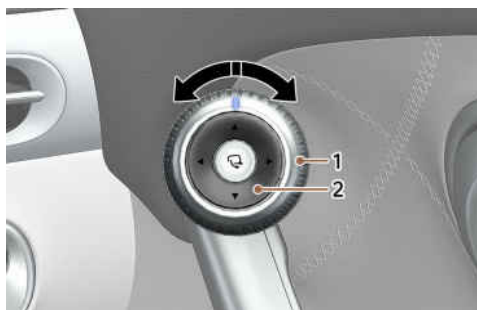
WARNING

- The left and right outside rearview mirrors are convex. Objects in mirror are closer than they appear.
 - Use the outside rearview mirror or turn your head and look to determine the actual distance of other vehicles prior to changing lanes.
 - Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.
-

NOTICE

- Do not scrape ice off the mirror face. This may damage the surface of the glass.
 - If the mirror is jammed with ice, do not adjust the mirror by force. Use an approved de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) spray, or a sponge or soft cloth with very warm water, or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.
 - Do not clean the mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel, or other petroleum based cleaning products.
-

Adjusting the outside rearview mirrors



1. Outside rearview mirror control selection knob
 2. Outside rearview mirror control switch
- 1 Rotate the outside rearview mirror control selection knob to either the left or right to select the outside rearview mirror you want to adjust.
 - 2 Use the outside rearview mirror control switch to position the selected mirror up, down, left, or right.
 - 3 After adjustment, rotate the outside rearview mirror control selection knob to the middle to prevent unintended adjustment.

NOTICE

- The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate whilst the switch is pressed. Do not press the switch longer than necessary, because this can damage the motor.
 - Do not adjust the outside rearview mirrors by force to prevent damage to the motor.
-

Folding the outside rearview mirrors

Folding button



The outside rearview mirrors can be folded or unfolded by pressing the button.

Infotainment system setting

- **Enable on door unlock**

If **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Welcome mirror/light > On door unlock** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system, the mirror folds or unfolds when the door is locked or unlocked using the smart key or touching the touch sensor on the outside door handle.

- **Enable on driver approach**

If **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Welcome mirror/light > On driver approach** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system, the mirror unfolds when the vehicle is approached with the smart key in possession.

NOTICE

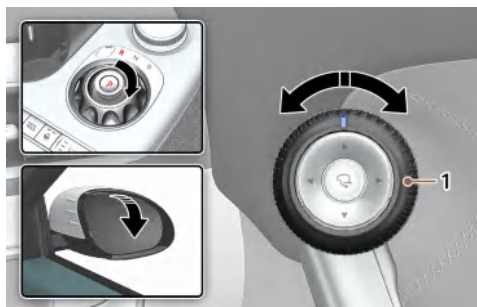
- For your safety, the outside rearview mirrors cannot be folded automatically when driving at a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h) or faster.
 - To prevent unnecessary battery discharge, do not adjust the mirrors longer than necessary when the vehicle is not running.
 - Do not fold the electric type outside rearview mirror by hand. It may cause motor failure.
-

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Reverse parking aid

 if equipped



1. Outside rearview mirror control selection knob

When the gear is shifted to the R (Reverse) position, the outside rearview mirrors rotate downwards to aid with driving in reverse.

The state of the outside rearview mirror control selection knob determines whether or not the mirrors move.

- Left/Right: When the knob is rotated to left or right, both outside rearview mirrors move.
- Neutral: When the knob is not rotated to left or right, the outside rearview mirrors does not move.

The outside rearview mirrors automatically revert to their original positions if any of the following occur:

- The Start/Stop button is pressed to either the POWER ON or OFF position.
- The gear is shifted to any position except R (Reverse).
- The outside rearview mirror adjustment button is not selected.

Reverse parking aid user settings mode

You may change the angle of the outside rearview mirror if it is difficult to see the rear view with the basic downward mirror angle provided when reversing.

When the vehicle is first delivered, the set downward angle of the left and right outside rearview mirror are different to ensure driver visibility.

- 1 Make sure the vehicle is stopped.
- 2 Depress the brake pedal and shift the gear to R (Reverse). When the dial is rotated to the left or right, both outside rearview mirrors move downward to the basic set position.
- 3 Rotate the knob to either the left or right to select the outside rearview mirror you want to adjust. Then press ▼, ▲, ◀, ▶ switch to adjust the outside rearview mirror to the desired angle.
- 4 After adjusting the angle to save the adjusted outside rearview mirror angle, shift the gear to another position other than R (Reverse), or change the knob to the neutral position (The knob is not rotated).
- 5 Set the other outside rearview mirror following the above procedure 1 to 4.

Resetting reverse parking aid user settings mode

To change the outside rearview mirror angle back to the basic angle, shift the gear to R (Reverse), and adjust the mirror angle higher than when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral) and D (Drive).

NOTICE

When changing the angle of both outside rearview mirrors, it is recommended to change the angle one side at a time following the procedure 1 to 4.

Digital Side Mirror (DSM)

 if equipped

DSM Camera



DSM Monitor



The digital side mirrors are a replacement for the outside rearview mirrors and help with changing lanes by displaying the rear view image on the monitors inside the vehicle.



WARNING

Do not adjust or fold the DSM cameras whilst driving. It distracts you from driving and may cause an accident.

CAUTION

- The digital side mirrors show the rear view as an image, so the view may differ from the actual view and you cannot see the field of view out of the set position. Be careful whilst driving.
- The DSM monitors may become blurred by strong light sources, such as direct sunlight. In this case, use the inside rearview mirror.
- In certain situations, an image error may occur, such as the DSM monitor being out of focus or displaying incorrect colours. This makes it difficult to clearly see moving objects and causes your eyes to feel tired due to watching the monitor for a long time.
- Always pay attention to the condition of your vehicle whilst driving. If you think there is an error in the vehicle, immediately park in a safe place and contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- If the DSM monitor display is not clear, the monitor lenses may be contaminated or foggy. Wipe the DSM camera lenses or activate the defroster to remove fog or foreign substances before driving. Be careful not to damage the lens whilst wiping, and be careful not to get burned by the operation of the defroster.

Information

- The DSM monitor brightness is linked to the instrument cluster's brightness.
- The DSM camera angle is linked to the integrated memory system (IMS).

Operating the digital side mirrors

Turning on the DSM monitors

When you unlock the doors or start the vehicle remotely, the digital side mirrors will prepare for operation. When you open a door or unfold the DSM cameras, the DSM monitors will turn on.

Turning off the DSM monitors

- When you stop the vehicle and lock the doors, or 7 minutes after stopping the vehicle, the DSM monitors will automatically turn off and the DSM cameras will fold.
- If you fold the DSM cameras whilst the vehicle is on, the DSM monitors will display a black screen and notify you that the digital side mirrors are folded.
- The DSM monitors are automatically turned on or off based on various conditions, such as the vehicle and door status.

DSM warnings and indicators

The warnings and indicators displayed on the DSM monitors are as follows.

Indicator	Explanation
	Driving assistance warning • Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA) • Safe Exit Warning/Assist (SEW/SEA) • Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA)

Indicator	Explanation
	DSM check indicator
	DSM monitor off indicator • Displayed after 7 minutes after the vehicle stops • Counts 10 seconds for screen off
	Wide view mode switch indicator

Displaying the guidelines

When you turn on the turn signal indicator to change lanes, the rearview screen and the lane change guidelines will be displayed on the DSM monitors.

- Red: 118 in. (3 m) away from the rear of the vehicle
- Orange: 472 in. (12 m) away from the rear of the vehicle

Setting the feature

On the infotainment system, select **Setup > Vehicle > Convenience > Rear safe distance**.

Information

The infotainment system setup menu may change after updates. For detailed information, refer to the web manual of the infotainment system.

Guideline display conditions

The turn signal indicator is turned on.

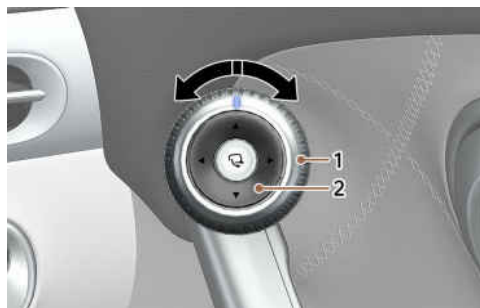
Guideline removal conditions

- The vehicle is turned off.
- The turn signal indicator is turned off.
- The hazard warning light is turned on.

CAUTION

- The lane change guidelines may differ from the actual situation depending on your vehicle and the road conditions.
- To change lanes, turn on the turn signal indicator in advance and secure enough space in the lane before entering.

Adjusting the DSM cameras



1. DSM camera control selection knob
2. DSM camera control switch

- 1 With Start/Stop button in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position, move the DSM camera selection knob to select L (Left) or R (Right).
- 2 Use the DSM camera adjustment switch to adjust the camera angle.

NOTICE

Do not adjust the DSM cameras manually. Adjusting the DSM cameras manually may damage the related parts.

Folding/Unfolding the DSM cameras

DSM camera folding button



To fold or unfold the DSM cameras, press the DSM camera folding button.

Enable on door unlock (infotainment system)

If you select **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Welcome mirror > On driver approach** on the infotainment system.

- The DSM cameras will fold when locking the doors.
 - By pressing the door lock button (Ⓛ) on the smart key
 - By touching the door lock/unlock sensor on the front outside door handles (the engraved part)

- The DSM cameras will unfold when unlocking the doors.
 - By pressing the door unlock button (🔓) on the smart key
 - By touching the door lock/unlock sensor on the front outside door handles (the engraved part)

When **On door unlock** is selected, you can select **On driver approach**. If you select **On driver approach**, the DSM cameras will unfold when you approach the vehicle with the smart key.

Information

- For your safety, the DSM cameras cannot be folded when driving at a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h) or faster.
 - The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.
-

NOTICE

- You can control the DSM cameras when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position, but excessive control may discharge the vehicle's battery.
 - Always use the DSM camera folding button to fold or unfold the DSM cameras. Folding or unfolding the cameras manually may damage the motor. Also, vibrations or noises may be emitted from the DSM cameras whilst driving, indicating that the gears are not engaged correctly. In this case, engage the gears by folding and unfolding the camera again using the folding button.
 - When cleaning the DSM camera lenses or the DSM monitors, do not spray the cleaner directly. Instead, coat it on a soft towel or cloth. If you spray the cleaner directly on the lenses or monitors, the cleaner may get inside, causing a malfunction.
 - Do not scrape ice off the surface of the DSM camera lenses. Doing so may damage the lenses.
 - Do not use warm or hot water to remove snow or ice from the camera lenses. Doing so may cause cracks in the lenses.
 - If the DSM camera is jammed with ice, do not adjust the camera by force. Use an approved de-icer spray, or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.
-

Switching to wide view when backing up

Normal View



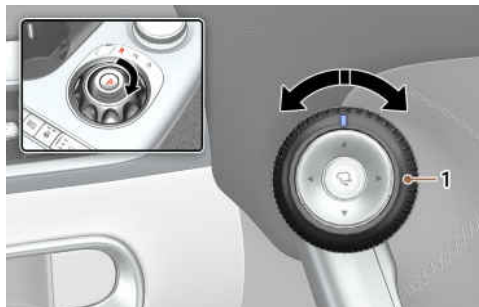
Wide View



Information

- The guidelines displayed on the DSM monitors whilst backing up indicate the following points.
 - 12 in. (0.3 m) away from the side of the vehicle
 - 19 in. (0.5 m) and 39 in. (1 m) away from the rear of the vehicle
 - The wide view will be deactivated when you shift to N (Neutral) or D (Drive) and drive at a speed of 6 mph (10 km/h) or faster.
 - The wide view appears only when the wide view switch feature is activated whilst backing up. In P (Park), N (Neutral), and D (Drive), the DSM monitors display the original view.
-

Setting wide view operation



1. DSM camera control selection knob

Use the DSM camera selection knob to select L (Left) or R (Right).

- When you shift to R (Reverse), the DSM monitors will display wide view.
- If you put the DSM camera selection knob in the centre, the DSM monitors will not display wide view.



CAUTION

If there is an error in the digital side mirror, the DSM monitors will not display the rear view and a warning message informing you to check the DSM system will appear on the instrument cluster. If this occurs, check the surroundings using the inside rearview mirror and immediately park your vehicle at a safe place, and contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Setting the DSM screen brightness

With the Start/Stop button in the DRIVE READY position, on the infotainment system, select **Setup > Display > Brightness** to change the brightness.

- Automatic Brightness or Manual Brightness adjustment (if equipped with rain sensor)
- Screen Brightness (Day/Night) setting (if the rain sensor is not equipped)

Information

The infotainment system setup menu may change after updates. For detailed information, refer to the web manual of the infotainment system.

Windows

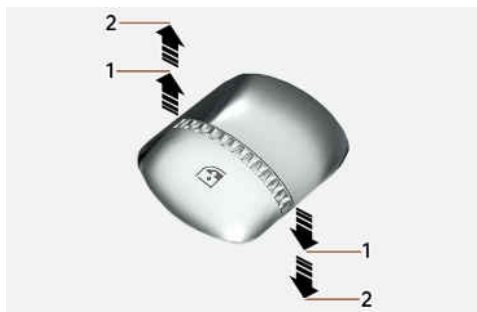


1. Driver's door power window switch
2. Front passenger's door power window switch
3. Rear door (left) power window switch
4. Rear door (right) power window switch
5. Power window lock switch/Electronic child safety lock (if equipped)

Power windows

The Start/Stop button must be in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position to be able to raise or lower the windows. Each door has a power window switch to control the door's window. The driver has a Power Window Lock button that can block the operation of rear passenger windows. The power windows operate for about 3 minutes after the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position. If the front doors are opened, the battery power is turned OFF and the Power Windows do not operate.

Window opening and closing



- 1 To open, press the window switch down to the first detent position.
To close, pull the window switch up to the first detent position.
- 2 Release the window switch when you want the window to stop.

Auto up/down window

Pressing the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position completely lowers or lifts the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the

desired position whilst the window is operating, pull up or press down and release the switch.

WARNING

- Do not leave the vehicle running and the key in your vehicle with unsupervised children. Unattended children could operate the window, which could result in serious injury.
 - Do not extend your head, arms or any other body parts or objects outside the window whilst driving to avoid serious injury.
-

Resetting the power windows

If the power windows do not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:

- 1 Press the Start/Stop button to the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.
- 2 Close the window and continue pulling up on the power window switch for at least 1 second.

If the power windows do not operate properly after resetting, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

WARNING

Make sure body parts or other objects are out of the way before closing the windows. The automatic reverse feature does not operate whilst resetting the power window system.

Automatic reversal



If a window senses any obstacle whilst it is closing automatically, it stops and lowers about 12 in. (30 cm) to allow the object to be cleared.

If the window detects any resistance whilst the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window stops upward movement and then lowers about 1 in. (2.5 cm).

If the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within 5 seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reverse feature, the automatic window reverse does not operate.

The automatic reverse feature is active only when the "Auto Up" feature is used by fully pulling up the switch to the second detent.

WARNING

Make sure body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the windows to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.

Objects less than 0.16 in. (4 mm) in diameter caught between the window glass and the upper window channel may not be detected by the automatic reverse window and the window does not stop and reverse direction.

NOTICE

Do not install any accessories on the windows. The automatic reverse feature may not operate.

Power window lock button



The driver can disable the power window switches on the rear passenger doors by pressing the power window lock button.

When the power window lock button is pressed:

- The driver's master control can operate all the power windows.
- The front passenger's control can operate the front passenger's power window.
- The rear passenger's control cannot operate the rear passenger's power window.

WARNING

Do not allow children to play with the power windows. Keep the driver's door power window lock button in the LOCK position. Serious injury or death may result from unintentional window operation by a child.

NOTICE

- To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This also ensures the longevity of the fuse.
 - Never try to operate the main switch on the driver's door and the individual door window switch in opposite directions at the same time. If this is done, the window stops and cannot be opened or closed.
-

Remote window opening/closing feature

 if equipped



- Press and hold the door lock  button for more than 3 seconds and the front windows move up after the doors are locked. Window movement stops when you release the door lock button.
- Press and hold the door unlock  button for more than 3 seconds and the front windows move down after the doors are unlocked. Window movement stops when you release the door unlock button.

WARNING

Always double check to make sure arms, hands, head and other obstructions are safely out of the way before using remote window closing feature.

NOTICE

- Do not leave the windows down when leaving the vehicle to prevent theft or damage from water entering the vehicle.
 - The remote window opening/closing feature operates only with the Safety Power Windows equipped.
 - The remote window opening/closing feature may abruptly stop when you move away from your vehicle during operation. Stay in close proximity from your vehicle, whilst monitoring the window movement.
 - One of the windows may stop operating when the window is interrupted by certain force. However, the other windows keep operating. Make sure that all windows are closed.
 - The doors unlock when the windows are opened using the remote window open/closing feature.
-

Vision roof

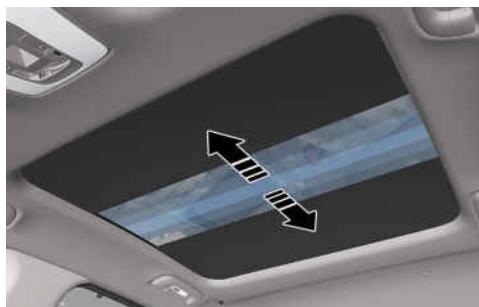
 if equipped



If your vehicle is equipped with a vision roof, you can slide open the power sunshade and an all-glass roof appears.

Power sunshade

Use the power sunshade to block direct sunlight coming through the vision roof glass.



The power sunshade can only be operated when Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.

- Push the switch rearward, the power sunshade automatically slides open.
- Push the vision roof switch forward, the power sunshade automatically closes.

To stop the power sunshade at any point, push the switch in any direction.

Information

- The power sunshade can be operated for about 3 minutes after the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or OFF position. However, if the front door is open, the power sunshade cannot be operated even within the 3 minutes period.
 - Wrinkles formed on the power sunshade are normal due to material characteristic.
-



WARNING

- Adjust the power sunshade when your vehicle stops. This could result in loss of control and an accident that may cause injury, or property damage.
 - Do not leave the vehicle running and the key in your vehicle with unsupervised children. Unattended children could operate the power sunshade, which could result in injury.
 - Do not sit on the top of the vehicle. It may cause injury or vehicle damage.
-

NOTICE

Do not pull or push the power sunshade by hand as such action may damage the power sunshade or cause it to malfunction.

Automatic reverse



If the power sunshade senses any obstacle whilst it is closing automatically, it will reverse direction then stop at a certain position.

The auto reverse function may not work if an object thin or soft is caught between the sliding power sunshade and vision roof sash.



WARNING

- Make sure heads, hands, arms or any other body parts or objects are out of the way before operating the power sunshade. Body parts or objects may get caught causing injuries or vehicle damage.
 - Never deliberately use your body parts to test the automatic reversal function. The power sunshade may reverse direction, but there is a risk of injury.
-

NOTICE

Do not continue to push the switch after the power sunshade is fully opened or closed. Damage to the power sunshade motor could occur.

Resetting the vision roof



In some circumstances resetting the power sunshade operation may need to be performed. Some instances where resetting the power sunshade may be required include:

- When the 12 V battery is either disconnected or discharged
- When the power sunshade fuse is replaced
- If the power sunshade one-touch Auto open/close operation is not functioning properly

To reset the vision roof:

- 1 It is recommended to perform the reset procedure with the Start/Stop button in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position. Start the vehicle in P (Park).
- 2 Make sure the power sunshade is in the fully closed position. If the power sunshade is open, push the switch forward until the power sunshade is fully closed.
- 3 Release the switch when the power sunshade is fully closed.
- 4 Push the switch forward until the power sunshade moves slightly. Then release the switch.
- 5 Once again push and hold the switch forward until the power sunshade slides open and close. Do not release the switch until the operation is completed.

If you release the switch during operation, start the procedure again from step 2.

Information

If the power sunshade is not reset when the vehicle battery is disconnected or discharged, or the power sunshade fuse is blown, the power sunshade may not operate normally.

Bonnet

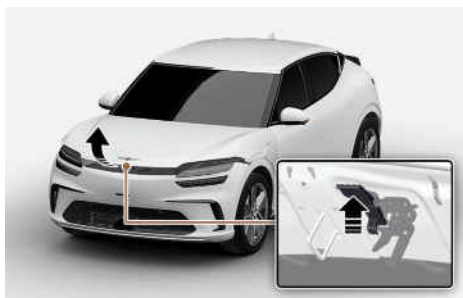
Opening the bonnet

- 1 Park the vehicle and apply the parking brake.
- 2 Pull the bonnet release lever to unlatch the bonnet. The bonnet pops open slightly.



- 3 Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the bonnet slightly, push up the secondary bonnet release lever inside of the bonnet centre and lift the bonnet.

After the bonnet has been lifted halfway, it will raise completely by itself.



Closing the bonnet

- 1 Before closing the bonnet, check in and around the motor compartment to ensure the following:
 - Any tools or other loose objects have been removed.
 - All gloves, rags, or other combustible material have been removed.
 - All filler caps are tightly and correctly installed.
- 2 Lower the bonnet until it is about 12 in. (30 cm) above the closed position and then let it drop.
- 3 Check the bonnet has locked properly. If the bonnet is raised slightly, open it again and drop it from a little higher.



WARNING

- Before closing the bonnet, ensure all obstructions are removed from around the bonnet opening.
 - Always double check to make sure that the bonnet is firmly latched before driving away. Check there is no bonnet open warning light or message displayed on the instrument cluster. Driving with the bonnet open may cause a total loss of visibility, resulting in a collision.
 - Do not move the vehicle with the bonnet raised. It may block your vision and may result in a collision.
-

Front boot

Opening the front boot



- 1 Open the bonnet.
- 2 Lift up the front boot cover whilst depressing the front boot lever.

Closing the front boot

Push down the front boot cover to the right position.

Information

Available front boot weight

- 2WD: 55 lbs. (25 kg)
- AWD: 25 lbs. (10 kg)

Available front boot weight depends on the specifications.



WARNING

- NEVER make an attempt to get inside the front boot. It will cause a fatal injury.
 - Before closing the bonnet, ensure all obstructions are removed from around the bonnet opening. The bonnet will rise up or move down automatically if the height is not firmly adjusted. Be aware of the damage caused by the unintended bonnet movements.
 - Never store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.
-



CAUTION

- Do not exceed the luggage volume capacity of the front boot. The overweighted front boot can be severely damaged.
 - Do not store the fragile objects in the front boot.
 - ALWAYS keep the front boot cover closed securely whilst driving. Items inside your vehicle are moving as fast as the vehicle. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, the items can be damaged.
 - Do not spray water in the front boot. Vehicle driving system may get damaged since the front boot is located at the centre of motor compartment.
 - Be careful when you store any liquid in the front boot. If liquid leak outside the front boot, it will cause a damage to the electric devices in the motor compartment.
 - Do not press the front boot cover or place the objects on the front boot cover. It may be deformed or damaged.
 - When closing the front boot cover, be careful not to touch objects inside the trunk. Loaded objects or the front boot may be deformed or damaged and the front boot cover may be opened during driving due to poor closing, resulting in joints and damage.
 - Do not store plastic objects in the front boot when the outside temperature is high. If the inside temperature of the front boot rises due to sunlight during hot weather, the plastic objects may be deformed.
 - When the front boot cover freezes and does not open, lightly tap or indirectly warm the front boot cover.
 - Do not apply excessive force or sharp instruments the front boot cover. It may damage the front boot cover.
-

NOTICE

To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartments.

Power tailgate

Power tailgate operating conditions

The power tailgate operates when the gear is in P (Park) with the Start/Stop button is in the DRIVE READY position. The tailgate operates regardless of the gear position when the vehicle is off.

The tailgate can be opened only when vehicle speed is below 1.8 mph (3 km/h).



WARNING

- Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle. Children may operate the power tailgate that could result in serious injury or property damage.
 - Make sure that there are no people or objects in the path of the power tailgate or smart tailgate before use. Serious injury, damage to the vehicle or damage to surrounding objects (for example, walls, ceilings, vehicles, etc.) may result if contact with the tailgate occurs.
 - The tailgate may not open or may close unintentionally injuring people around the tailgate under the following situation:
 - There is a lot of snow on the tailgate.
 - There is a heavy object on the tailgate such as a bicycle carrier, ladder, etc.
- Do not open the tailgate before removing snow or heavy object on the tailgate.
-

NOTICE

- Do not close or open the tailgate manually or it may be damaged. If you need to close the tailgate manually, do not apply excessive force.
- Do not operate the power tailgate more than 10 times continuously when the vehicle is not running. Use the power tailgate with the vehicle running when the power tailgate is used repeatedly to prevent battery discharge.
- Do not leave the tailgate open for a long period of time. This may drain the battery.
- Do not apply excessive force when the power tailgate is operating. Doing so could result in vehicle damage.
- Always close the tailgate before driving. Do not grab or hold on to the tailgate support struts or they may be damaged. Deformation of the tailgate support struts may result in vehicle damage and personal injury.



- Do not modify or repair any part of the power tailgate by yourself. We recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- Do not operate the power tailgate under the following conditions. The power tailgate may not operate properly.
 - One side of the vehicle is lifted to inspect the vehicle or change a tyre.
 - Parking on an uneven road such as a slope, etc.
- Close the tailgate completely and lock all doors and tailgate using the central door lock button before using an automatic car wash.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly on the power tailgate outside open/close button. The tailgate may open unintentionally.
- If the tailgate is not fully closed and vehicle speed is at or above 1.8 mph (3 km/h), a warning will sound 10 times. Immediately park the vehicle at a safe place, close the tailgate, and check that the tailgate open warning on the instrument cluster is turned off.
- In cold and wet climates, the outside power tailgate open button may not work properly due to freezing conditions. If this occurs, remove the ice before using the outside power tailgate open/close button or use the power tailgate open/close button on the Smart key or the instrument panel.
- Operating the power tailgate more than 5 times continuously could cause damage to the operating motor. If this occurs, the power tailgate will not operate to prevent the motor from overheating. If any of the power tailgate buttons are pressed to try to open the tailgate, the chime will sound 3 times, but the tailgate will remain closed. Allow the power tailgate system to cool for about 1 minute before operating the system again.

Operating the power tailgate

Power tailgate open/close button

Smart key



Instrument panel



When the tailgate is open or closed, press the power tailgate open/close button for 1 second. The tailgate will open or close with a warning sound.

Whilst the tailgate is opening, press the button to stop power tailgate operation.



WARNING

Make sure that there are no people or objects in the path of the tailgate before pressing the open/close button inside the power tailgate and the smart key. Otherwise, this may cause serious injury or damage to the vehicle or object.

Power tailgate open/close button (Outside the power tailgate)



When the tailgate is closed, press the power tailgate open button to open the tailgate.
If the vehicle is locked, press the power tailgate open button with the smart key or digital key in your possession.

Whilst the tailgate is opening, press the button to stop power tailgate operation.

Power tailgate open/close button (Inside the power tailgate)



Press the power tailgate open/close button whilst carrying the smart key or digital key.
The power tailgate opens or closes with a warning sound.

Whilst the tailgate is opening, press the button to stop power tailgate operation.

Power tailgate lock button (Inside the power tailgate)



Press the power tailgate lock button whilst carrying the smart key or digital key. The power tailgate closes and locks automatically. Additionally, all doors will lock.

The tailgate will close and lock, and all doors will lock only when the vehicle is off.

Automatic reversal

During power tailgate operation if the power tailgate senses any obstacle, the tailgate stops or fully opens.

The automatic reverse feature may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- If the detected resistance is below a certain level, or if the liftgate is almost fully closed near the latched position.
- If a strong impact is applied with no obstructions placed.



WARNING

Never deliberately place any object or use your body part to test the automatic reverse feature.

NOTICE

The power tailgate may stop operating if the automatic reverse feature operates more than two times whilst attempting to open or close the tailgate. If this occurs, carefully open or close the tailgate manually, and then after 30 seconds try to operate the power tailgate automatically again.

Setting the power tailgate

To use each feature, you must select the opening speed or opening height from the Settings menu. Deselect the settings when you do not want to use the feature.

Power tailgate opening speed

To adjust the power tailgate opening speed, select **Setup > Vehicle > Door/Tailgate > Power Tailgate opening speed** in the infotainment system.

Power tailgate opening height

To adjust the power tailgate opening height, select **Setup > Vehicle > Door/Tailgate > Power Tailgate opening height** in the infotainment system.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

User height setting

- 1 Position the tailgate manually to the height you prefer.
- 2 Press the power tailgate open/close button located inside the tailgate for more than 3 seconds.

If **User height setting** is selected for the power tailgate opening height, the power tailgate will automatically open to the height manually set by you.

Information

- If the power tailgate opening height has not been manually set, the power tailgate will fully open when **User height setting** from the infotainment system is selected.
 - If one of the height setting (**Full open/Level 3/Level 2/Level 1**) is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system, and then **User height setting** is selected, the tailgate opens to the height manually set by you.
 - The power tailgate opening speed and opening height settings change according to the linked User profile. If the User Profile is changed, power tailgate opening speed and opening height settings change accordingly.
-

Resetting the power tailgate

Some instances where resetting the power liftgate may be required include:

- When the 12 V battery is recharged
- When the 12 V battery is reinstalled after removal or replacement
- When the related fuse is reinstalled after removal or replacement

- 1 With the vehicle turned off or on, put the gear in P (Park).
- 2 Press the power tailgate open/close inner button and outer button simultaneously until a chime sounds.
- 3 Slowly close the tailgate manually.
- 4 Press the power tailgate open/close outer button. The tailgate opens with a chime sound.

Wait until the tailgate fully opens to complete resetting. If the tailgate stops before it is fully open, resetting cannot be completed.

Information

- If the power tailgate is not reset after the vehicle battery is disconnected or discharged, or the power tailgate fuse is blown, the power tailgate may not operate normally.
 - If the power tailgate does not operate properly after the above procedure, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
-

Emergency tailgate safety release



To unlock and open the tailgate manually from inside the cargo area, perform the following:

- 1 Insert a long, flat object, such as a key into the opening at the bottom of the tailgate.
- 2 Slide the latch in the direction of the arrow to unlock the tailgate.
- 3 Push the tailgate open.



WARNING

- For emergencies, be fully aware of the location of the emergency tailgate safety release latch in the vehicle and how to open the tailgate if you are accidentally locked in the cargo area.
 - No one, including animals, should be allowed to occupy the cargo area of the vehicle at any time. The cargo area is a very dangerous location in the event of a collision.
 - Use the release latch for emergencies only. Use extreme caution, especially whilst the vehicle is moving.
-

Smart tailgate



On a vehicle equipped with a smart key, the tailgate can be opened with hands-free activation using the smart tailgate system.

Operating the smart tailgate

The hands-free smart tailgate system can be used when:

- The smart tailgate option is enabled in the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select **Setup > Vehicle > Door/Tailgate > Smart Tailgate**.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

- The smart tailgate is activated 15 seconds after all the doors are closed and locked.
- The smart tailgate opens when the smart key is detected in the area behind the vehicle for 3 seconds.

After the hazard warning lights blink and the chime sounds 6 times, the smart tailgate opens.

- The smart tailgate does not operate when:
 - A door is not locked or closed.
 - The Smart key is detected within 15 seconds from when the doors were closed and locked.
 - The Smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and within 60 in. (1.5 m) from the front door handles (for vehicles equipped with Welcome Mirror).
 - The Smart key is in the vehicle.
- Smart tailgate may not operate properly if any of the following occur:
 - The Smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
 - The Smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a mobile phone.
 - Another vehicle's Smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.
 - The temperature drops below zero degree.

Detecting area



- The smart tailgate detecting area extends about 20-40 in. (50-100 cm) behind the vehicle. If you are positioned in the detecting area and are carrying the Smart key, the hazard warning lights blink and the chime sounds for about 3 seconds to alert you that the tailgate opens.
- The alert stops once the Smart key is moved outside of the detecting area within the 3 seconds period.

NOTICE

Smart tailgate detecting area may change when:

- The vehicle is parked on an incline or slope.
 - One side of the vehicle is raised or lowered relative to the opposite side.
-

Deactivating the smart tailgate

If you press the Door lock/unlock or Tailgate open/close button on the smart key whilst the smart key is detected in the detecting area, the smart tailgate deactivates.

- If you press the door unlock button, the smart tailgate is deactivated temporarily. If you do not open any door for 30 seconds, the smart tailgate is activated again.
- If you press the tailgate open button for more than 1 second, the tailgate opens.
- The smart tailgate is still activated when you press the door lock button or tailgate open/close button, unless the smart key is detected in the detecting area.



WARNING

Make sure to be aware of how to deactivate the smart tailgate for emergency situations.

Head-Up Display (HUD)

 if equipped



The HUD is an optional feature that allows the driver to view information projected onto a transparent screen whilst still keeping your eyes on the road ahead whilst driving.

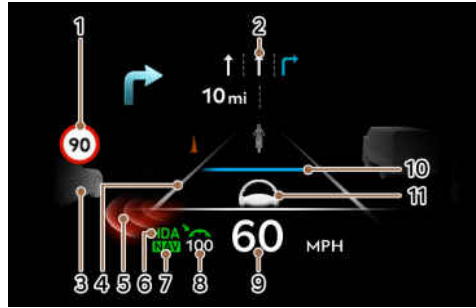
Precautions whilst using the HUD

- It may sometimes be difficult to read information on the HUD in the following situations.
 - The driver is improperly positioned in the driver's seat
 - The driver wears polarizing-filter sunglasses
 - An object is located above the HUD cover
 - The vehicle is driven on a wet road
 - Any improper lighting accessory is installed inside the vehicle, or there is incoming light from outside of the vehicle
 - The driver wears glasses
 - The driver wears contact lenses

Adjust the image height or brightness level from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.

- For your safety, make sure to stop the vehicle before adjusting the settings.
- Do not tint the front windscreen glass or add other types of metallic coating.
- Do not place any accessories on the dashboard or attach any objects on the windscreen glass.
- When replacing the front windscreen glass, replace it with a windscreen glass designed for HUD operation. Otherwise, duplicated images may be displayed on the windscreen glass.

HUD information



1. Traffic signs or speed limit
2. Turn by Turn (TBT) navigation
3. Surrounding vehicle (if equipped)
4. Lane Safety
5. Blind-Spot Safety
6. Highway Driving Assist (if equipped)
7. Highway Auto Speed Change (if equipped)
8. Smart Cruise Control set speed
9. Speedometer
10. Smart Cruise Control vehicle distance
11. Lane Following Assist



WARNING

The warning information of Blind-Spot Safety on the HUD are supplemental. Do not solely depend on them to change lanes. Always take a look around before changing lanes.

HUD settings



- HUD can be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select **Setup > Vehicle > Head-up display > Enable head-up display**.
- After turning on the HUD, you can change the settings of **Display adjustment** and **Content selection** of the HUD.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Vehicle system Over-the-Air (OTA) update

 if equipped

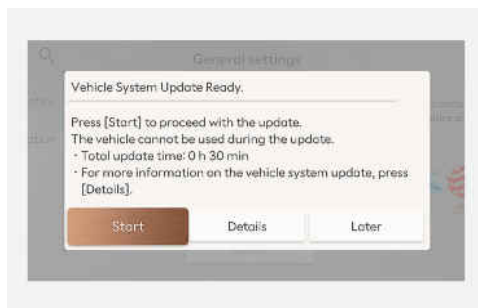
The OTA (Over-the-Air) software update feature allows you to wirelessly update software to the latest version. Using this feature, you can keep your vehicle system up to date with the latest software.

- The OTA software update feature is only available for Genesis Connected Services users.

Downloading software

The latest software can be downloaded automatically whilst driving. After the latest software has been successfully downloaded, you will receive a notification on your phone or the vehicle screen that the software update is available.

Approving software update



After the vehicle is turned off, the vehicle system will allow you to start the update.

- To start the update, press **Start**.
- To postpone the update, press **Later**.

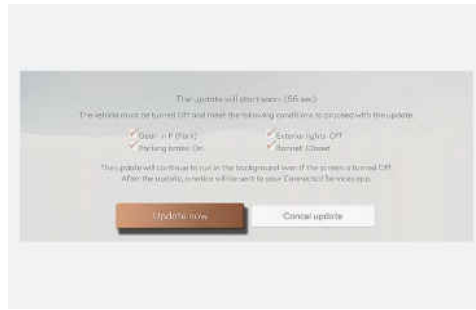
Preparing software update

If you press the **Start** button on the screen, the vehicle will begin installing the update automatically. The following conditions must be satisfied:

- The vehicle must be off.
- The gear must be in P (Park).
- The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) must be applied.
- The exterior lights must be turned off.
- The bonnet must be closed.
- The battery must be sufficient.
- The systems to be updated must not be running.

Information

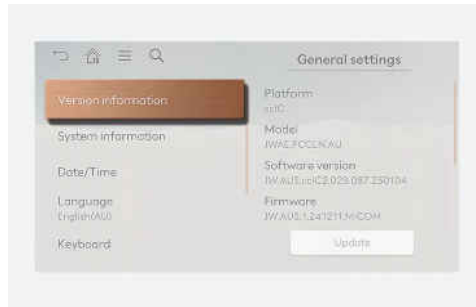
The battery and system status are automatically checked by the vehicle.



To update immediately, press **Update now**.

To cancel the update, press **Cancel update**.

Updating software



You can see the progress of the update on the screen.

After the update is complete, you will receive a notification on your phone, e-mail (except Middle East), and the vehicle screen that the software update is complete.

- The screen turns off automatically after 3 minutes to save the battery. If the screen turns off automatically, you can check the update progress by pressing the Start/Stop button.
- After the update starts, you can exit the vehicle.
- The update details may differ depending on the installed software version.

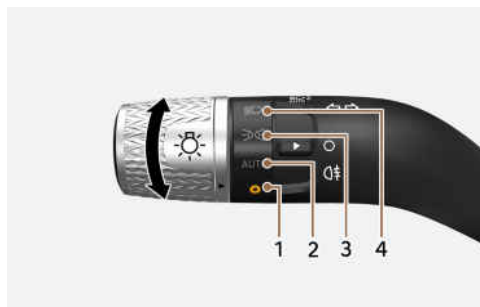
- Check the notice for the OTA software update on the Genesis brand web.
- If the update fails, the update recovery will automatically proceed. If you want to retry the software update, even after a successful recovery, we recommend you please contact the Genesis Connected Services call centre or an authorised local distributor.
- If the update or recovery fails, we recommend that you please contact the Genesis Connected Services call centre or an authorised local distributor.
- After the update is complete, it may provide new functions or improvements. For more information, refer to the 'OTA Software Update' page on the Genesis brand web.

NOTICE

- Observe the following restrictions during the update.
 - You cannot use the vehicle during the update. Be sure to have enough time for the update, and safely park the vehicle before starting the update process.
 - You cannot use remote features, including remote start.
 - Vehicle charging is not available. Charge the vehicle after the update is complete.
 - The Rear Occupant Alert feature may not work. Check if there are any occupants in the rear seat.
 - If there is an update for the Genesis Digital Key feature, the doors cannot be locked or unlocked using the digital key, or fingerprint recognition, or face recognition. If the Genesis Digital Key feature is being updated, use the smart key to lock or unlock the doors.
 - The update will be automatically cancelled if any vehicle conditions required for the update are changed before starting the update.
 - Once the update has started, you cannot cancel the update.
 - Note that the high-voltage-related modules for charging the 12 V battery may work during the update.
 - You cannot use the OTA software update feature if you modify or replace any vehicle software.
 - Do not open the bonnet or replace the battery during the updates. The update may fail.
 - If a diagnostic tool is connected to the vehicle On-board Diagnostic (OBD) terminal, the vehicle cannot be updated. The update will proceed by removing the connected diagnostic tool from the OBD terminal and restarting the vehicle.
 - If the update is not complete successfully, we highly recommend that you please contact the Genesis Connected Services call centre or an authorised local distributor.
-

Exterior lights

Lighting control



1. OFF
2. AUTO headlight
3. Position light
4. Headlight

To operate the lights, turn the knob at the end of the control lever to one of the desired position.

AUTO headlight



The position light and headlight are turned ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of daylight as measured by the ambient light sensor at the upper end of the windscreen glass.

Even with the AUTO headlight feature in operation, it is recommended to manually turn ON the headlights when driving at night or in a fog, driving in the rain, or when you enter dark areas, such as tunnels and parking facilities.

NOTICE

- Do not cover or spill anything on the sensor located at the upper end of the windscreen glass.
 - Do not clean the sensor using a window cleaner, the cleanser may leave a light film which could interfere with sensor operation.
 - If your vehicle window tint or other types of metallic coating on the front windscreen, the AUTO headlight system may not work properly.
-

Position light



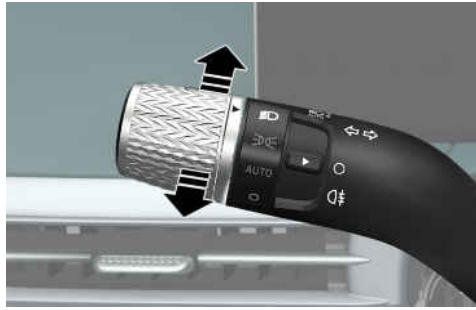
The position light, license plate light, and instrument panel light are turned ON when you turn the knob to the  position.

Headlight



The headlight, position light, license plate light and instrument panel light are turned ON when you turn the knob to the  position with the Start/Stop button in the POWER ON position.

High beam operation



To turn on the high beam headlight, push the lever away from you. The lever returns to its original position.

To flash the high beam headlight, pull the lever towards you, then release the lever. The high beams remain ON as long as you hold the lever.

The high beam indicator illuminates when the headlight high beams are switched on.

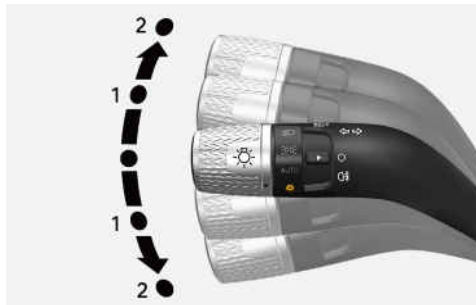
To turn off the high beam headlight, pull the lever towards you. The low beams turn on.



WARNING

Do not use high beam when there are other vehicles approaching you. Using high beam could obstruct the other driver's vision.

Turn signals and lane change signals



To signal a turn, completely push down on the lever for a left turn or up for a right turn.

If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal light may require replacement. We recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

One touch turn signal

To use One Touch Turn Signal, slightly push the turn signal lever up or down and then release it.

The lane change signals blink 3, 5, or 7 times.

You can enable the One Touch Turn Signal function or choose the number of blinking by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > One touch turn indicator > 7 flashes/5 flashes/3 flashes/Off** in the infotainment system.

Rear fog light



To turn on the rear fog light, turn the knob to the headlight position, and then turn the rear fog light switch to the rear fog light position.

To turn the rear fog lights off, do one of the following:

- Turn off the headlight switch.
- Turn the rear fog light switch to the rear fog light position again.

Battery saver function

To prevent the battery from being discharging, the system automatically turns off the position light when the driver turns the vehicle off and opens the driver's door.

With this feature, the position lights turn off automatically if the driver parks on the side of road at night.

To keep the lights on when the vehicle is turned off:

- 1 Open the driver's door.
- 2 Turn the position lights OFF and ON again using the headlight switch.

Headlight levelling device

Headlight levelling device automatically adjusts the headlight beam level according to the number of passengers and loading weight in the tailgate.

It also adjusts to the appropriate headlight beam level for various situations.



WARNING

If the function does not work properly, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products. Do not attempt to inspect or replace the wiring yourself.

Headlight delay function

If the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position with the headlights ON, the headlights (and/or position lights) remain on for about 5 minutes.

If the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlights are turned off after 15 seconds. Also, with the vehicle off if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlights (and/or position lights) are turned off after 15 seconds.

The headlights (and/or position lights) can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the smart key twice or turning the headlight switch to the OFF or AUTO position.

You can enable the headlight delay function by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Headlight time-out** in the infotainment system.

NOTICE

If the driver exits the vehicle through another door besides the driver's door, the battery saver function does not operate and the headlight delay function does not turn OFF automatically. To avoid battery discharge, turn OFF the headlights manually from the headlight switch before exiting the vehicle.

Information

When the Headlight time-out function is turned on in the infotainment system, the dynamic welcome light or headlight welcome light function of the welcome system will also operate as well (if equipped). For more information, refer to the **Welcome system**.

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Headlight moisture removal function

When moisture fogs up inside of the headlight with the headlight on for a certain period of time, the fan circulates air inside the headlight to remove moisture. If moisture is not removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Reverse guide light

When the gear is in R (Reverse), the back up light turns on and the reverse guide light at the back of the vehicle lights the floor.

The light informs nearby drivers that your vehicle is backing up.

Daytime Running Light (DRL)

The DRL can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day, especially after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system turns OFF when:

- The vehicle is off.
- The headlights are on.
- The vehicle is turned ON whilst the parking brake is applied (DRL remains off until driving).

You can turn off the DRL system whilst driving by turning on the headlights when the parking brake is applied and then turning off the headlights afterward.

Welcome system

Welcome system helps keep the driver visible by turning on vehicle lights when the driver approaches the vehicle.

Dynamic welcome light

 if equipped

The dynamic welcome lights operate for about 4 seconds, and then the position lights are turned on.

When the door lock button or door unlock button on smart key or digital key is pressed whilst the dynamic welcome light is on, the dynamic welcome light turns off immediately.

You can enable the dynamic welcome light function by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Headlight time-out** in the infotainment system.

Puddle light and door handle light

When all the doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, the puddle light and door handle light come on for about 15 seconds if:

- When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key or digital key.
- When you put your hand in the outside door handle with the smart key or digital key in possession.
- If **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Welcome mirror/light > On driver approach** is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system, the lights turn on when the vehicle is approached with the smart key or digital key in possession.

Headlight and position light

When the headlight switch is ON, and all the doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, the position lights and headlights come on for about 15 seconds when the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key or digital key.

If you press the door lock or unlock button, the position lights and headlights turn off immediately.

Select **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Headlight time-out** from the infotainment system to turn on this function.

Interior light

When the interior light switch is in the  position and all doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, the room lamps come on for 30 seconds when:

- The door unlock button is pressed on the smart key or digital key.
- You put your hand in the outside door handle whilst carrying the smart key or digital key.

If you press the door lock or unlock button on the smart key or digital key, the lights turn off immediately.

Lighting pattern

 if equipped

The lighting pattern displays patterns of various designs on the digital grid.

During daytime, the lighting pattern is basically set so that it can be seen only when the vehicle is turned on. When the low beam is turned on, the lighting pattern also turns on whilst driving.

At nighttime, you can check the lighting pattern when the vehicle is turned on and whilst driving.

- With the vehicle in the DRIVE READY position, select the type of pattern provided in infotainment system **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Lighting pattern**.

High Beam Assist (HBA)

 if equipped



HBA automatically adjusts the headlights between high beam and low beam depending on the light detected from oncoming vehicles or vehicles in front using the front view camera.

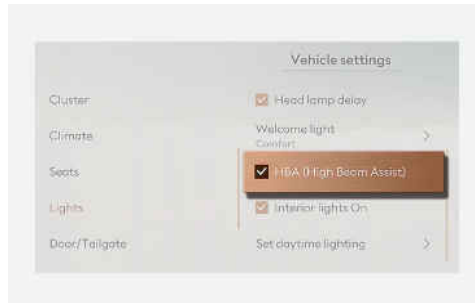
- For more information on the location and the general precautions of front view camera, refer to the **Sensor information**.

HBA settings



WARNING

Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.



With the Start/Stop button in the DRIVE READY position, select **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > HBA (High Beam Assist)** from the Settings menu to turn on HBA and deselect to turn off the function.

HBA operation

- After selecting **HBA (High Beam Assist)** from the Settings menu to operate HBA:
 - Place the headlight switch in the AUTO position and push the headlight lever towards the instrument cluster. The HBA  indicator light illuminates.
 - When HBA is enabled, high beams turn on when the vehicle speed is above 20 mph (30 km/h) and the High Beam  indicator illuminates. When the vehicle speed

is below 12 mph (20 km/h), high beams do not turn on and the indicator light illuminates in white.

- When HBA is operating:
 - If the turn signal lever is pulled toward you when the high beams are off, the high beams turn on. When you let go of the turn signal lever, HBA operates again.
 - If the turn signal lever is pulled toward you when the high beams are on by HBA, the low beams turn on and HBA turns off.
 - If the turn signal lever is pushed away from you, the high beams turn on and HBA turns off.
 - If the headlight switch is moved from AUTO to another position (headlight/position/O), the corresponding light turns on and HBA turns off.
- When HBA is operating, high beam switches to low beam if:
 - The headlights of an oncoming vehicle are detected.
 - The tail lights of a front vehicle are detected.
 - The headlight or tail light of a motorcycle or a bicycle is detected.
 - The surrounding ambient light is bright enough so high beams are not required.
 - Streetlights or other lights are detected.

Information

The images and colours in the cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the cluster.

HBA malfunction and limitations

HBA malfunction

When HBA is not working properly, the '**Check Driver Assistance system.**' warning message may appear, and the master  warning light may illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Information

You can check it in the service message of the normal view mode of the cluster display.

Limitations of HBA

HBA may not work properly in the following situations if:

- The headlights from an oncoming or front vehicle is damaged or out of the detection range.
- The headlights from an oncoming or front vehicle are covered with dust, snow, or water.
- An oncoming or front vehicle's headlights are off but the fog lights are on.
- There are lights that have a similar shape as a vehicle's light ahead.
- The headlights are not repaired or replaced properly.
- The headlights are not aimed properly.
- You are driving on a narrow curved road, rough road, uphill, or downhill.

- A front vehicle is partially visible at a crossroad or on a curved road.
- There is a temporary reflector or flash ahead (construction area).
- There is a traffic light, reflecting sign, LED sign, or reflectors ahead.
- The road is wet or covered with snow or ice.
- A vehicle suddenly appears from a curve.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a flat tyre or being towed.
- The headlights from an oncoming or front vehicle is not detected because of exhaust fumes, smoke, fog, snow, blizzard, water spray on the road, or windscreen condensation, etc.

For more information on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to the **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)**.



WARNING

Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely. It is your responsibility to operate your vehicle in a safe manner.



CAUTION

- If HBA does not operate properly, use the turn signal lever to switch between high beam and low beam.
 - HBA may not operate for 15 seconds right after your vehicle is started or when the front view camera is initialized.
-

Intelligent Front-lighting System (IFS)

 if equipped

Intelligent Front-Lighting System secures a clear view for the driver with the high beam on whilst driving at night.

System settings



With the Start/Stop button in the DRIVE READY position, select **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Intelligent High Beams** from the Settings menu to turn on Intelligent Front-Lighting System and deselect to turn off the system.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.



WARNING

Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.

Information

For Europe

Travel Mode must be turned on for the headlight on the driver's side to turn off when driving from a left-hand drive country to a right-hand drive country and vice versa.

To turn on the Travel mode, select **Setup > Vehicle > Light > Travel mode** from the infotainment system.

System operation

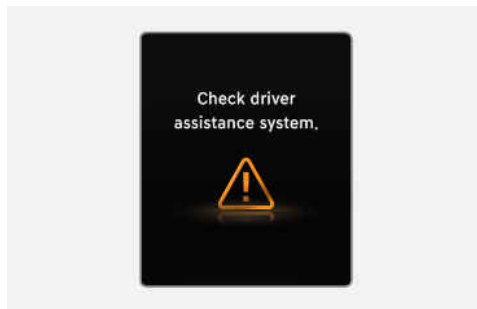


After selecting **Intelligent High Beams** in the Settings menu to operate Intelligent Front-Lighting System:

- Place the headlight switch in the **AUTO** position and push the headlight lever toward the instrument cluster. The Intelligent Front-Lighting System (IFLS) indicator light illuminates on the instrument cluster and the system is enabled.
- When the system is enabled, Intelligent Front-Lighting System operates according to the set speed in the infotainment system. The initial system is set to work when vehicle speed is above 25 mph (40 km/h).
- The high beam LED partially turns off if an oncoming vehicle or a vehicle ahead is detected by the front view camera.
- If Intelligent Front-Lighting System detects an oncoming vehicle or a vehicle ahead whilst driving at high speed (about above 60 mph (100 km/h)), the driver's side headlight turns off and only the passenger's side headlight is controlled by the system.

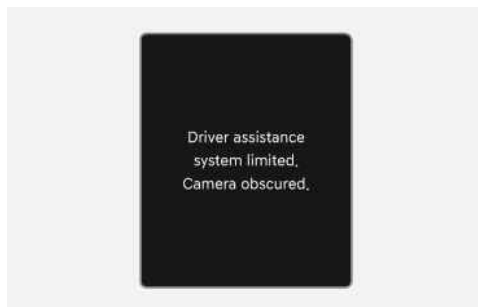
System malfunction and limitations

System malfunction



When Intelligent Front-Lighting System does not work properly, the '**Check driver assistance system.**' warning message may appear for a few seconds on the instrument cluster. After the message disappears, the AFS and  warning lights illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

System disabled



When the front view camera is covered or blocked, the Intelligent Front-Lighting System may temporarily not work properly. The '**Driver assistance system limited. Camera obscured.**' warning message may appear on the instrument cluster.

The system operates normally when such foreign material is removed.



WARNING

- Intelligent Front-Lighting System may not operate properly even if there is no warning message or warning light on the instrument cluster.
- Intelligent Front-Lighting System may not operate properly in open areas where no objects are detected (for example, empty parking lot) or when the detecting sensors are blocked right after turning on the vehicle.

Limitations of the system

Intelligent Front-Lighting System may not operate normally:

- The headlights from an oncoming or front vehicle is damaged or out of the detection range.
- The headlights from an oncoming or front vehicle are covered with dust, snow, or water.
- An oncoming or front vehicle's headlights are off but the fog lights are on.
- There are lights that have a similar shape as a vehicle's light ahead.
- The headlights are not repaired or replaced properly.
- The headlights are not aimed properly.
- You are driving on a narrow curved road, rough road, uphill, or downhill.
- A front vehicle is partially visible on a crossroad or curved road.
- There is a traffic light, reflecting sign, LED sign, or reflectors ahead.
- There is a temporary reflector or flash ahead (construction area).
- The road is wet or covered with snow or ice.
- A vehicle suddenly appears from a curve.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a flat tyre or being towed.
- There are many street lights or the ambient light is bright.
- Light from another vehicle is not detected because of exhaust fumes, smoke, fog, snow, etc.

- The front windscreen is covered with foreign material.



WARNING

- Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely. It is your responsibility to operate your vehicle in a safe manner.
 - If Intelligent Front-Lighting System does not operate properly, use the turn signal lever to switch between high beam and low beam.
-

NOTICE

To prevent damage:

- Never disassemble the camera sensors or camera sensor assemblies.
 - Only have the detecting sensor replaced or repaired by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
 - Never install any accessories, stickers, or tint the front windscreen.
 - Always keep the camera dry.
 - Never place any reflective objects (for example, white paper, mirror) on the dashboard.
 - Do not use any cleanser containing acid or alkaline detergents when cleaning the camera lenses. Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water.
-

Interior lights

WARNING

Do not use the interior lights when driving in the dark. The interior lights may obscure your view and result in a collision.

NOTICE

Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when the vehicle is turned off. Otherwise, the battery discharges.

Interior lights **AUTO off**

The interior lights automatically go off about 20 minutes after the vehicle is turned off and the doors are closed. If a door is opened, the lights go off about 25 minutes after the vehicle is turned off. If the doors are locked by the smart key and the vehicle enters the armed stage of the theft alarm system, the lights go off 5 seconds later.

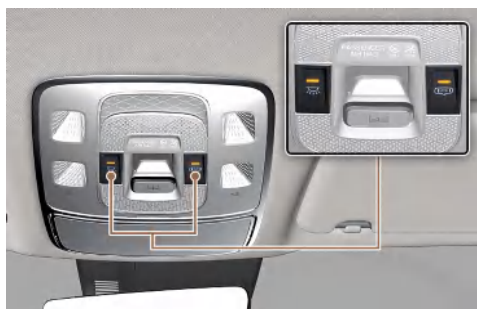
Front lights

Map lamp



- ☞, ☞: Touch either icons to turn the map lamp on or off. This light produces a spot beam for convenient use as a map lamp at night or as a personal lamp for the driver and the front passenger.

Room lamp



- : Press the button to turn on the room lamp for the front and rear seats.
- : The front or rear room lamps come on when the front or rear doors are opened.

NOTICE

When doors are unlocked by the smart key, the front and rear lamps come on for about 30 seconds as long as any door is not opened. The front and rear room lamps go out gradually after about 30 seconds when the door is closed. However, if the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position or all doors are locked, the front and rear lamps turn off. If a door is opened with the Start/Stop button in the OFF position, the front and rear lamps stay on for about 5 minutes.

Rear lamps

Room lamp (without vision roof)



- , : Touch the button to turn either lamp on or off.
- : Touch the button to turn on and off the mood lamp.

Personal lamp (with vision roof)

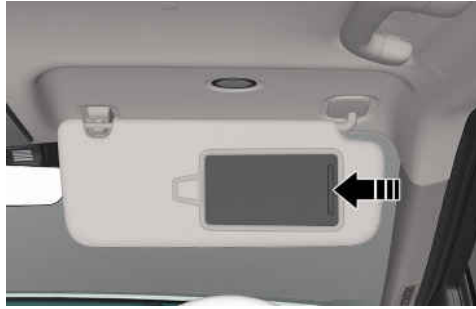


- : Press the button to turn on and off.

Information

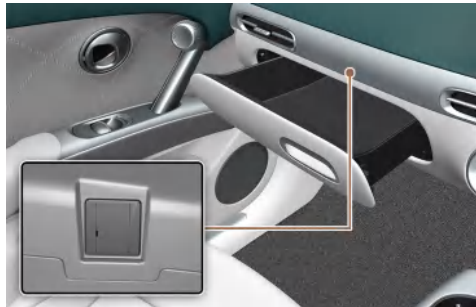
If the front lamp buttons are pressed, the rear lamp will not turn off.

Vanity mirror lamp



Opening the lid of the vanity mirror. The vanity mirror lamp turns on when the lid is opened and off when the lid is closed.

Glove box lamp



The glove box lamp turns on when the glove box is opened. If the glove box is not closed, the lamp turns off after 20 minutes.

NOTICE

Close the glove box after use to prevent unnecessary battery discharge.

Console under tray lamp



Console under tray lamp turns on when opening the door and turns off when turning off the vehicle and locking the door.

Interior button lights

The interior lighting including the button lighting are continuously on to make it easy to locate buttons and items during both day and night.

Interior lights On

You can enable or disable the exterior and interior button lighting. Select **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Interior lights On** from the infotainment system.

- When all doors are locked, opening a door after unlocking it briefly turns on the interior lighting.
- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position, it keeps the interior lighting on at all times.
- When the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position, the interior lighting briefly stays on. At this time, when the door is opened and closed, or locked, the interior lighting immediately turns off.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Mood lighting

 if equipped



1. Door lamp
2. Foot lamp (if equipped)

To adjust the mood lighting, select **Setup > Vehicle > Lights > Ambient lighting** in the infotainment system.

- If the **Linked to drive mode** is selected, the mood lighting colour changes according to the selected drive mode.
- If you do not want to use mood lighting, set **Brightness** to **0** in the infotainment system.

Information

- The mood lighting at both ends of the dashboard turn off to prevent reduced visibility of the outside rearview mirror when the vehicle is not in P (Park).
 - The colour of the mood lamp turns red when booster function is activated.
 - The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.
 - The colour of the mood lighting may seem different under some conditions depending on the colour of the interior and the set mood colour.
-

Front boot lamp



The lamp illuminates when the front boot opens.

The lamp keeps coming on when the front boot is not completely closed.

WARNING

Make sure it is fully closed after closing the front boot. If it is left open without starting vehicle, the lamp comes on and the battery may be discharged.

Cargo area lamp



The cargo area lamp comes when the tailgate is opened.

CAUTION

After closing the tailgate, make sure it is completely closed. Otherwise, the battery may be discharged.

Cargo emergency lamp



The cargo emergency lamp comes on when the tailgate is opened.

In case of emergency such as a vehicle breakdown, open the tailgate to inform surrounding vehicles of the emergency, and activate the emergency warning lights to prevent accidents.

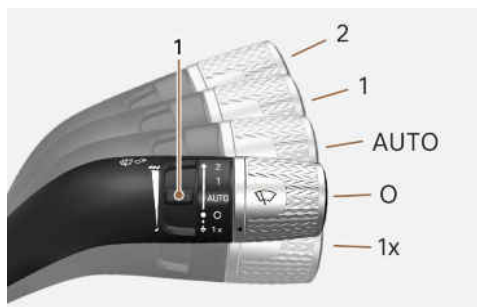


CAUTION

After closing the tailgate, make sure it is completely closed. Otherwise, the battery may be discharged.

Wipers and washers

Front windscreen wipers



1. Intermittent or Auto control wipe time adjustment
- **2:** The wiper runs at a higher speed.
 - **1:** The wiper runs at a lower speed.
 - **AUTO:** The rain sensor located on the upper end of the windscreen glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the wiping cycle for the proper interval. The more it rains, the faster the wiper operates. When the rain stops, the wiper stops. To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob.
 - **0:** Wipers are not in operation.
 - **1x:** For a single wiping cycle, push the lever downward and release. The wipers operate continuously if the lever is held in this position.

NOTICE

- If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windscreen, defrost the windscreen for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed before using the windscreen wipers to ensure proper operation.
 - If you do not remove the snow and/or ice before using the wiper and washer, it may damage the wiper and washer system.
 - If it snows whilst driving, the wiper may temporarily stop operation to prevent damage caused by accumulated snow at the upper and lower parts of the window. When the wiper stops operation, clear the accumulated snow from the parts.
 - The wiper operation is stopped upon snow accumulation whilst driving. This is normal wiper operation. It is to prevent safety issues from happening when the wiper operation continues without removing snow.
-

AUTO (Automatic) control



The rain sensor located on the upper end of the windscreen glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the interval of the wiping cycle.

To change the sensitivity setting, turn the sensitivity control knob.

If the wiper switch is set in the **AUTO** mode when the Start/Stop button is in the DRIVE READY position, the wiper operates once to perform a self-check of the system. Set the wiper to the **O** position when the wiper is not used.



WARNING

To prevent personal injury:

- Do not touch the upper end of the windscreen glass facing the rain sensor.
- Do not wipe the upper end of the windscreen glass with a damp or wet cloth.
- Do not put pressure on the windscreen glass.

NOTICE

- When washing the vehicle, set the wiper switch in the **O** position to stop the auto wiper operation.
- Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the passenger side windscreen glass.

Front windscreen washers



In the **O** position, pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windscreen and to run the wipers 2-3 cycles. The spray and wiper operation continues until you release the lever. If the washer does not work, you may need to add washer fluid to the washer fluid reservoir.

Recirculating air when washer fluid is used

When washer fluid is used, in order to reduce any objectionable scent of the washer fluid from entering the cabin, recirculation mode and air conditioning are automatically activated depending on the outside temperature. If you select fresh mode whilst the function is operating, the function resumes after a certain amount of time. It may not work in some conditions such as cold weather or vehicle OFF.

For more information, refer to the **Climate control additional features**.



WARNING

When the outside temperature is below freezing, always warm the windscreen using the defroster to help prevent the washer fluid from freezing on the windscreen and obscuring your vision that could lead to a collision resulting in serious injury or death.

Always use appropriate washer fluids in the winter season or cold weather.

NOTICE

- Do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty or when the windscreen is dry.
 - Do not operate the wipers when the windscreen is dry.
 - Do not attempt to move the wipers manually.
 - Use anti-freezing washer fluids in the winter season or cold weather.
-

Automatic climate control system



1. Passenger's temperature control
2. Front windscreen defroster
3. Rear window defroster
4. Passenger's mode selection
5. Fan speed control
6. Driver's mode selection
7. OFF (system off)
8. AUTO (automatic control)
9. Driver's temperature control
10. SYNC
11. Clean air system
12. A/C (air conditioning)
13. Driver only mode
14. Air intake control

Automatic heating and air conditioning

The Automatic Climate Control System is controlled by setting the desired temperature.

- 1 Press the **AUTO** button.



- The mode selection, fan speed, air intake and air conditioning are controlled automatically by the temperature setting.
- You can control the fan speed in three stages by pressing the **AUTO** button during automatic operation.

- 2 Turn the temperature control knob to set the desired temperature.



Information

If the temperature is set to the lowest setting, the air conditioning system operates continuously. After the interior has cooled sufficiently, adjust the knob to a higher temperature set point whenever possible.

To turn off the automatic operation, select any button of the following buttons:

- Mode selection button
- Front windscreen defroster button (Press the button one more time to deselect the front windscreen defroster function. The **AUTO** illuminates on the information screen once again.)
- Fan speed control icon
- **A/C** (air conditioning) icon
- OFF (system off) button

The selected function is controlled manually whilst other functions operate automatically.

Information

For your convenience and to improve the effectiveness of the climate control, use the **AUTO** button and set the temperature to 22 °C (72 °F).

CAUTION



Never place anything near the sensor to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.

Manual heating and air conditioning

Set the various heating and air conditioning system such as fan speed, mode, temperature, air intake, etc., as desired.

Mode selection



- Touch the arrows on the climate control information screen to select air flow direction.
- Press the **SYNC** button and when the indicator light on the button turns off, the air flow direction of the driver's seat and passenger seat can be controlled individually. However, passengers and rear seats cannot select .
- You may select 2-3 modes at the same time.

Air flow direction



- Front seat

Symbol	Operation
 A, D	Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen.
 B, D	Select for effective cooling Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.
 A, C, D	Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windscreen and side window defrosters.

• Rear seat

Symbol	Operation
 F	Select for effective cooling Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face.
 E	Select for effective heating Most of the air flow is directed to the floor.

Front windscreen defroster (A, D)

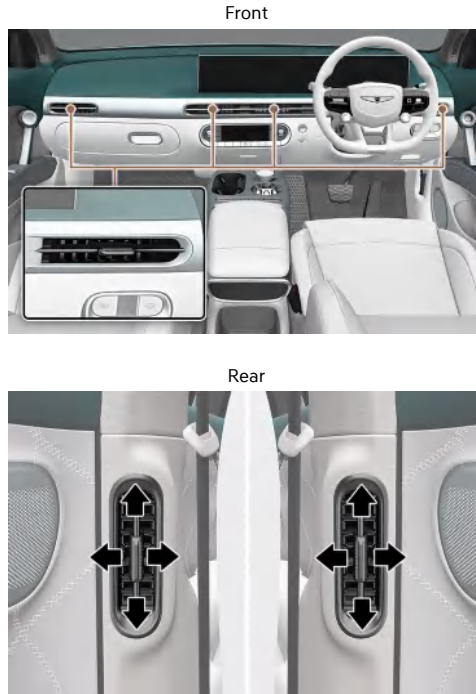


Press the front windscreen defroster button (indicator light ON) to turn on the front windscreen defroster.

The outside (fresh) mode is automatically selected and the air conditioning turns on according to the detected ambient temperature.

Press the front windscreen defroster button once more (indicator light OFF) to turn the function off. Each climate control setting reverts to the setting prior to selecting the front windscreen defrost.

Instrument panel vents (B, C, F)



The instrument panel vent air flow can be directed up/down or left/right using the vent adjustment lever.

The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the vent control lever.

Move the lever to ☒ position to close, and to ☞ position to open.

Temperature control



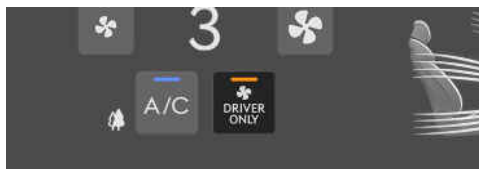
Turn the knob to the up to increase the temperature. Turn the knob to the down to decrease temperature.

Temperature conversion (°C ↔ °F)

To change the temperature unit from °C to °F or °F to °C:

- Press the A/C icon for 3 seconds, and then within 5 seconds press the driver's side face-level (↔) position for more than 3 seconds.
- Select **Setup > General > Units > Temperature units > °C/°F** in the infotainment system.

Driver only



If you touch the **DRIVER ONLY** icon (indicator light ON), most of the air flow is directed toward the driver's seat.

Information

- Some of the airflow may be directed to other seating position to keep indoor air pleasant whilst using **DRIVER ONLY**.
 - When using the front windscreen defroster, the air flow on the both sides of windscreen continues to operate regardless of the activation of **DRIVER ONLY**.
-

SYNC (Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature equally)



- Press the **SYNC** button (indicator light ON) to adjust the driver and passenger side temperature and air flow direction equally.
- Press the **SYNC** button (indicator light OFF) again to adjust the driver and passenger side temperature individually.

Air intake control

Recirculation mode



With the recirculated air selected, air from the passenger compartment is drawn through the climate control system.

Outside (fresh) mode



With the outside (fresh) air selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is drawn through the climate control system.



WARNING

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Continued climate control system operation in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle that could fog the windscreen and the side windows and obscure visibility.
 - Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on.
 - Continued climate use of recirculated air may cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position whilst driving.
-



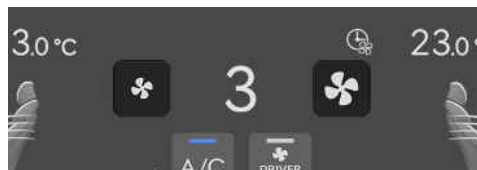
CAUTION

Using the system in the fresh air position is recommended.

Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) can cause fogging of the windscreen and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment will become stale.

In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.

Fan speed control



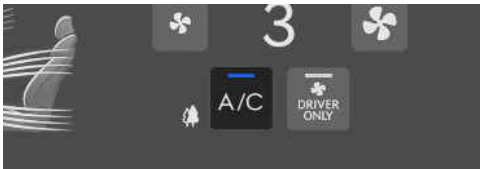
The fan speed can be set as desired by touching the fan speed control icon. More air is delivered with higher fan speeds.

Pressing the **OFF** button turns off the fan.

NOTICE

Operating the fan speed when the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position may cause the battery to discharge.

Air conditioning



Touch the **A/C** icon to manually turn on the system on (indicator light ON) and off.

Clean air system

When the clean air system is selected, the indoor fine dust concentration is measured by the fine dust sensor equipped in the vehicle and the indoor air status is presented on the screen. If needed, it prevents the contaminated external air and the cabin air filter purifies the indoor air by filtering the fine dust to provide fresh air.

Indoor air status display

The air status is presented with the four levels as below when the climate control system turns on.

Operation Indicator	Clean Air System	OFF		ON	
	Indoor Air Condition	Good (Blue)	Normal (Green)	Poor (Orange)	Very poor (Red)
	Concentration of fine dust (μg/m³)	0-10	11-25	26-50	51-

- The cabin air filter needs to be replaced per every 10,000 mi. (15,000 km) to maximise efficiency of the clean air system.
- If the vehicle is driven in an inner city area with high air pollution or severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads or the indoor fine dust concentration is not presented as Good on the screen due to prolonged heavy fine dust, have the cabin air filter inspected. If the cabin air filter is contaminated, fine dust concentration may be displayed as Poor or Very Poor on the screen.
- We recommend using genuine cabin air filter to maintain the optimal performance of the clean air system.
- Use genuine Genesis cabin air filter to maintain the optimal performance of the clean air system.

When a cabin air filter that has low dust collection efficiency or poor dust removal performance is used, or if you use a cabin air filter that does not meet the specification, fine dust concentration may be displayed as Poor or Very Poor on the screen.

- Presented dust concentration is measured inside the vehicle in realtime so the measured value is differed from the dust concentration in the atmosphere.
- The presented figure might be varied by the mensuration or measurement locations so please use it as a reference.

- The fine dust concentration value is the result of measuring the number of dust and converting it to the fine dust concentration using an optical method.
- The fine dust concentration is displayed from 0 to 199.
- The measured fine dust concentration value may be different from the measurement standards of other instruments or products.
 - If the fine dust concentration is high, the displayed fine dust concentration may differ from the actual concentration level.
- The time of concentration level measurement may be delayed since the spread of fine dust is slow.
- Movement around the fine dust sensor interferes with normal operation of the sensor. The displayed fine dust concentration may differ from the actual concentration level.
- In the following environments, the fine dust concentration can be displayed differently from the actual level.
 - Hairy products, bugs or pets are present
 - A vacuum cleaner is used
 - Humidity is high
 - A door or window is opened letting the outside air in
 - Outside air from a construction site, factory or ventilator enters
 - A product that generates vapours or fine particles (humidifiers, sprays, etc.) is used
 - Even if the dust is generated by activities such as dusting or cleaning, the fine dust sensor may not respond if the dust is large (PM10 or higher). It will be removed by the cabin air filter.
- The fine dust concentration level can change by products that cause odor, such as air fresheners, odor removers, and cleaners.
- In an environment affected by electromagnetic waves or electrical noise, the fine dust concentration can be temporarily displayed high.
- It may take time to reset the fine dust sensor when the vehicle is turned on.
- If the air filter is not replaced regularly, fine dust concentration may be displayed as Poor or Very Poor on the screen.

OFF mode



Press the **OFF** button to turn the climate control system off. You can still operate the mode and air intake buttons as long as the Start/Stop button is in the DRIVE READY position.

Information

- Water dripping on the ground of the vehicle is normal after the use of the air conditioning.
- Avoid prolonged operation of the air conditioning in recirculation mode when adjusting the air intake control. Carefully adjust to let outdoor air circulate regularly.
- Use the air conditioning system every week for around 5 minutes at once to avoid the potential breakdown of the system.
- Open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- Excessive use of air conditioning during the hot summer may increase moisture outside the window due to the difference between the temperature of the outside and inside the vehicle. Change the air flow direction and adjust the air control to the lowest level.
- In humid weather, if the windows are open and the air conditioning is running, water droplets may form inside the vehicle and around the air vent. In this case, use the air conditioning system with the windows closed to prevent any potential damage to electrical equipment.

Avoid leaves, snow, or other objects to block the grill as the source of air for the heater and air conditioning flows into the grill. When cooling, foggy air can be seen as the outside air draws into the vehicle. This is a normal condition since the humid air flows into the vehicle whilst cooling the vehicle rapidly.

System operation

Cooling/Ventilation

- 1 Set the mode to the  position.
- 2 Set the air intake control the outside (fresh) air or recirculated air position.
- 3 Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control as desired.

Heating

- 1 Set the mode to the  position.
- 2 Set the air intake control the outside (fresh) air or recirculated air position.
- 3 Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control as desired.
- 4 If desired, turn the air conditioning ON with the temperature control knob set to heat in order to dehumidify the air before it enters into the cabin.

If the windscreen fogs up, set the mode to the  position.

Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Return the control to the outside (fresh) air position when the unpleasant air outside has diminished. This can help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- To help prevent the inside of the windscreen from fogging, set the air intake control to outside (fresh) air position and the fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to the desired temperature.

Air conditioning

- 1 Start the vehicle. Press the air conditioning button.

- 2 Set the mode to the  position.
- 3 Set the air intake control to the recirculated air position temporarily to allow the cabin to cool quickly. When the desired temperature in the cabin is reached, change the air intake control back to the outside (fresh) air position.
- 4 Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to as desired.

NOTICE

- When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely whilst driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Continue to use the fan but turn off the air conditioning system if the temperature gauge indicates the vehicle is overheating.
 - Always use the air conditioning with the windows closed. In humid weather, if the windows are open and the air conditioning is running, water droplets may form inside the vehicle and potentially damage electrical equipment.
-

Air conditioning system operation tips

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- After sufficient cooling has been achieved, switch back from the recirculated air position to the outside (fresh) air position.
- To help reduce moisture inside of the windows on rainy or humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system with the windows and vision roof closed.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- If you operate air conditioner excessively, the difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windscreen may cause the outer surface of the windscreen to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection to the  position and fan speed control to the lowest speed.

System maintenance

Cabin air filter

The cabin air filter is installed under the front boot cover. It filters the dust or other pollutants that enter the vehicle through the heating and air conditioning system.

We recommend that the cabin air filter be replaced by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products according to the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads and/or if transporting pets or occupants smoke inside the vehicle, then more frequent cabin air filter inspections and changes are required.

Information

- Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule. If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty, rough roads, more frequent climate control air filter inspections and changes are required.
 - When the air flow rate suddenly decreases, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
-

Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant

If the amount of refrigerant is too low or too high, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

WARNING

- **Vehicles equipped with R-1234yf**



To prevent serious injury, have the air conditioning system be serviced by only trained and certified technicians. R-1234yf is flammable and operated at high pressure.

Reclaim all refrigerants with proper equipment. Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to individuals and environment.

- **Vehicles equipped with R-134a**

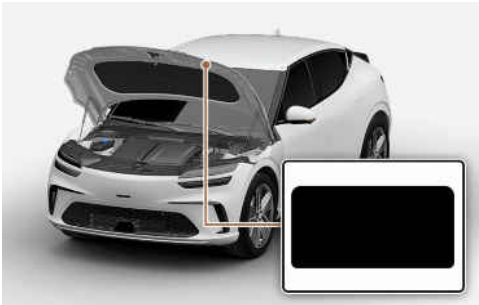


To prevent serious injury, have the air conditioning system be serviced by only trained and certified technicians. R-134a is operated at high pressure.

Reclaim all refrigerants with proper equipment. Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to individuals and environment.

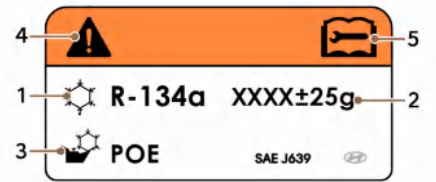
- The refrigerant system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians in a well-ventilated area to ensure proper and safe operation.
 - Never repair the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) or replace with the one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle. A new replacement evaporator must be certified (and labelled) as meeting SAE Standard J2842.
-

Air conditioning refrigerant label



You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied to your vehicle on the label located inside of the bonnet.

Type A



Type B



Type C



Each symbols and specification on the air conditioning refrigerant label is represented as below:

1. Classification of refrigerant
2. Amount of refrigerant
3. Classification of compressor lubricant
4. Caution
5. Service manual
6. CO₂ equivalent of refrigerant

Windscreen defrosting and defogging

- For maximum defrost performance, set the temperature control switch to the highest temperature setting and the fan speed control to the highest setting.
- If warm air to the floor is desired whilst defrosting or defogging, select the floor defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windscreen, rear window, outside rearview mirrors, and all side windows.
- Clear all snow and ice from the bonnet and air inlet to improve heater and defroster efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windscreen.



WARNING

Do not use the defrost level (🌀) position during cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The outer surface of the windscreen may fog and reduce visibility, causing a collision that results in serious injury or death. Set the mode selection button to the face level (👤) position and lower the fan speed.

To defog inside windscreen

- 1 Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control as desired.
- 2 Press the defroster button.
 - The air conditioning turns on and automatically selects the outside (fresh) air mode according to the detected ambient temperature.
 - If the air conditioning, outside (fresh) air mode and higher fan speed are not selected automatically, adjust the corresponding switch.
 - If the defrost switch is selected, the fan speed increases.

To defrost outside windscreen

- 1 Set the fan speed to the highest position and the temperature to the hottest (27 °C (82 °F)) position.
- 2 Press the defroster button
 - The air conditioning turns on and automatically selects the outside (fresh) air mode according to the detected ambient temperature.
 - If the defrost switch is selected, lower fan speed is adjusted to higher fan speed.

Rear window defroster



To activate it, press the rear window defroster button located in the centre control panel. The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.

- To turn it off, press the rear window defroster button again.

NOTICE

Never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window to prevent damage to the rear window defroster.

Information

- If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.
 - The rear window defroster automatically turns off after about 20 minutes or when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position.
-

Outside rearview mirror defroster

The outside rearview mirror defrosters operate when you turn on the rear window defroster.

Climate control additional features

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Air conditioning auto-drying

 If equipped

The Air conditioning auto-drying feature dries the moisture in the air conditioner and reduces air conditioner odor. The blower motor automatically operates after 30 minutes the vehicle is turned off.

Turning Air conditioning auto-drying on or off

The Air conditioning auto-drying feature can be turned on and off by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Climate features > Air conditioner auto-drying**.

If the operating condition is satisfied after setting the feature, the operating condition appears on the infotainment system and the blower motor automatically operates.

When the Air conditioning auto-drying feature is activated, the air conditioner sets the fan speed to the third level, selects outside (fresh) mode, and directs the air flow to the floor.

Operating conditions

- The vehicle is turned off after operating the air conditioner for a certain period.
- The 12 V battery level is sufficient and the outside temperature is above a certain level.

Non-operating conditions

- The Air conditioning auto-drying feature has operated for 10 minutes.
- The Start/Stop button is pressed, or the vehicle is POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.
- The climate control system is operated remotely.

Information

The Air conditioning auto-drying feature reduces air conditioner odors but may not remove all odors.

Auto defogging system



The Auto defogging reduces the possibility of fogging up the inside of the windscreen by automatically sensing the moisture on inside the windscreen.

The Auto defogging system operates when the heater or air conditioning is on.

When the Auto defogging system operates, the  indicator illuminates.

If high amount of humidity is detected in the vehicle, the Auto defogging system is enabled.

The following steps are performed automatically:

- 1 Air intake control will change to outside (fresh) mode.
- 2 Fan speed is set to the highest level.
- 3 Mode Will change to defrost to direct airflow to the windscreen.
- 4 Air conditioning turns on.

If the air conditioning is off or recirculated air is manually selected whilst Auto defogging system is ON, the Auto defogging system  indicator blinks to signal that manual operation has been cancelled.

Information

The Auto defogging system may not operate normally, when the outside temperature is below -10 °C (14 °F).

Turning Auto defogging system on or off

Climate control system

Press the front windscreen defroster button for 3 seconds when the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.

To check whether the system is on or off, go to the settings menu in the infotainment system and see if **Auto defog** is selected or not.

Infotainment system

Auto Defogging System can be turned on and off by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Defog/Defrost options > Auto defog** from the infotainment system.

NOTICE

- Do not select recirculated air whilst the Auto defogging system is operating.
 - Do not remove the sensor cover located on the top of the windscreen glass. Damage may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.
-

Information

When Auto defogging system is operating, fan speed adjustment, temperature adjustment, and air intake control selection are all disabled.

Auto dehumidify

 if equipped

To increase cabin air quality and reduce windscreen misting, recirculation mode switches off automatically after about 5 to 30 minutes, depending on the outside temperature, and the air intake changes to fresh mode.

Turning Auto dehumidify on or off

Climate control system

To turn the Auto dehumidify feature on or off, select Face level  mode and press the air intake control  button at least 5 times within 3 seconds. When Auto dehumidify is turned on, the air intake control button indicator blinks 6 times. When turned off, the indicator blinks 3 times.

Infotainment system

Auto dehumidify can be turned on and off by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Automatic ventilation > Auto dehumidify** from the infotainment system.

Recirculating air when washer fluid is used

 if equipped

Recirculation mode automatically activates to reduce the scent of the washer fluid entering the cabin when the windscreen washer is used.

When it is shifted to the recirculation mode, the unpleasant scent may flow into the vehicle.

Turning Activation on a washer fluid use on or off

Climate control system

To turn the Activation on washer fluid use feature on or off, select Floor level  mode, and then press the air intake control  button 5 times within 3 seconds.

When Activation on washer fluid use is turned on, the air intake control button indicator blinks 6 times. When turned off, the indicator blinks 3 times.

Infotainment system

Activation on washer fluid use can be turned on and off by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Recirculate air > Activation on washer fluid use** from the infotainment system.

Recirculating air when entering a tunnel

 if equipped

To prevent the inflow of polluted air into the vehicle when passing through a tunnel, the climate control system is operated using the navigation map information and vehicle speed as follows:

To use this feature, it can be enabled from the infotainment system. Select **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Recirculate air > Activation upon entering a tunnel**.

- **Tunnel section:** The vehicle's windows automatically close, and the climate control system switches to recirculation mode for about 7 seconds before entering a tunnel.

The windows open to the previous position after passing through the tunnel. If the power window switch is operated before the windows open, the windows do not return to the previous position.

Operating conditions

- The climate control system's fresh mode is selected.
- The window(s) are open.

The windows close automatically only when your vehicle is applied with the automatic up/down window feature for all seats.



WARNING

Be careful not to get any body parts caught when the windows are closing.

Information

- The activation time for the feature may differ because of the time gap between the GPS and vehicle speed.
- The feature activates until you have passed through continuous tunnels.
- When entering a tunnel, recirculation mode may cause fogging of the windscreen. Use the front windscreen defroster button.
- The feature does not operate in short tunnels.
- The feature may not activate if the GPS is not working properly.
- The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Air conditioning ECO mode

Eco mode helps improve energy efficiency for eco-friendly driving.

- To use this feature, it can be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:

Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Climate features > ECO mode climate control

Drive mode	Air conditioning system control
ECO	ECO/COMFORT
COMFORT	COMFORT
SPORT	COMFORT
MY DRIVE	COMFORT
SNOW	COMFORT

Link to climate settings for auto-adjustment (for driver's seat)

 if equipped

The temperature of the driver's seat warmer, air ventilated seat and heated steering wheel is automatically controlled depending on the inside and outside temperature of the vehicle when the vehicle is running.

To use these features, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select: **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Link to climate settings for auto-adjustment**

For more information, refer to the **Seat warmer and air ventilation seat** and **Steering wheel heater**.

Smart ventilation

The smart ventilation system maintains pleasant/fresh air conditioning inside the passenger compartment by automatically detecting/controlling the temperature and humidity level, when you drive the vehicle with the climate control system in OFF position. When the smart ventilation system starts to operate, the message appears for about 5 seconds.

To use this feature, it can be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select: **Setup > Vehicle > Climate > Automatic ventilation > Smart ventilation**.

The smart ventilation system stops when:

- OFF button is selected.
- Any of the buttons of the climate control is selected for operation.

NOTICE

The smart ventilation system may not operate when the vehicle is driven at low speed.

Storage compartment



WARNING

- Never store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.
 - ALWAYS keep the storage compartment covers closed securely whilst driving. Items inside your vehicle are moving as fast as the vehicle. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a collision, the items may fly out of the compartment and may cause an injury if they strike the driver or a passenger.
-



CAUTION

To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartments.

Console storage

Front seat



Centre

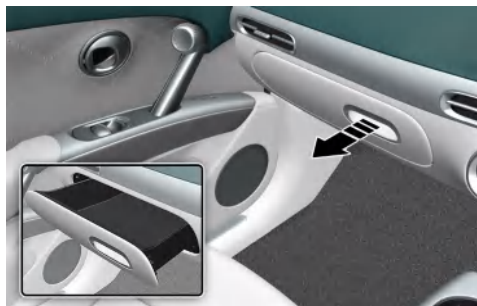


Press the button to open. This console is designed to store small items.

CAUTION

- Make sure body parts are out of the way when closing the console cover after use.
 - Avoid storing food items in the console for extended periods.
-

Glove box



To open, pull the lever. Always close the glove box door after use.

WARNING

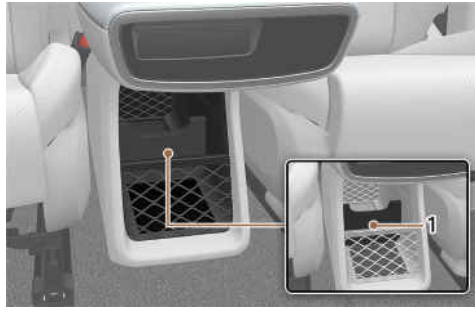
An open glove box door may cause serious injury to a passenger in a collision, even if the passenger is wearing a seat belt.

Open tray



This tray is designed to store small items.

Console under tray



1. Removable partition

Large items such as tissues and wet wipes can be stored and used in both directions. You can use the removable partition to segment the space.



WARNING

Do not put sharp objects in the tray. In a collision, they can come loose from the tray and injure occupants.

Sunglass holder

 if equipped



To open:

Push and release the cover and the holder will slowly open. Place your sunglasses in the compartment door with the lenses facing out.

To close:

Push back into position.

Make sure the sunglass holder is closed whilst driving.



WARNING

- Do not keep objects except sunglasses inside the sunglass holder. Such objects can be thrown from the holder in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers in the vehicle.
 - Do not open the sunglass holder whilst the vehicle is moving. The rear view mirror of the vehicle can be blocked by an open sunglass holder.
 - Do not put the glasses forcibly into a sunglass holder. It may cause personal injury if you try to open it forcibly when the glasses are jammed in holder.
-

Cargo tray

 if equipped



You can place a first aid kit, a reflector triangle (front tray), tools, etc. in the box for easy access.

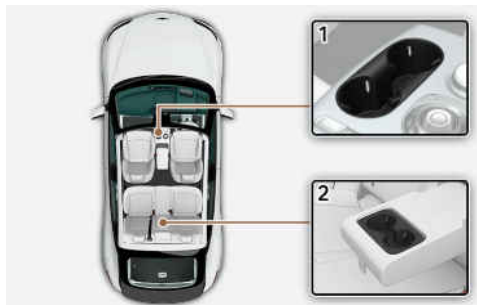
- Grasp the handle on the top of the cover and lift it.

Information

- When storing small or easily movable items, they may cause noise whilst driving.
 - Do not store fragile items in the cargo tray.
-

Interior features

Cup holder



1. Front seat
2. Rear seat armrest

Cups or small beverages can be placed in the cup holders.

WARNING

- Avoid abrupt starting and braking when the cup holder is used to prevent spilling your drink. If hot liquid spills, you may be burned. Such a burn to the driver may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.
- Only use soft cups in the cup holders.

NOTICE

- Keep your drinks sealed whilst driving to prevent spilling. If liquid spills, it may get into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and damage electrical/electronic parts.
- When cleaning spilled liquids do not use hot air to blow out or dry the cup holder. This may damage the interior.
- Keep cans or bottles out of direct sun light and do not put them in a hot vehicle. Otherwise, they may explode.

Diffuser

It is a membrane-type diffuser mounted on the door handle in the passenger seat door trim.



- 1 Turn the diffuser top cover on the passenger door handle counterclockwise to release it from the tray.
- 2 After breaking the perforated line at the end of the membrane, peel off the tin foil sealing paper.
- 3 Insert the transparencies into the bottom cover of the diffuser with the transparencies facing up, then combine the top cover.
- 4 Turn the diffuser top cover clockwise to lock.



CAUTION

- Never tear the membrane transparency.
- If you apply excessive force, there is a risk of damage.
- If the membrane is damaged, it may cause product deformation due to contamination of the peripheral area.

Sunvisor



1. Mirror
2. Ticket holder
3. Bracket

To use the sunvisor, pull it downward.

- To use the sunvisor to block the sun from the side window, pull it rearward, release it from the bracket and swing it to the side toward the window. Adjust the sunvisor forward or backward as needed.

- To use the vanity mirror, pull down the sunvisor and slide the mirror cover. Close the vanity mirror cover securely and return the sunvisor to its original position after use.
- Use the ticket holder to hold tickets.



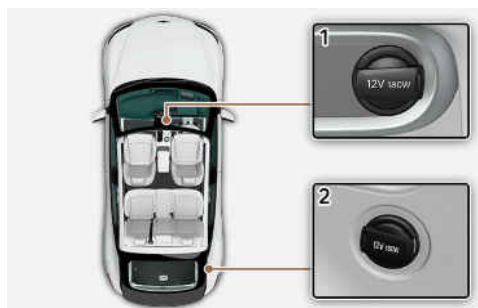
WARNING

Do not block your view or the roadway when using the sunvisor.

NOTICE

Use caution when inserting tickets into the ticket holder to avoid damage. Refrain from putting several tickets in the ticket holder as this could also damage the retaining tab.

Power outlet



1. Front seat
2. Cargo storage

The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile phones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems.

The devices should draw less than 12 V, 180 W with the vehicle running.



WARNING

Avoid electrical shocks. Do not place your fingers or foreign objects (pin, etc.) into a power outlet or touch the power outlet with a wet hand.

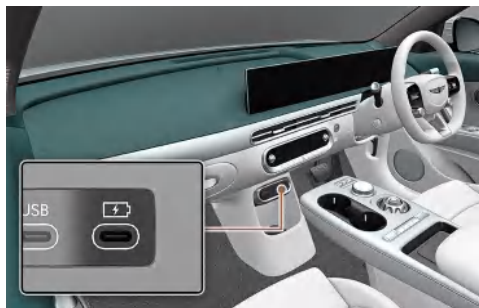
NOTICE

To prevent damage to the power outlets:

- Use the power outlet only when the vehicle is running and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for an extended period of time with the vehicle off could cause the battery to discharge.
 - Only use 12 V electric accessories that are less than 180 W in electric capacity.
 - Adjust the air conditioner or heater to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.
 - Close the cover when not used.
 - Some electronic devices may cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle's power outlet.
 - Push the plug in as far as it goes. The plug may overheat and the fuse may open.
 - Only connect devices with reverse current protection or the current from the device battery may cause the vehicle's electrical/electronic system to malfunction.
-

USB charger

Front seat



Rear seat



When in 'DRIVE READY', 'POWER ON' or utility mode, you can charge various devices such as smartphones and tablets by connecting them to the USB charging terminal.

NOTICE

- Use the USB charger when the vehicle is running. Using the USB charger for prolonged periods of time with vehicle off may cause the battery to discharge.
 - To prevent damage to the USB charger:
 - Do not insert foreign objects or spill liquid into the outlet. The USB charging terminal may be damaged.
 - Do not use devices with working current exceeding 2,100 mA (2.1 A).
-

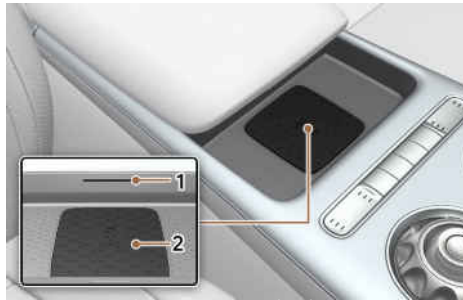
Information

- The battery charging state may be monitored on the electronic device.
 - Disconnect the USB cable from the USB port after use.
 - A smartphone or a tablet PC may get warmer during the recharging process. It does not indicate any malfunction with the charging system.
 - A smartphone or a tablet PC that does not use a USB cable to charge should be charged using its own charger.
 - Do not attempt to use the charging terminal either to turn on an audio or to play media with the infotainment system.
 - Charging may not be possible when using a Type-C to A converter sold by a mobile phone manufacturer or commercially available.
-

Wireless smartphone charging system

The wireless charging process starts when you put a Qi-enabled smartphone on the wireless charging with the screen facing up.

- The wireless smartphone charging system charges only the Qi-enabled  smartphones. Visit your smartphone manufacturer's website to check whether your smartphone supports the Qi technology.



1. Indicator light
2. Charging pad

- 1 The wireless smartphone charger is available when all doors are closed, and when the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position.
- 2 Turn on the wireless charging function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select: **Setup > Vehicle > Convenience > Wireless charging system for mobile devices**

3 Place the smartphone on the centre of the wireless charging pad.

- The indicator light is orange when the smartphone is charging and turns blue when phone charging is complete.
- Remove other items, including the smart key and the card key from the wireless charging pad.
- For flip type smartphones, when using wireless charging, place the smartphone folded with the device's back placed on the centre of the wireless charging unit.

If your smartphone is not charging:

- Move the smartphone on the charging pad.
- Make sure the indicator light is orange.

The indicator light blinks orange for 10 seconds if there is a malfunction in the wireless charging system.

The system warns you with a message on the cluster display if the smartphone is still on the wireless charging pad after the vehicle is turned OFF and the front door is opened.



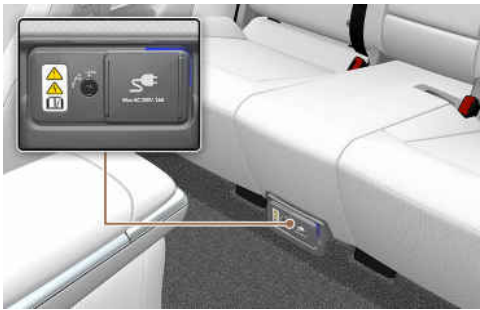
CAUTION

- The wireless charging process may temporarily stop when there is any metallic item, such as a coin, between the wireless smartphone charging system and smartphone.
 - Some magnetic items such as credit cards, phone cards, or transit cards may be damaged if left with the smartphone during the charging process.
-

NOTICE

- The wireless smartphone charging system may not support certain smartphones, that do not meet for the Qi specification Φ .
 - When placing your smartphone on the charging pad, position the phone in the middle of the mat for optimal charging performance. If your smartphone is off to the side, the charging rate may be less and in some cases the smartphone may experience higher heat conduction.
 - Wireless charging may stop temporarily when the smart key is used, either when starting the vehicle or locking/unlocking the doors, etc.
 - When charging certain smartphones, the charging indicator may not change to blue when the smartphone is fully charged.
 - The wireless charging process may temporarily stop, when temperature abnormally increases inside the wireless smartphone charging system. The wireless charging process does not restart, until the temperature falls.
 - For some manufacturer's smartphones, the system may not warn you even though the smartphone is left on the wireless charging unit. This is due to the particular characteristic of the smartphone and not a malfunction of the wireless charging.
 - When using a smartphone application, such as Android Auto, whilst charging, the charging process may be delayed or interrupted due to the smartphone overheating. This issue is not related to the wireless charging system but rather caused by the smartphone's self-heating. Therefore, disconnect the smartphone from the charging pad.
 - If the smartphone has a thick case, it may not charge.
 - If the smartphone is not completely contacting the charging pad, wireless charging may not operate properly.
 - If the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position, the charging also stops.
 - When any smartphone without a wireless charging function or a metallic object is placed on the charging pad, a small noise may sound. This small sound because the vehicle discerns compatibility of the object placed on the charging pad. It does not affect your vehicle or the smartphone.
 - Some smartphones may not be able to charge depending on the internal structure of the smartphone. If this occurs, try charging the smartphone by moving it to the left or right side of the wireless charging pad. However, for some fold-able smartphones that have magnets inside the smartphone, try charging the smartphone whilst holding it close to the left side of the wireless charging pad.
 - Some magnetic items like credit cards, phone cards or rail tickets may be damaged if left with the smartphone during the charging process.
-

Vehicle to load (V2L)



V2L (Vehicle to Load) is installed under the rear seat. V2L is a convenient feature which provides enough electricity to use diverse household electrical appliances in the vehicle. For more information, refer to the **Using V2L function**.



CAUTION

Depending on the type of plug you use, looseness may occur.

Clock

The clock can be set from the infotainment system. For more information, refer to the infotainment system manual.



WARNING

Do not attempt to adjust the clock whilst driving.

Coat hook

Type A



Type B



This hook is not designed to hold large or heavy items.



WARNING

Only hang soft clothing without heavy, sharp or breakable objects in the clothes pockets. In a collision or when the curtain airbag is inflated, the objects could move and cause serious injury.



Floor mat anchor(s)

ALWAYS use the floor mat anchors to attach the front floor mats to the vehicle. The anchors on the front floor carpet keep the floor mats from sliding forward.

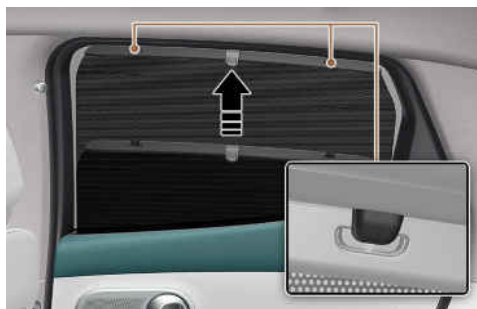
WARNING

To prevent serious injury or death from a floor mat interfering with the brake or accelerator pedals:

- Remove any protective film on the carpet before installing a floor mat.
- Check floor mats are securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors before driving.
- Do not use ANY floor mat that cannot be firmly attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.
- Do not stack floor mats on top of one another (for example, all-weather rubber mat on top of a carpeted floor mat). Only a single floor mat must be installed in each position.
- To avoid any interference with pedal operation, install only Genesis floor mats designed for use in your vehicle.

Rear side window sunshades

 if equipped



Use the rear side sunshade to block the light coming through the rear seat windows. Lift the rear side sunshade and hang the sunshade on both sides of the hook.

CAUTION

- Always hang both sides of the curtain on the hook. This could cause damage to the side curtain if only one side of the curtain is hooked.
- Do not let any foreign material get in between the vehicle and side curtain. The side curtain may not be lifted up.

Cargo net holder



To keep items from shifting in the cargo area, use the 4 holders located in the cargo area side trim to attach the cargo net.

Make sure the cargo net is securely attached to the holders in the cargo board.

If necessary, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products to obtain a cargo net.



WARNING

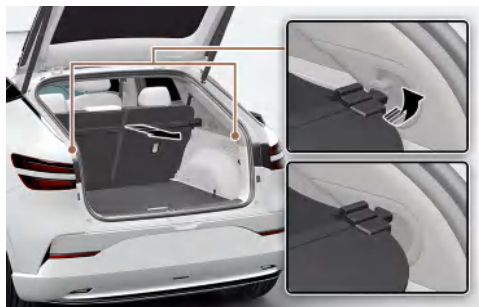
- Avoid eye injury. Do not overstretch the cargo net. Always keep your face and body out of the cargo net's recoil path. Do not use the cargo net when the strap has visible signs of wear or damage.
- Use the cargo net to keep only light items from shifting in the cargo area.

Cargo security screen

 If equipped

Use the cargo security screen to cover items stored in the cargo area.

Using the cargo security screen

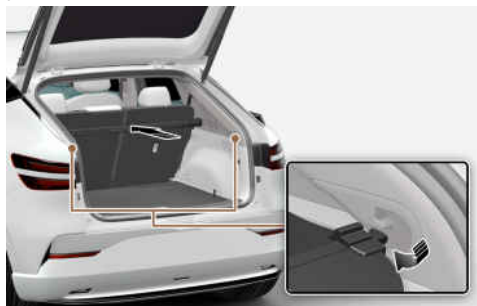


Pull the cargo security screen towards the rear of the vehicle and insert the guide pin into the guide.

- Pull out the cargo security screen with the handle in the centre to prevent the guide pin from falling out of the guide.

- The cargo security screen may not automatically slide back in if the cargo security screen is not fully pulled out. Pull the cargo screen out all the way and then slowly allow the screen to retract back in.

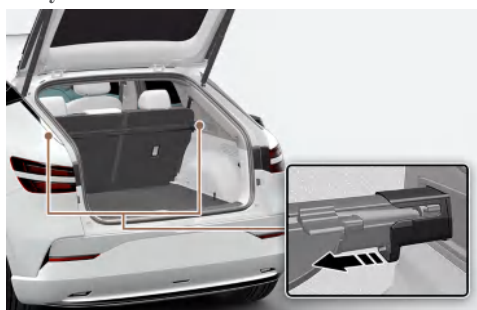
When the cargo security screen is not in use:



Pull the cargo security screen backward and up to release it from the guides.

- The cargo security screen will automatically slide back in.

Removing the cargo security screen



- Push one side of the cargo screen inward to compress the spring and release the screen from the vehicle.
- Whilst the spring is compressed, pull out the cargo security screen.



WARNING

- Do not place objects on the cargo security screen. Such objects may be thrown about inside the vehicle and possibly injure vehicle occupants during an accident or when braking.
- Never allow anyone to ride in the cargo area. It is designed for luggage only.
- Maintain the balance of the vehicle and locate the weight as forward as possible.

NOTICE

Since the cargo security screen may be damaged or malformed, do not put luggage on it when it is used.

Exterior features

Roof side rails

 if equipped



If your vehicle is equipped with roof rack rails, you can add roof rack crossbars as an accessory (not shown).

WARNING

- Loading cargo or luggage in excess of the specified weight limit on the roof side rails may damage your vehicle.

ROOF SIDE RAILS	220 lbs. (100 kg) EVENLY DISTRIBUTED

- Avoid sudden starts, braking, sharp turns, abrupt manoeuvres, or high speeds that may result in loss of vehicle control or rollover resulting in a collision. The vehicle centre of gravity is higher when items are loaded onto the roof side rails.
- Always drive slowly and turn corners carefully when carrying items on the roof side rails. Severe wind updrafts caused by passing vehicles or natural causes, can cause sudden upward pressure on items loaded on the roof side rails. This is especially true when carrying large, flat items such as wood panels or mattresses. This may cause the items to fall off the roof side rails and cause damage to your vehicle or others around you.
- To prevent damage or loss of cargo whilst driving, check frequently before or whilst driving to make sure the items on the roof side rails are securely fastened.

CAUTION

- If the vehicle is equipped with a vision roof, do not position the cargo onto the roof side rails in such a way that it may interfere with vision roof operation.
- Always take precautions to make sure the cargo does not damage the roof.
- When carrying large objects on the roof side rails, make sure they do not exceed the overall roof length or width.
- When carrying cargo on the roof side rails, take necessary precautions to make sure the cargo does not damage the roof of the vehicle.

Infotainment system



For more information, refer to the separately supplied infotainment system manual.

NOTICE

- Do not install an aftermarket HID headlight. Your vehicle's audio and electronic devices may not function properly.
 - Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discolouration.
-

Vehicle settings

Vehicle Settings in the infotainment system provides user options for the settings including door lock/unlock features, convenience features, driver assistance settings, etc.

- 1 Press the **SETUP** button on the main keyboard.
- 2 Select **Vehicle** to change the settings for features.

Vehicle Settings menu

- Driver assistance
- Drive mode
- Active sound design
- Head-up display
- Cluster
- Climate
- Seats
- Lights
- Door
- Digital keys
- Convenience



WARNING

Do not adjust the Vehicle Settings whilst driving. You may be distracted from the driving task and could collide.

Information

- The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.
 - The information provided may differ depending on which functions are available to your vehicle.
-

Antenna



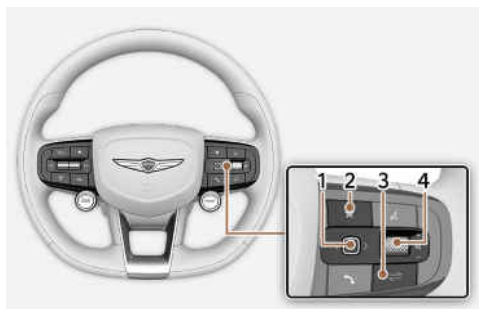
The shark fin antenna receives transmitted data (for example, AM/FM).



CAUTION

- Be careful of antenna damage by checking the height of the vehicle before entering low-ceiling spaces such as automated parking lots or automated washing machines.
 - Be careful not to contact the antenna when loading cargo on the roof rack. Antenna transmission/reception performance may be degraded.
-

Steering wheel remote controls



NOTICE

Do not operate multiple audio remote control buttons simultaneously.

No.	Description
1	■ (< , >): SEEK/PRESET If the SEEK/PRESET switch (optical mouse) is swiped to the left or right and held for 0.8 seconds or more, it functions in the following modes: • RADIO mode: It functions as the AUTO SEEK select button. It seeks until you release the button. • MEDIA mode: It functions as the FF/RW button. If the SEEK/PRESET switch (optical mouse) is swiped to the left or right , it will function in the following modes: • RADIO mode: It functions by moving between stored PRESET STATIONS. • MEDIA mode: It functions as the TRACK UP/DOWN button.
2	★ CUSTOM: Press the Custom button to set frequently used features.
3	⇌ MODE: Press the Mode button to toggle through Radio mode or Media mode.
4	+, - VOLUME: • Rotate the Volume up to increase volume. • Rotate the Volume down to decrease volume. 🔇 Mute: • Press the Mute button to mute the sound. • Press the Mute button again to activate the sound.

Bang&Olufsen sound system

 if equipped



CAUTION

Bang&Olufsen sound system is equipped with door speaker grills made of stainless steel. The grill surface can be heated when the vehicle is exposed to hot weather for a long period of time.

Keep away from the speaker grill when it is hot.

USB Port



The USB port can be used whilst the vehicle is running.

After connecting a media storage device such as a MP3 or USB to the USB port, you can listen to music through the vehicle's speakers or play it on the infotainment system.

Information

When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet, noise may occur during playback. If this happens, disconnect the USB cable and use the portable audio device's power source.

Bluetooth® wireless technology



1. Call/Answer/Call end button (Steering wheel)
2. Microphone (Map lamp)

For more information, refer to the separately supplied infotainment system manual.



WARNING

To prevent driver distractions, minimise your use of these features whilst driving. Distraction may cause a collision, resulting in serious injury or death.

Voice recognition



For more information, refer to the separately supplied infotainment system manual.

Using V2L function

With the Vehicle to Load (V2L) feature, you can turn on electronic devices by connecting them to the high voltage battery.

Safety precautions when using the V2L function

Before using V2L function, carefully read all the safety information below and follow precisely. Failure to do so may cause electric shock or fire and result in a serious injury, death, malfunction in your vehicle or property damage.

Precautions when using the V2L function



WARNING

- Do not use the V2L function if the V2L connector, charging inlet, power plug, or cable is damaged, corroded, or rusted.
 - Do not touch the V2L connector, charging inlet, or power plug with wet hands.
 - Do not use the V2L function if the connection part of the V2L connector and the charging inlet is loose.
 - Check if there is no water, dust, or other contaminants before connecting the connector and the plug. They may cause electric shock or fire.
 - Do not put metal objects or bare hands to the V2L connector or charging inlet.
 - For electric devices used outdoors in a vehicle, use a product with a waterproof function or use it in a waterproof environment. If rain or humidity intrude into electric devices, multi-outlets, extension cords, etc., it may cause electric shock or damage to the vehicle or the devices.
 - If there is a risk of lightning, do not use the V2L function outside the vehicle.
 - Do not use an electric heating appliances like electric kettle, toaster, or iron in the vehicle. Doing so may result in a fire and injury.
-

Precautions for operating the cooling fan



WARNING



When using the V2L, the cooling fan in the vehicle motor compartment can operate automatically even if the vehicle is turned off. Do not put your hand near the cooling fan in the V2L operating state.

Precautions for handling and using the V2L connector



CAUTION

- Do not remodel or disassemble the V2L connector. It may cause fire, electric shock, or injury. Damage to your vehicle caused by remodeling and disassembling is not covered by warranty.
 - When the power plug is connected or disconnected to the V2L connector or open or close the connector cover of the V2L, be careful not to be scratched on the hand or other parts of the body.
 - Be sure to disconnect the V2L connector from the vehicle when you are finished using V2L.
 - Do not charge the vehicle using the V2L connector. If you charge the vehicle arbitrarily by remodeling the power cable of the connector, etc., it may damage the vehicle.
 - Do not place objects on the V2L connector. It may damage the cable and cause electric shock or fire.
 - Do not drop the V2L connector or give a strong impact to it. Keep it clean in a dry place without water or humidity.
-

Precautions when using electric/electronic products



CAUTION

- Before using the product, check the precautions and how to use the product referring to the product manual.
 - Only use products that have obtained national safety certification.
 - Only use an electric device that does not exceed the maximum power capacity that the vehicle can supply. However, some of the electric devices may not operate normally even if the product has power consumption less than the maximum power capacity provided by the vehicle.
 - Electric devices that require high power during initial operation.
 - Measuring devices that need to process accurate data.
 - Electric devices that are sensitive to inverter type AC charger.
 - Do not use products that require a continuous power supply, such as medical equipment. The power supply may be interrupted depending on the vehicle's condition.
 - The V2L discharging mode is blocked automatically in case of overheating. When the discharging mode is blocked, check whether the V2L connector or power plug is contaminated, worn, corroded or broken.
 - If the temperature falls to a proper level after it is left unattended, you can use it again.
 - If overheating repeats when using a certain electric device, do not use the electric device.
 - Do not connect more than two extension cords or multi-outlet. Also, when using the extension cable, ensure using the cable without twist. Heat from the overlapped cable may cause fire.
 - Do not hang the home appliances onto the wire.
 - Do not use if the sheath of home appliance cables is damaged or broken.
 - Put the power plug fully when connecting to the power.
 - Only use the qualified plug with ground connection that meets the standard. Do not use worn, corroded, or broken plug or improper plug that does not meet the standard.
-

Using electricity outside the vehicle

Before using V2L function, carefully read all the safety information and precautions on **Safety precautions when using the V2L function** and follow the instructions.

Follow the instructions below to connect the V2L connector to the charging inlet on the vehicle and supply power to an electronic product.

- 1 Open the cover of the V2L connector.
- 2 Close the cover after connecting the plug of an electronic product to the power outlet of the connector.



WARNING

Some types of plugs may not fit into the outlet cover of the V2L connector, causing incomplete closing of the cover. Do not use the V2L connector on a rainy or snowy day if the outlet cover is not completely closed. There is a risk of fire and/or injury.

- 3 Open the connection terminal protection cap of the connector with the open switch pressed.
- 4 Open the charging door and connect the V2L connector to the charging inlet on the vehicle.
 - Connect the V2L connector to the charging inlet within 60 seconds after opening the charging door.
 - Time remaining until the battery level reaches the set value, and the distance to empty at the set value appears on the instrument cluster or the infotainment system.
- 5 Press the power switch of the V2L connector.
 - The power is supplied and the indicator on the V2L connector is turned on.

Information

- When the V2L connector is connected to the charging inlet of the vehicle, all doors and connectors will be automatically locked to prevent theft and separation. To disconnect the V2L connector, unlock the door and pull the connector with the open switch pressed.
- Before using the V2L function, deactivate the scheduled climate setting referring to the **Setting the next departure time**. The V2L function may be cut off depending on the scheduled climate setting.
- To check and change the V2L setting, refer to the **Setting a battery discharging limit when using Vehicle to Load (V2L)**.
- If an electric device that exceeds the maximum power capacity is connected, a warning message appears on the instrument cluster and the power supply shuts off immediately.
- When using electricity outside of a vehicle, if any electric device is connected to an internal electricity panel in the vehicle, the power is also supplied to the power panel in the vehicle. Disconnect any electric devices not in use from the power panel.

Using electricity inside the vehicle

You can connect home appliances or electric devices to the power outlet inside the vehicle and use them conveniently.



WARNING

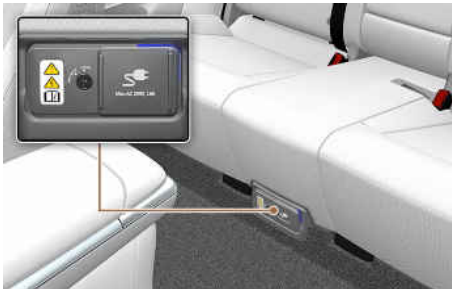
Do not use an electric heating appliances like electric kettle, toaster, or iron in the vehicle. It may cause a fire and injury.

- 1 Press the Start/Stop button to the POWER ON position or activate the Utility Mode.
 - For more information about the Utility Mode, refer to the **Setting Utility mode**.

- 2 Use a small flat blade tool (for example, screwdriver or similar) to unlock the power outlet cover, and connect the power plug of the electric device to the power socket.



- Time remaining until the battery level reaches the set value, and the distance to empty at the set value appears on the instrument cluster or the infotainment system.
- The indicator on the power outlet indicates power supply status.



Indicator status	Description
Blue	Standby
Red	No power supply even the power outlet is connected.
Green	Normal power supply through the normal connection of the power outlet.

Information

- V2L discharging mode shuts off if the vehicle is off using indoor V2L on the vehicle state of ON.
- Opening the charging door or connecting the V2L connector to the charging inlet, the V2L discharging mode shuts off.
- If you want to use the indoor and outdoor V2L simultaneously, firstly connect the V2L connector to the charging inlet and use the indoor V2L.
- When the high voltage battery charge level reaches the set discharging limit (%), the operation stops, and a warning message appears on the instrument cluster. If you want V2L operation, set the discharging limit (%) lower than the current battery charge.
 - For more information about the discharging limit, refer to the **Setting a battery discharging limit when using Vehicle to Load (V2L)**.
 - For more information about warnings, refer to the **Warnings and indicators**.

Solving V2L problems

If a problem occurs whilst using the V2L function, the V2L stops and a related messages appears on the instrument cluster.

Check the cause of the message and take an appropriate measure referring to the table below.

Message	Cause	Measure
V2L finished. Defined charge level reached	The high voltage battery level reaches the discharging limit set level.	To use the V2L continuously, make the discharging limit set level lower than the present battery level. (Refer to the Setting a battery discharging limit when using Vehicle to Load (V2L) .)
Energy consumption too high. V2L cancelled	An electrical appliance that exceeds the maximum power output the vehicle can supply is connected.	Check the total power consumption of the electrical appliance and replace it a product within the V2L maximum power output.
V2L conditions not met	V2L is stopped for the following reasons: • V2L connector switch off • V2L connector overheating • Opening the charging door whilst using the V2L indoor outlet	Make sure there are no problems with the V2L connector and the vehicle indoor outlet.

Aux. Battery Saver+

The Aux. Battery Saver+ is a function that specialized in battery protection, prevents the failure due to fully discharge of the 12 V battery.

If the user drives or charges the vehicle, the Aux. Battery Saver+ is automatically activated to check the 12 V battery charging state. If necessary, the high voltage battery charges the 12 V battery.



WARNING

When the function is activating the indicator lamp illuminates and high voltage electricity flows into the vehicle. Follow the instruction below to prevent electrical shock or injuries.

- Do not touch the high voltage electric wire (orange), connector, and all electric components and devices.
 - Do not modify or disconnect any electronic devices in your vehicle.
-



CAUTION

The Aux. Battery Saver+ function cannot prevent the 12 V battery discharging in the following situations:

- The 12 V battery is damaged or worn out.
 - The 12 V battery is used as a power supply or unauthorised electronic devices are used.
-

Information

- If the Aux. Battery Saver+ function was activated, the high voltage battery level may have decreased.
 - Depending on the condition of the vehicle or high voltage battery, the Aux. Battery Saver+ function may not operate normally or stopped.
-

6. Driving your vehicle

This chapter provides information required to start and drive your vehicle, as well as information that helps you drive more safely and economically.

Information

- The illustrations are shown as a guide. The actual shape may differ from the illustration.
 - The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.
 - The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.
-

Before driving

Before entering the vehicle

- Make sure all windows, outside rearview mirror(s), and outside lights are clean and unobstructed.
- Remove frost, snow, or ice.
- Visually check the tyres for uneven wear and damage.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Make sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to back up.

Before starting



WARNING

To reduce the risk of **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH**, take the following precautions:

- **ALWAYS** wear your seat belt. All passengers must be properly belted whenever the vehicle is moving. For more information, refer to the **Seat belts**.
- Always drive defensively. Do not assume that the other drivers are seeing your vehicle. They may not act as you expect. Be prepared to react to avoid a possible collision. Plan your movements anticipating the "worst case" scenario.
- Stay focused on driving. Driver distraction may cause a collision.
- Leave plenty of space between you and the vehicle in front of you.
- **NEVER** drink or take drugs whilst driving.

Drinking or taking drugs whilst driving is dangerous and may result in a collision, causing serious injury or death.

Drunk driving is the number one contributor to the highway death toll each year. Even a small amount of alcohol can affect your reflexes, perceptions and judgment. Just one drink may reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions and emergencies and your reaction time gets worse with each additional drink.

Driving whilst under the influence of drugs is as dangerous or more dangerous than driving under the influence of alcohol.

You are much more likely to have a serious accident if you are drinking or taking drugs, never drive. Do not ride with a driver who has been drinking or taking drugs. Choose a designated driver or call a taxi.

- Make sure the bonnet, the tailgate, and the doors are securely closed and locked.
- Adjust the position of the seat and steering wheel.
- Adjust the inside and outside rearview mirrors.
- Verify all the lights work.
- Fasten your seat belt. Check that all passengers have fastened their seat belts.
- Check the gauges and indicators in the instrument panel and the messages on the cluster display when Start/Stop button is in the **POWER ON** position.
- Check that any items you are carrying are stored properly or fastened down securely.

Understanding your electric vehicle

Electric vehicles are driven using a battery and an electric motor.

Characteristics of your electric vehicle

- Electric vehicles are eco-friendly because they do not use fossil fuels for driving. Additionally, unlike petrol and diesel vehicles, noise and vibration are minimal, and the vehicle's lifespan is relatively long.
- When slowing down or driving downhill, regenerative braking is used. Regenerative braking charges the high voltage battery and minimises energy loss.
- If the high voltage battery is running low, you can charge the vehicle using the AC charger, DC charger, or portable charging cables. For more information, refer to the **Charging your electric vehicle**.

Information

Regenerative braking uses an electric motor when decelerating and braking, and it transforms kinetic energy to electrical energy in order to charge the high voltage battery.

Battery information

- **High voltage battery (high-capacity):** Drives the motor and operates the air conditioner. It can be charged via an AC charger, DC charger, or portable charger.
- **12 V battery:** Operates all lamps, wipers, and audio system. It is automatically charged when the vehicle is in the POWER ON or DRIVE READY or the high voltage battery is being charged.

Main components of your electric vehicle

- **On-Board Charger (OBC):** Charges the high voltage battery by converting the power grid's AC power to DC power.
- **Inverter:** Converts power from direct current (DC) to alternating current (AC) and supplies power to the motor, and converts power from AC to DC and charge the high voltage battery during deceleration and braking.
- **Low Voltage DC-DC Converter (LDC):** Converts the high voltage battery's power source to a low voltage (12 V) power source and supply power to the electrical devices in the vehicle.
- **Vehicle Control Unit (VCU):** Controls the various controllers and sensors on the vehicle.
- **Motor:** Uses electricity accumulated in the high voltage battery to drive the vehicle (same role as an engine in petrol and diesel vehicles).
- **Reducer:** Delivers the rotational force of the motor to the tyres at appropriate speeds and torque.
- **High voltage battery (Lithium-ion battery):** Stores and supplies power necessary for the electric vehicle to operate. (The separately installed 12 V battery provides power to the vehicle when the vehicle is in POWER ON or OFF.)



WARNING

- Do not remove or disassemble any high voltage battery's connectors and wires. Doing so may lead to accidents, such as electric shock, and result in serious injury and significantly degrade the vehicle's performance and durability.
 - When the high voltage battery or its related components require inspection and maintenance, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
-

Understanding Virtual Engine Sound System (VESS)

Electric vehicles do not use an internal combustion engine, so there is no engine noise whilst driving. The VESS generates engine sound to make pedestrians aware of the approaching vehicle when driving.

- If the vehicle is in the ready mode (READY indicator ON) and the gear is not in P (Park), the VESS is operated.
- When the gear is shifted to R (Reverse), an additional warning sound is heard.



CAUTION

- Be aware that the vehicle does not make engine noise whilst driving.
 - Pay attention to the surrounding environment and drive carefully.
 - After parking or waiting for a traffic light, please check around for children, or other obstacles before departure.
 - When reversing, check directly behind you before driving. Pedestrians may not be able to recognise vehicle sounds.
-

Precautions when using the high voltage battery



CAUTION

- Keep the gauge of the high voltage battery from going below than 20 %. Storing the vehicle whilst the battery level is low for a long time may damage the battery or reduce the battery's capacity, potentially causing the need for a battery replacement.
 - Storing the vehicle in temperatures that are too hot or cold may degrade the battery performance.
 - If a collision occurs and the vehicle is impacted, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products to check the battery connection status.
 - Using the V2L function may reduce the driving distance due to the use of the high voltage battery energy, and repeated use of the V2L function may cause a decrease in the life of the high voltage battery.
 - Repeated use of a DC charger may cause a decrease in the life of the high voltage battery.
 - The high voltage battery level may reduce naturally even if the vehicle is not driven.
 - If you use the air conditioning or heating, which is powered by the high voltage battery, the distance to empty may decrease. Maintain proper temperature when using the air conditioning or heating.
 - Depending on the vehicle's period of use, natural degradation of the battery may occur, so the distance to empty may decrease. When the charge capacity and distance to empty keep failing, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
 - If you do not use the vehicle for a long time, charge the vehicle at least once every 3 months to prevent the battery from fully discharging. When the battery level has lower power, immediately charge the vehicle.
 - To keep the battery in optimal condition, use AC charging. Fully charging the battery when it is 20 % or lower helps to keep the battery in optimal condition. (Charging once a month or more is recommended.)
 - The charging level value displayed on the instrument cluster may decrease according to the charging conditions (charger status, outside temperature, battery temperature, etc.). For longer battery life and safety, after a certain charging level is reached, the charging current is gradually lowered to fully charge the battery.
 - The distance to empty or power output may vary depending on the driving conditions, such as the outside temperature. Driving at high speeds or uphill may increase battery consumption, resulting in a shorter distance to empty.
-

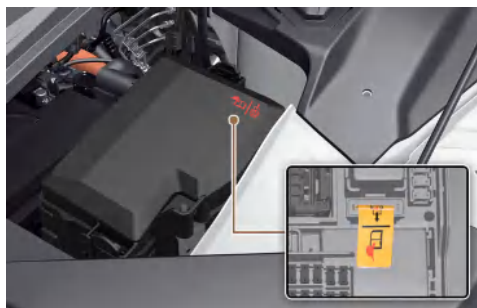
Other precautions for electric vehicle management



CAUTION

- If post repair heat treatment after repairs or painting is required after an accident, the high voltage battery's performance may be degraded. If heat treatment is required, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
 - When cleaning the motor compartment, do not use a high-pressure washer. Doing so may result in electric shock, due to a discharge in high voltage electricity, or damage the vehicle's electric system.
 - Do not install third-party parts or modified parts on the vehicle. Doing so may damage the electric power system. Only use or install genuine parts.
-

High voltage cut-off switch



High voltage cut-off switch is a device located inside the motor compartment to block the battery's high voltage when your vehicle is inspected at an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.



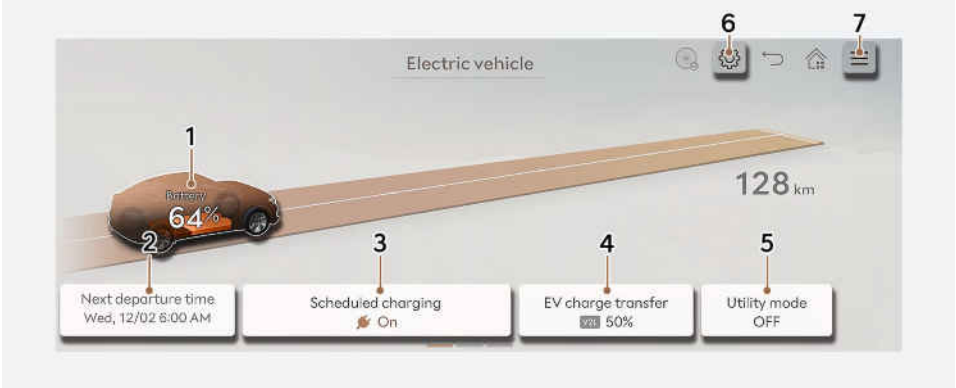
WARNING

- Never touch the high voltage cut-off switch. This could result in serious injury or death in a collision or electric shock.
 - If the high voltage cut-off switch requires an inspection or repair, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
 - Never disconnect or cut the high voltage cut-off switch except in an emergency situation. Serious problems may occur, such as the vehicle may not start.
-

Using Electric Vehicle functions

Electric vehicle provides driving information and high voltage battery information. You can set various electric vehicle functions in **Electric vehicle**.

Checking the Electric Vehicle screen configuration



On the Home screen of the infotainment system, select **Electric vehicle**.

No.	Name	Description
1	Energy information	You can check the energy consumption and energy economy history.
2	Next departure time	You can set a scheduled departure time by which charging is complete and the cabin temperature is preconditioned.
3	Scheduled charging	You can set the date and time of when to charge the battery and the climate control temperature.
4	EV charge transfer (V2L)	You can set the battery discharging limit (%) for the high voltage battery for driving. For more information, refer to the Setting a battery discharging limit when using Vehicle to Load (V2L) .
5	Utility mode	You can use devices inside the system with the use of a high voltage battery.
6	 (Menu)	You can check the energy information, charging station and online manual.
7		You can set various electric vehicle specialized functions. • Maximum % Charge

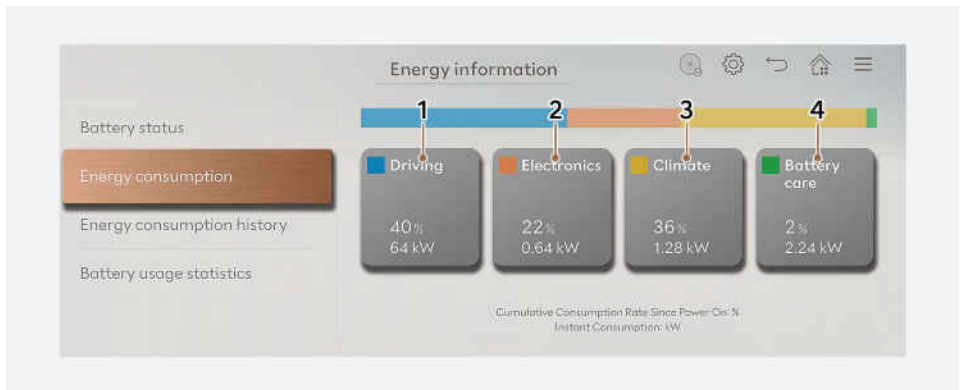
No.	Name	Description
	(EV settings)	• Charging current • Battery conditioning mode • Utility mode etc. For more information, refer to the Setting electric vehicle specialized functions.

Checking energy information

You can check the energy consumption and energy economy history. On the Home screen of the infotainment system, select **Electric vehicle**.

- Check the energy information.

Checking the energy consumption



On the infotainment system, select **Energy consumption**.

- You can check the current energy consumption for each vehicle system.

No.	Name	Description
1	Driving	Shows the percentage of instantaneous and regenerative energy consumed by the motor to drive the vehicle and the percentage of the power driving system used in total power used since starting the vehicle.
2	Electronics	Shows the power and energy consumption used by the vehicle system, including the instrument cluster, infotainment system (speaker and navigation), headlight, vehicle control unit, etc., and the percentage of the power vehicle system used in total power used since starting the vehicle.
3	Climate	Shows the power and energy consumption used by the air conditioner or heater and the percentage of the power climate system used in total power used since starting the vehicle.

No.	Name	Description
4	Battery care	Shows the momentary power and energy consumption used when increasing and cooling down the battery temperature to maintain optimal battery performance and the percentage of battery temperature control mode (Battery Care mode) used in the total power used since starting the vehicle.

Checking the energy economy history



On the infotainment screen select **Energy consumption history**.

- You can check the history of electric energy economy with the date and distance of previous driving.

Setting the next departure time

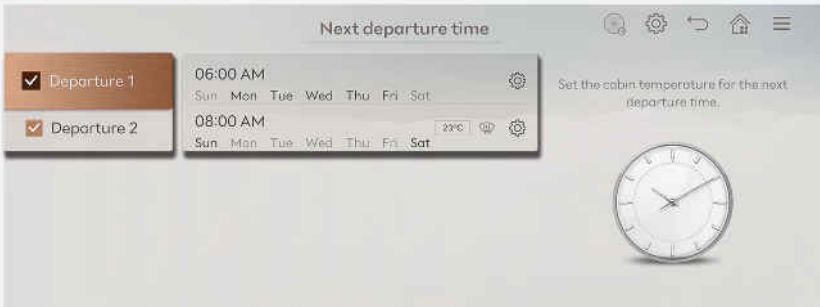
You can set an anticipated departure time for scheduled charging and target temperature.

Information

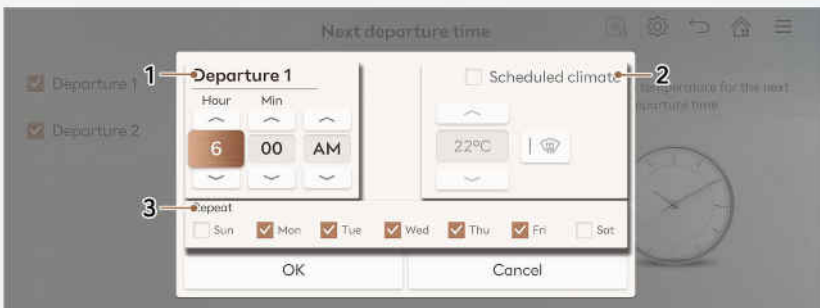
- Scheduled climate is activated based on the departure time.
- The scheduled climate function directly uses the power of the connected charger or the 12 V battery that is being recharged. It can maintain a pleasant environment and enhance vehicle performance by controlling the temperature of the vehicle.

- 1 On the Home screen of the infotainment system, select **Electric vehicle > Next departure time**.

2 Set the anticipated departure schedule.



- 3 Set anticipated time and temperature of the vehicle departure after charging.
- 4 At repeat option, select the day of the week to activate target temperature for the departure time.



- 5 Scheduled charging and climate is activated based on the departure time.
The scheduled climate operates 20 minutes before and 10 minutes after the departure.
- 1 **Departure:** Enter the time of departure.
- 2 **Scheduled climate:** Enter the desired temperature.
- 3 **Repeat:** Designate the date you want to repeat.

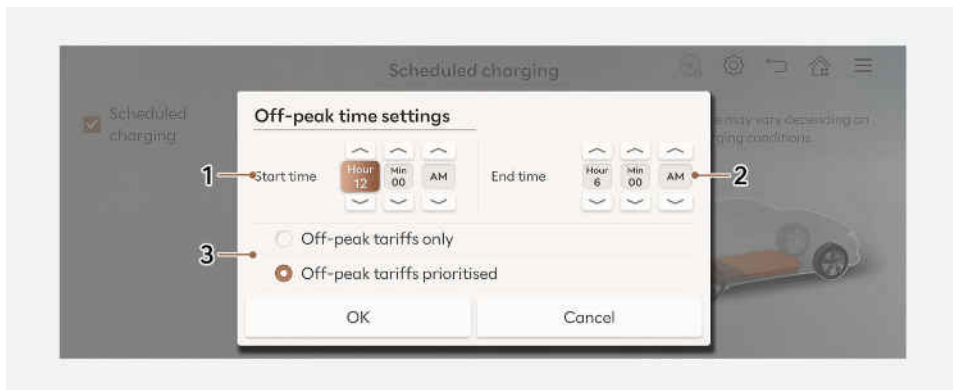
In cold weather, pre-scheduled heating helps enhance electric vehicle performance by heating the vehicle in advance.

Setting the options for the AC charger

You can set the options for the AC charger including scheduled charging and charging current.

On the Home screen of the infotainment system, select **Electric vehicle** > **Scheduled charging**.

Setting scheduled charging



Select **Scheduled charging** to turn on the function.

- 1 **Start time:** If selected, starts charging only on the designated off-peak time.
- 2 **End time:** If selected, sets the most inexpensive time to complete charging.
- 3 **Off-peak time settings option:**
 - **Off-peak tariffs only:** Charging is activated only during the off-peak time. It may not be able to reach the target battery charge level.
 - **Off-peak tariffs prioritised:** Charging is activated during the off-peak time. It may keep on charging pass off-peak time to reach the target battery charge level.

Information

For more information about setting the target battery charge level, refer to the **Setting the target battery charge level**.

Setting the charging current



Set the charging current when using an AC charger.

On the Home screen of the infotainment system, select **Electric vehicle** > ⚙️ (EV settings) > **AC charging current**.

Setting the target battery charge level

You can set the target battery charge level when charged with an AC charger or a DC charger.

- You can check the status of high voltage battery, estimated distance to empty, and the time required for charging the target battery level.

Information

- The distance to empty is estimated based on the energy economy and temperatures. It may vary according to your driving style.
 - The distance to empty may vary even with the same target level according to changes of your driving style.
-

- 1 On the Home screen of the infotainment system, select **Electric vehicle** > ⚙️ (EV settings) > **Charging limit**.
- 2 Set each of the target battery charge level for AC charger and DC charger.
 - The charging level can be changed by 10 %.
 - If the target battery charge level is lower than the current high voltage battery charge level, the battery is not charged.



Setting a battery discharging limit when using Vehicle to Load (V2L)

Setting battery discharging limit (%) can prevent the battery from discharging when operating home appliances or electronic devices using the high voltage battery.

- For more information about V2L function, refer to the **Using V2L function**.

Information

V2L is the system provides AC power using the high voltage battery for driving to operate several electronic devices. You can operate home appliances and electronic devices, or charge another electric vehicle in emergency using the charged electricity from the vehicle's battery whilst camping or doing other outdoor activities.

- 1 On the Home screen of the infotainment system, select **Electric vehicle** > **Electricity use settings (V2L)**.
- 2 Set the desired battery discharging limit (%).
 - The battery discharging limit can only be set below the current battery charge.
 - When the battery charge reaches the set battery discharging limit, V2L function cuts off automatically.



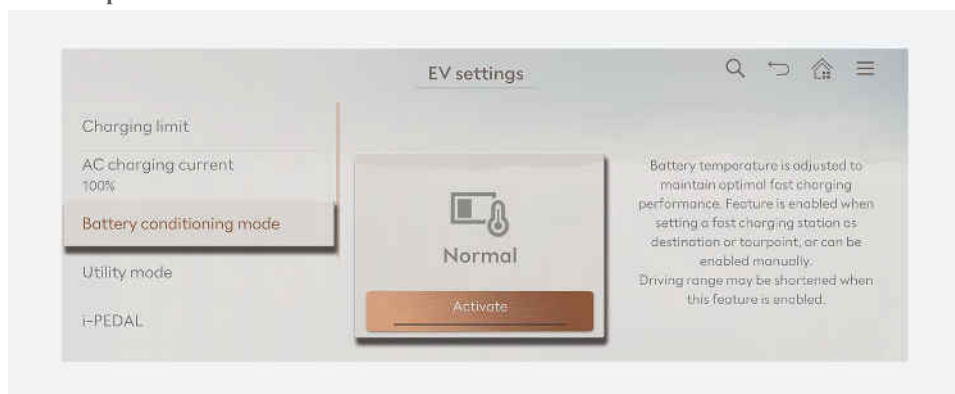
Setting electric vehicle specialized functions

You can set various EV specialized functions such as battery conditioning mode and utility mode.

Using Battery Conditioning

Battery Conditioning function maintains optimal driving performance and keeps the battery temperature ideal for DC charging to help prevent the high voltage battery from degrading. You can manually operate the Battery Conditioning function or automatically operate the function by setting a DC charging station as a destination or a waypoint.

Manual operation



On the Home screen of the infotainment system, select **Electric vehicle** > ⚙️ (EV settings) > **Battery conditioning mode** and select **Activate** to use manually.

Linked to navigation route

Linked to navigation route If you set a DC charging station as a destination or waypoint on your navigation, the Battery Conditioning function maintains the battery temperature ideal for DC charging whilst considering the arrival time. This allows drivers to perform DC charging even during hot and cold weather.

Information

- Battery Conditioning function operates only in a vehicle equipped with a battery heater.
 - Battery Conditioning function does not operate to ensure driving distance when the battery charge level is low. The function also does not operate if the temperature of the battery is ideal for driving and charging.
 - The charged power used to raise the temperature of a battery may shorten the driving distance. Reaching the optimal temperature of a battery requires time.
 - When you are a member of Genesis Connected Service, you can control the battery Conditioning function remotely whilst parking from the Genesis Connected Service app. For more information on Genesis Connected Service, refer to the separately supplied manual.
-

Setting Utility mode

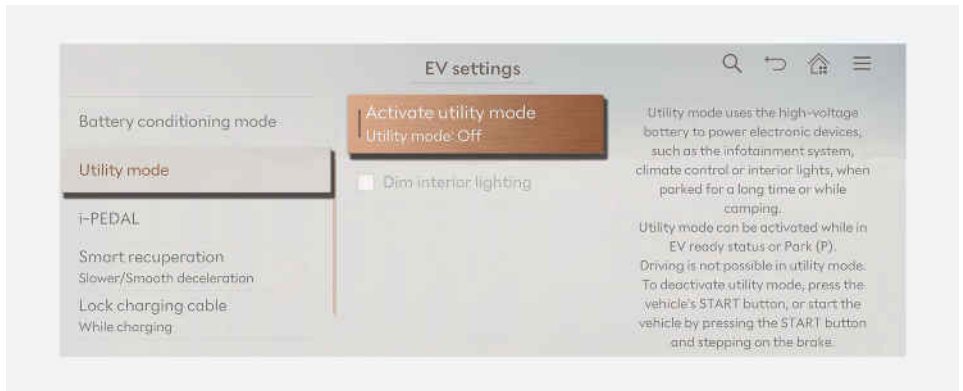
Utility mode allows the high voltage battery to be used instead of the 12 V battery for purposes other than driving.

You can use the audio and lights of the vehicle without worrying about discharging the battery and even use the indoor V2L feature.

NOTICE

- You cannot drive the vehicle whilst the utility mode is activated, and the gear can only be shifted to P (Park).
 - You can use every electric device in the vehicle whilst the utility mode is activated.
 - When the utility mode is activated, the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) is applied automatically and you can release EPB by pressing the EPB switch if necessary.
-

- 1 Check the operation conditions of the utility mode.
 - Check if the Start/Stop button is in POWER ON position.
 - Check if the **READY** indicator is displayed on the instrument cluster.
 - Check if the gear is shifted to P (Park).
- 2 On the Home screen of the infotainment system, Select **Electric vehicle** > ⚙️ (EV settings) > **Utility mode**, and then select **Activate utility mode** to activate the function (Utility mode: ON).



- The **UTIL** indicator illuminates on the instrument cluster and the EPB is applied.
- Press the Start/Stop button whilst not depressing the brake pedal to turn off the vehicle.
- Press the Start/Stop button whilst depressing the brake pedal to turn on DRIVE READY.
- Select **Electric vehicle** > ⚙️ (EV settings) > **Utility mode** in the infotainment system. Then, press '**Activate utility mode**' to turn off the function. Utility Mode will be dismissed once you press '**Yes**' after a message noticing the Utility Mode has been cancelled is displayed. Then it will set to be OFF.
- If you want to utilize the V2L feature in the vehicle whilst the utility mode is activated, refer to the **Using V2L function**.

Information

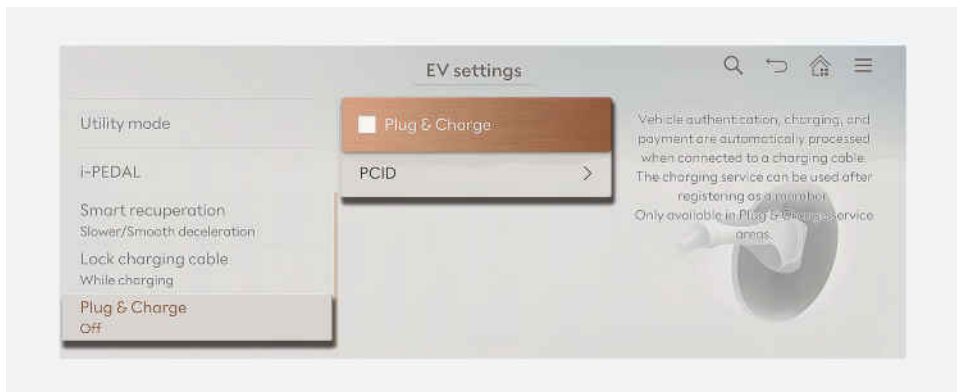
If the utility mode is not activated when the vehicle is in the ready mode (READY indicator ON) and the gear is shifted to P (Park), inspect the operation status of EPB.

Using Plug & Charge

When charging with a DC charger, you can use the Plug & Charge function to charge your electric vehicle quickly and easily.

Setting the Plug & Charge

On the Home screen of the infotainment system, select **Electric vehicle** > ⚙️ (EV settings) > **Plug & Charge**, and then select **Plug & Charge** to turn on the function.



Information

If you do not have a Plug & Charge contract, turn off the Plug & Charge. If the function is turned on, problems with the charging process may occur.

Renewing the Plug & Charge

If the Plug & Charge does not proceed or fails during the process, check the expiration and renewal status of the contract certificate.

- The Plug & Charge does not proceed if the certificate has expired.
- Turn off the Plug & Charge function and use an external payment method until you check the certificate status.
- If the Plug & Charge fails more than 2 times, the payment method is forcibly switched to an external payment method from the third attempt.

Information

To reset and enable Plug & Charge again after the payment method is forcibly switched to an external payment method, follow one of the instructions below:

- Charge once using an external payment method. Plug & Charge is available from the next charge.
 - Disconnect the charging plug, close the charging door, and wait at least 1 minute with the vehicle on.
 - Use another charger that is Plug & Charge enabled.
-

If the contract certificate for the Plug & Charge has expired or withdrawn, follow the instructions below:

- 1 Make a new contract to issue or renew the certificate.
- 2 Connect the charging plug and try Plug & Charge once.
 - The charger displays the expiration and withdrawal status of the certificate and the charging is failed.
- 3 Disconnect and reconnect the charging plug and retry charging.
 - The newly contracted certificate is installed and charging proceeds normally.

Managing the Plug & Charge contract

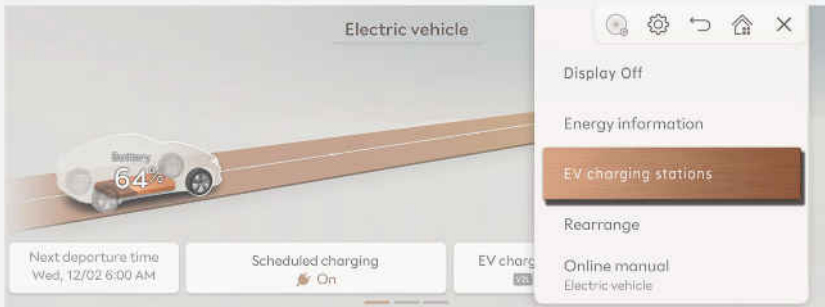
If a new agreement certificate is installed, the **Manage agreements** option becomes available. To see its details or manage it, follow the instructions below:

- 1 On the infotainment screen, move to Home screen.
- 2 On the Home screen, select **Electric vehicle** > ⚙️ (EV settings) > **Plug & Charge**, and then select **Manage agreements**.
- 3 Check the contractor information and expiration date (year/month) displayed on the screen.
 - You can delete the certificate by pressing **Delete** if necessary.

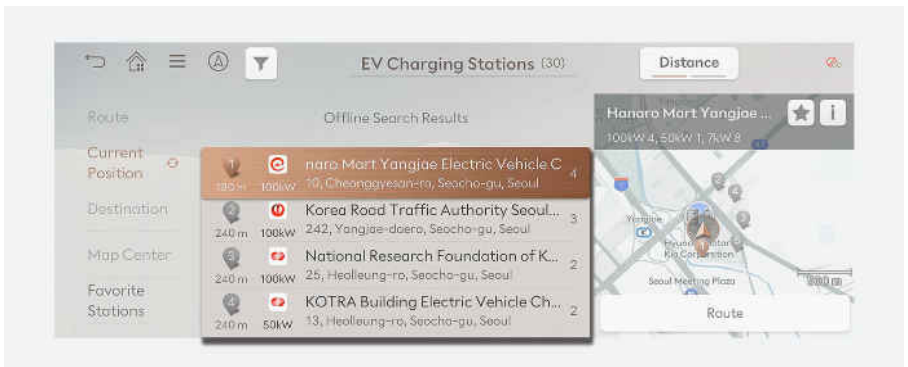
Searching for nearby charging stations

You can choose the charging station, the detailed information is provided.

- 1 On the Home screen of the infotainment system, select **Electric vehicle** > ≡ > **EV charging stations**.



- You can choose among **Route**, **Current Position**, **Destination**, and **Favorite**.
- The direction and distance, charger type, address, and location on the map of the charging stations corresponding to the selected option are displayed on the right side of the screen.



2 Select the charging station on the list and check the detailed information.

Charging your electric vehicle

Electric vehicles can be charged via an AC charger or DC charger installed at public charging stations.

- If the vehicle cannot be moved to a public charging station in the event of an emergency, you can charge the vehicle via the In-Cable Control Box (ICCB) with a power source (AC 230 V).
- To find a nearby charging station, refer to the **Searching for nearby charging stations**.

Safety precautions for charging your electric vehicle

Precautions for electric medical devices



WARNING

Electromagnetic waves that are generated from the charger can seriously impact electric medical devices, such as an implantable cardiac pacemaker. When using such devices, make sure to consult with your doctor and the manufacturer to find out whether charging your electric vehicle will impact the operation of your device.

Basic safety precautions for charging



WARNING

- Before charging, apply the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) with the brake pedal pressed, shift to P (Park) and turn off the vehicle. Movement of the vehicle whilst charging may result in property damage, serious injury, or death.
 - Use specified electric vehicle charger only. Failure to do so may damage the charger, charging cable, or vehicle. Also, it may lead to safety hazards, such as fire, explosion, etc.
 - To avoid property damage, serious injury, or death from electric shock and fire, follow the instructions below:
 - Do not touch the charging connector, charging plug, or the charging inlet when connecting the cable to the charger and the charging inlet on the vehicle.
 - Do not touch the charging connector and charging plug with wet hands, or when standing in water or snow whilst connecting the charging cable.
 - When connecting or removing the charging cable, you must hold the charging connector handle and charging plug.
 - Use a waterproof charger. Do not charge the vehicle in a place where rainwater may come into contact with the joints of the charging cable connector and the charging plug.
 - Ensure there is no water, dust, or other contaminants on the charging cable connector and the charging plug.
 - Immediately stop charging if you feel abnormal conditions, such as odor or smoke.
 - Do not charge the vehicle if there is a risk of lightning.
-

Information

- Whilst charging, the gear cannot be shifted from P (Park) to any other gear.
 - Ensure the vehicle door is unlocked before disconnecting the charging connector. The unlock button on the charging connector does not work when the vehicle door is locked.
 - To control the temperature of the high voltage battery whilst charging or when the battery temperature is high, the air conditioner is used to cool down the battery. It may generate noise or vibration from operation of the air conditioner compressor and cooling fan, but this is a normal condition when charging the high voltage battery.
 - The cooling system may be operated when using the air conditioner during charging. This may degrade the air conditioner's performance temporarily.
 - Depending on the condition and durability of the high voltage battery, charger specifications and condition, and ambient temperature, the time required for charging the battery and distance to empty may vary.
 - In rare cases, you might hear high-frequency noise (a small beeping sound) outside the car when charging with a 400 V DC charger that has deteriorated or has long communication delay. The high-frequency noise can be generated only when the vehicle tries to reduce its own electromagnetic waves to keep DC charging as stable as possible. Do not worry about this beep noise, because it is intentional and does not affect the charging performance or the vehicle itself.
-

Precautions for operating the cooling fan

WARNING



Do not put your hand near the cooling fan in the motor compartment whilst charging. It may operate automatically to control the battery temperature, even if the vehicle is turned off.

Precautions for operating the charging door

CAUTION

- Before opening the charging door, check the direction in which the door opens and ensure that there is no interference with nearby objects when opening or closing the door.
 - When opening and closing the charging door, be careful not to bump your face, head, etc., or get your hands or other body parts caught in the door.
 - If you cannot open the charging door due to freezing weather. In this case, lightly tap or remove any ice near the charging door.
 - Do not try to forcibly open the charging door. It may cause damage to the charging door or cause a malfunction.
 - Do not hold the parts that support the charging door. Damage to parts or deformation of parts may cause vehicle damage and accidents.
-

Precautions for using, handling, and storing the charging cable

Precautions when using the charging cable

CAUTION

- To prevent electric shock, replace the charging cable if the coating or the connector is damaged.
 - Do not modify or disassemble the charging cable. Doing so may result in fire, electric shock, or injury.
 - Do not pull or twist the charging cable excessively, and ensure that the cable is not twisted. Power cuts or damage to the cable's insulation sheath may result in electric shock or fire.
 - Do not drag the charging cable on the floor or place objects on it. Damage to the insulation of the cable may result in electric shock or fire.
 - Do not use the charging cable near a heat source or heating appliance.
 - Do not drop or subject the charging cable to a strong impact. Also, ensure no water or liquid comes into contact with the cable.
 - Use the charging cable only when there are no children around.
 - If there is any sign of damage, corrosion, or rust on the charging connector and plug, or if the connection of the charging connector and plug feels loose, do not use the cable. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
-

Precautions when handling and storing the charging cable



CAUTION

- Always keep the charging connector and plug dry and clean.
 - Ensure that the connectors, plugs, and control box (portable charger) of the charging cable are not submerged or in contact with water.
 - Keep the charging cable free from water or moisture, and keep it in the cargo area compartment.
 - Do not keep the charging cable near heat source or heating appliances.
 - Keep the charging cable away from children.
 - If there is dust or contaminants inside the charging connector or plug, remove it using the air gun.
 - If the charging cable is contaminated, completely disconnect the cable from the charger or power, and remove the contaminants.
 - Wipe the charging cable lightly with the soft cloth soaked with a 3 % neutral detergent aqueous solution, then use a clean cloth to completely remove moisture and dry the cable in a well-ventilated shade.
 - When removing contaminants, ensure the charging connector and charging plug are not in contact with water.
 - Do not use organic solvents, such as benzene, paint thinner, or detergent. Doing so may cause deformation, discolouration, or malfunction of charging cable.
 - When using a vehicle decontamination agent, ensure that the product does not contain organic solvents, such as benzene, paint thinner, or detergent.
-

Checking basic information on charging your electric vehicle

Before charging your vehicle, check and understand the information such as the expected charging time according to the charge type, checking the State of Charge (SOC), and setting the charger lock mode.

Checking charge types and times

The charge types for electric vehicle are as follows:

- **AC charge:** The electric vehicle is charged via an AC charger at public charging stations. An AC charger may require an AC charging cable (sold separately).
- **DC charge:** You can charge at high speeds at public charging stations. Refer to the respective company's manual that is provided for each DC charger type.
- **Portable charge:** If the vehicle cannot be moved to a public charging station due to a lack of battery power, the vehicle can be charged with household electricity, using the 230 V portable charger (sold separately).



CAUTION

- Battery performance and life may deteriorate if the DC charger is used constantly. Use of DC charging should be minimised in order to help prolong high voltage battery life. Use AC charging unless DC charging is necessary.
- The electrical outlet at home must comply with regulations and can safely accommodate the Voltage, Current (Amps), and Power (Watts) ratings specified on the portable charger. If not, the vehicle may not be charged or safety hazards, such as fire, may occur.
- If the power distributor exceeds its capacity whilst charging the vehicle with a portable charger at home, the power to home may be cut off or a fire may occur.
- If you use a portable charger to charge your electric vehicle with household electricity, you are charged on your household electricity bill.

The estimated charging time for each charging type is as follows:

Charging type		Charging time (at room temperature)	Charge level (Minimum-Maximum)	Charging condition (Temperature)
AC charge (230 V/16 A 3P)		About 7 hours and 35 minutes	10-100 %	Battery temperature (25 °C)
DC charge	350 kW	About 18 minutes	10-80 % (Can be charged to 100 %)	
	50 kW	About 73 minutes	10-80 % (Can be charged to 100 %)	
Portable charge (230 V/12 A)		About 34 hours and 40 minutes	10-100 %	

NOTICE

If the charger is worn out, exposed, or there exists any type of damage, charging may stop for your safety. Use another charger that works normally.

Information

- Depending on the condition and duration of use of the high voltage battery, charger specifications, and ambient temperature, the time required for charging the high voltage battery may vary.
- When charging the battery, an additional 3 minutes may be required to check battery condition.

Checking the charging status

Inside the charging door



Check the State of Charge (SOC) of the high voltage battery via the charge indicator light inside the charging door with the vehicle door unlocked.

- SOC is indicated in 8 levels.

Charge indicator lamp	SOC [%]
	0-12.5
	12.5-25
	25-37.5
	37.5-50
	50-62.5
	62.5-75
	75-87.5
	87.5-100

On the instrument cluster



Check the charging state on the instrument cluster to monitor the battery capacity of the high voltage and estimated charging time.

When charging starts, the charging state will be displayed on instrument cluster.

Information

- With the vehicle on, the charging state will be displayed continuously.
 - When the vehicle is off, the charging state will be displayed for up to 1 minute.
The charging state will be displayed continuously when a door is opened.
 - When scheduled charging is set, scheduled charging message is displayed.
 - When scheduled air conditioner or heater operates whilst waiting for the scheduled charging, the estimated charging time is displayed as '-'.
-
-

Checking information on the charging label





Open the charging door and check the information on the charging label. The charging label shows safety symbols and the rated input specifications for charging.

No.	Name	Description
1	Warning for high voltage	Indicates a device with a risk of electric shock.
2	Warning/Caution symbol	Indicates a device that may cause property damage, serious injury or death if not operated carefully.
3	Rated voltage and maximum charging current	Indicates the type of input current (AC) and the rated voltage range (V) and charging current (A) when AC charging.

Setting charging connector locking mode

You can lock the charging connector during AC charging to prevent unintended detachment of the charging connector from the vehicle.

On the Home screen of the infotainment system, select **Electric vehicle** > ⚙️ (EV settings) > **Lock charging cable** to set the locking mode of the charging connector.

- **Always:** Locks the connector automatically whenever the charging connector is plugged into the charging inlet.
- **While charging:** Locks the connector automatically only whilst charging is in progress after the charging connector is properly connected to the vehicle.
- **Do not lock:** The connector unlocks regardless of the state of charging.

Information

The connector is automatically locked during DC charging or whilst using the V2L function, regardless of the settings of charging connector locking mode applied to the vehicle.

- When DC charging is complete, the charging connector is unlocked automatically.
 - After using electricity, you can unlock the charging connector by pressing the switch on the V2L connector to turn off the power and unlock the vehicle door.
-

Disconnecting the charging connector in an emergency



If the unlock button is not functioning properly due to a discharged battery or abnormal electrical wiring, the charging connector cannot be disconnected from the vehicle.

If the charging connector does not disconnect due to battery being fully discharged or a wiring failure, open the tailgate and pull the emergency cable on the tailgate's right wall. If the charging connector does not disconnect after pulling the emergency cable, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.



CAUTION

Do not disconnect the charging connector forcibly. Doing so may damage the charging connector or the charging inlet on the vehicle.

Electric charging door

Opening the electric charging door



1. Charging door open indicator
2. Charging door closing button



- 1 Depress the brake pedal and apply the parking brake.
- 2 Shift to P (Park), and turn the vehicle off.
- 3 [Outside] With the vehicle door unlocked, press the open indicator to open the charging door.
[Smart key] Press the charging door open/close button on the smart key.
- 4 Open the charging inlet cover and charge the vehicle.

NOTICE

Do not pry on the charging door or use unauthorised tools to open the charging door.

Closing the electric charging door

- 1 Close the charging inlet cover properly.
- 2 [Outside] Close the charging door, press lightly to position it, and make sure it is securely closed.

[Smart key] Press the charging door open/close button on the smart key.

For more information, refer to the **Charging your electric vehicle**.

NOTICE

- If the charging door does not open or close because ice has formed around it, tap lightly or push on the door to break the ice and release the door.
 - Make sure that the charging door is closed before driving the vehicle. If the charging door is opened, mechanical parts of the charging door can be damaged.
 - After closing the charging door, be sure to check the warning light is off.
 - After charging the vehicle, close the charging inlet properly. If not, the charging inlet and the charging door can be damaged.
 - Whilst washing the vehicle, do not spray high pressure water to the charging door directly. The high pressure can damage the charging door.
 - Do not hold the hinge. It may damage the charging door.
-

Information

- The charging door automatically closes when:
 - The charging connector is disconnected
 - The door is opened and the charging connector is not connected for a certain period of time
 - The gear is not in P (Park)
 - After replacing the 12 V battery, turn the vehicle on and off once to ensure that the charging door operates properly.
-

Using an AC charger

Charge your electric vehicle using an AC charging cable installed in public charging stations or separately purchased AC charging cable.

- To find a nearby charging station, refer to the **Searching for nearby charging stations**.



WARNING

Before charging the vehicle, carefully read and follow the instructions in **Safety precautions for charging your electric vehicle** to prevent property damage or injury due to electric shock, fire, explosion, etc.



CAUTION

To prevent property damage or injury due to fire or explosion, follow the instructions below.

- Only use the genuine AC charging cable provided by the manufacturer (if equipped).
 - Do not use an extension cable.
 - Check the rated voltage and maximum charging current required for charging, and ensure that the charger power you are using meets the requirements.
 - Immediately stop charging if you discover abnormal conditions, such as odor or smoke.
-

Understanding the AC charging cable



1. Charging connector (Vehicle side)
2. Charging plug (Charger side)

Charging with an AC charger

- 1 With the vehicle started, apply the parking brake whilst depressing the brake pedal.
- 2 Turn all switches off, shift to P (Park), and turn off the vehicle.
- 3 With the vehicle door unlocked, press the open indicator on the charging door to open the charging door.
- 4 Open the charging inlet cover and check the charging connector and charging inlet for dust or other contaminants
 - If there is any dirt or contaminants, remove it using the air gun.



WARNING

Do not touch the charging connector of the charging cable or the charging inlet on the vehicle.

- 5 Remove the charging connector protection cap of the AC charging cable, hold the charging connector handle, and connect it to the AC charging inlet on the vehicle. Push it until you hear a click.
- 6 **[If using separately purchased charging cable]** Remove the charging plug protection cap of the AC charging cable, hold the charging plug handle, and connect it to the electric outlet (230 V) of the AC charger.
 - This process is required only when using a separately purchased AC charging cable. If you use a charging cable installed in an AC charger, a separate charging plug connection is not required.
 - When charging starts, the estimated charging time appears on the instrument cluster for about one minute.

Information

- If you open the driver's door whilst charging, the estimated charging time also appears on the instrument cluster for about one minute.
- When scheduled charging is set, '**Waiting to charge at scheduled time**' appears.
- When scheduled air conditioner or heater operates whilst waiting for the scheduled charging, the estimated charging time appears as '-'.

- 7 **[If using a separately purchased charging cable]** When charging is complete, hold the charging plug handle, disconnect the charging plug from the electric outlet (230 V) of the AC charger, and close the protection cap of the charging plug.
- This process is required only when using an AC charging cable purchased separately. If you use a charging cable installed in an AC charger, a separate charging plug disconnection is not required.
- 8 Hold the charging connector handle, and pull the charging connector to disconnect it from the charging inlet.



CAUTION

Do not forcibly disconnect the charging connector without pressing the unlock button on the charging connector. It may damage the charging connector or the charging inlet on the vehicle.

- 9 Close the charging inlet cover.
- 10 Press the charging door to completely close it.

Information

- If the charging connector locking mode is set to **Always** or **While charging**, unlock the door by pressing the button on the smart key or the button on the driver's door, and disconnect the charging connector from the charging inlet.
 - For more information, refer to the **Setting charging connector locking mode**.
- During AC charging, the quality of radio reception may degrade in some areas.

Using a DC charger

If you need to charge the vehicle in a short time, you can charge at high speeds using a DC charger installed in public charging stations.

- To find a nearby charging station, refer to the **Searching for nearby charging stations**.



WARNING

Before charging the vehicle, carefully read and follow the instructions in **Setting charging connector locking mode** to prevent property damage or injury due to electric shock, fire, explosion, etc.

CAUTION

Battery performance and life may deteriorate if the DC charger is used constantly. Use of DC charging should be minimised in order to help prolong high voltage battery life. Use AC charging unless DC charging is necessary.

Understanding the DC charging connector

Type A



Type B



Charging with a DC charger

- 1 With the vehicle started, apply the parking brake whilst depressing the brake pedal.
- 2 Turn all switches off, shift to P (Park), and turn off the vehicle.
- 3 With the vehicle door unlocked, press the open indicator on the charging door to open the charging door.
- 4 Open the charging inlet cover and check the charging connector and charging inlet for dust or other contaminants.
 - If there is any dirt or contaminants, remove it using the air gun.

WARNING

Do not touch the charging connector of the charging cable or the charging inlet on the vehicle.

- 5 Remove the charging connector protection cap of the DC charging cable, hold the charging connector handle, and connect it to the DC charging inlet on the vehicle. Push it until you hear a click.
 - When charging starts, the estimated charging time appears on the instrument cluster for about one minute.

Information

If you open the driver's door whilst charging, the estimated charging time also appears on the instrument cluster for about one minute.

- 6 When charging is complete, hold the charging connector handle and pull out the charging connector to disconnect it from the charging inlet.
 - Depending on the DC charger types, some DC chargers may not have a charger connector unlock button.



CAUTION

Before disconnecting the charging connector, check if there is an unlock button on the connector handle. If the connector handle is equipped with an unlock button, forcibly disconnecting the connector without pressing the button may damage the charging connector or charging inlet on the vehicle.

Information

For more information, refer to the **Setting charging connector locking mode**.

- 7 Close the charging inlet cover.
- 8 Press the charging door to completely close it.

Information

During DC charging, the quality of radio reception may degrade in some areas.

Using a portable charger (ICCB)

If the vehicle cannot be moved to a public charging station, you can charge the vehicle using a separately purchased In-Cable Control Box (ICCB) in places where general power (AC 230 V) is supplied.



WARNING

Before charging the vehicle, carefully read and follow the instructions in '**Setting charging connector locking mode**' to prevent property damage or injury due to electric shock, fire, explosion, etc.



CAUTION

To prevent property damage or injury due to fire or explosion, follow the instructions below.

- Only use a genuine Genesis portable charger (if equipped).
- Do not let children operate or touch the portable charger. Doing so may lead to unexpected accidents.
- Do not use an extension cable.
- The charger power you are using must comply with regulations and safely accommodate the voltage, current (amps), and power (watts) ratings. If not, the vehicle may not be charged or safety hazards, such as fire, may occur.
- If the power distributor exceeds its capacity whilst charging the vehicle with a portable charger at home, the power to the home may be cut off or a fire may occur.
- Immediately stop charging if you discover abnormal conditions, such as odor or smoke.
- If you charge the vehicle with household electricity, you are charged electricity bill according to the home rate system, not the electric vehicle rate system.

Understanding portable chargers



1. Control box
2. Power plug
3. Charging connector

Icon	Name	Colour	Description
	POWER	Green	Turns on when the power is on.
	CHARGE	Blue	Turns on whilst charging and blinks when current is limited (Forcibly switched to 6 A).
	FAULT	Red	Blinks when a leakage current, communication error, or overcurrent error occurs, or when the high-

Icon	Name	Colour	Description
			temperature protection inside the plug and charger is activated.
	CHARGE LEVEL	-	Displays the present charging current setting (6 A, 8 A, 10 A, or 12 A).

- If an error occurs, you can reset the portable charger by disconnecting and reconnecting the power plug, and then pressing the button on the control box for more than 2 seconds.
- If the same symptom repeats after resetting the portable charger, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- If there is no status change for more than 1 minute, the portable charger is switched to power saving mode, and the display light is turned off.

Charging with a portable charger

- 1 Connect the power plug of the portable charger to the electrical outlet at your home.
 - The power indicator light on the control box turns green.
- 2 Set the charging current by pressing the button on the control box for more than 2 seconds until the number on the charging current indicator blinks.

NOTICE

An example of a portable charger charging current setting suitable for the rated current of the power supplied is as follows. However, the appropriate charging current may vary depending on the environment, such as the power usage inside the building.

Outlet current	ICCB charge level
14-16 A	12 A
12-13 A	10 A
10-11 A	8 A
8-9 A	6 A

- The charging current is changed each time the button is pressed, in the order of '6 A - 8 A - 10 A - 12 A'.
- If 10 seconds have passed without pressing any button, the blinking stops and the charging current setting is finished.

- 3 With the vehicle on, apply the parking brake whilst depressing the brake pedal.
- 4 Turn all switches off, shift to P (Park), and turn off the vehicle.
- 5 With the vehicle door unlocked, press the open indicator on the charging door to open the charging door.

- 6 Open the charging inlet cover and check the charging connector and charging inlet for dust or other contaminants.
 - If there is any dirt or contaminants, remove it using the air gun.



WARNING

- Do not touch the charging connector of the charging cable or the charging inlet of the vehicle.
 - When connecting the ICCB charging plug to an outlet, ensure you connect it to a grounded outlet. If the outlet does not have a grounding terminal, have a qualified technician install a grounding terminal and then connect the plug.
-

- 7 Remove the charging connector protection cap of the portable charging cable, hold the charging connector handle, and connect it to the charging inlet of the vehicle. Push it until you hear a click.
 - When charging starts, the estimated charging time appears on the instrument cluster for about one minute.

Information

- If you open the driver's door whilst charging, the estimated charging time also appears on the instrument cluster for about one minute.
- When scheduled charging is set, '**Waiting to charge at scheduled time**' appears.
- When scheduled air conditioner or heater operates whilst waiting for the scheduled charging, the estimated charging time appears as '-'.

- 8 When charging is complete, hold the charging connector handle with the unlock button pressed and pull on the charging connector to disconnect it from the charging inlet.

Information

If you have set the charging connector locking mode as **Always** or **While charging**, unlock the door by pressing the button on the smart key or the button on the driver's door, and disconnect the charging connector from the charging inlet.

- For more information, refer to the **Setting charging connector locking mode**.
-

- 9 Close the charging inlet cover.
- 10 Press the charging door to completely close it.

Information

During portable charging, the quality of radio reception may degrade in some areas.

Using the scheduled charging function

The scheduled charging function allows you to charge your vehicle using low-cost, late-night power until the next departure time.

On the Home screen of the infotainment system, select **Electric vehicle** > **Scheduled charging**.

- For more information, refer to the **Setting the options for the AC charger**.
- When scheduled charging is set and the AC charger or the portable charger (ICCB) is connected for charging, the indicator lamp gradually illuminates for 3 minutes to indicate that scheduled charging is set.
- When scheduled charging is set, charging is not started immediately when the AC charger or portable charger (ICCB) is connected. To charge the vehicle immediately, press the charging door open button in the smart key for more than 2 seconds or select **Electric vehicle > Scheduled charging** on the screen and deactivate the scheduled charge setting.

Information

- You can use the scheduled charging function only when using an AC charger or the portable charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box). For more information about connecting an AC charger and portable charger, refer to the **Using an AC charger** and **Using a portable charger (ICCB)**.
 - You can set up or cancel scheduled charging using the Genesis Connected Service app on your smartphone. For more information, refer to the infotainment system manual.
 - Charging may start immediately after a charger is connected to the vehicle, depending on the charging time calculated when setting up the scheduled charging.
-

Stopping charging immediately

- 1 Press the door lock or unlock button of the vehicle.
- 2 Within 15 seconds press the charging door open button in the smart key for more than 2 seconds.

Checklist when charging does not start

- Check the scheduled charging setting. If the scheduled charging is set, charging is not started after connecting an AC charger or portable charger to the vehicle until the setting conditions are met.
- Check the operation status of the charger. Actual method for indicating the operation status may vary in accordance with the charger manufacturer.
- If a warning sign related to charging appears on the instrument cluster, check its message.
- If the charging connector and charging inlet are not connected properly, the connector may droop or vibrate. In this case, hold the charging connector handle and push it all the way in.
- Check the charging status by connecting another charger that has been approved for proper operation.
 - If the vehicle is charged normally using another charger, contact the charger manufacturer for a solution.
 - If the vehicle is not charged even when using another charger, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Start/Stop button



Whenever the front door is opened, the Start/Stop button illuminates and goes off a few seconds after the door is closed.



WARNING

- To turn off the vehicle in an emergency:

Press and hold the Start/Stop button for more than 2 seconds. Or rapidly press and release the Start/Stop button 3 times (within 3 seconds).

If the vehicle is still moving, you can restart the vehicle without depressing the brake pedal by pressing the Start/Stop button with the gear in the N (Neutral) position.

- Never press the Start/Stop button whilst the vehicle is in motion except in an emergency. This may result in the vehicle turning off and loss of power assist for the steering and brake systems. This may cause loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause a collision.
 - Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the gear is in the P (Park) position, apply the parking brake, press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position, and take the Smart Key with you. Unexpected vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not followed.
 - Never reach through the steering wheel for the Start/Stop button or any other control whilst the vehicle is moving. The presence of your hand or arm in this area may cause a loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.
-

Start/Stop button positions

Button Position	Action	Notes
OFF	To turn off the vehicle, press the Start/Stop button with gear in P (Park). If the Start/Stop button is pressed with the vehicle shifted to D (Drive), R (Reverse), or N (Neutral), the gear automatically shifts to P (Park). The steering wheel locks to protect the vehicle from theft. (if equipped)	If the steering wheel is not locked properly when you open the driver's door, the warning chime sounds.
POWER ON	Press the Start/Stop button whilst it is in the OFF position without depressing the brake pedal. The warning lights can be checked before the vehicle is started.	• In 14 minutes after POWER ON, the infotainment system screen shows the message. To continue to use the vehicle power, press 'Start utility mode'. • If POWER ON is maintained for 15 minutes without converting to the utility mode, the power is turned OFF.
DRIVE READY	To start the vehicle, depress the brake pedal and press the Start/Stop button with the gear in the P (Park) position.	If you press the Start/Stop button without depressing the brake pedal, the vehicle does not start and the Start/Stop button changes as follows: OFF > POWER ON > OFF

Information

To prevent vehicle battery discharge, the Start/Stop button changes to the OFF position when the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position with the gear in P (Park) for a certain period of time. When the function operates, the tail lights will turn off. To use the tail lights again, turn the headlights switch located on the steering column to the OFF and ON position again.

Starting the vehicle

- 1 Carry the smart key or leave it inside the vehicle.
- 2 Make sure the gear is in P (Park). Press the Start/Stop button whilst depressing the brake pedal.
 - If the **READY** indicator does not illuminate, start the vehicle again.
- 3 Depress and hold the brake pedal and shift to the desired position.
- 4 Release the parking brake and slowly release the brake pedal. Check if the vehicle slowly moves forward, then depress the accelerator pedal.

WARNING

- Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes such as high heels, ski boots, sandals, and flip-flops may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedals. Do not drive barefoot.
 - Do not start your vehicle with the accelerator pedal depressed. Place your foot firmly on the brake pedal whilst starting your vehicle.
-

CAUTION

- Always fasten the seat belt before starting the vehicle for safety.
 - Check if the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) is applied before starting the vehicle.
-

NOTICE

- The vehicle enters the ready mode (**READY** indicator on) if you get in the vehicle with a smart key or digital key (UWB-supported smartphone) whilst scheduled climate or remote climate control is operating.

The vehicle also enters the ready mode if you get in the vehicle and place the NFC digital key on the vehicle authentication pad (wireless charging pad), and then close the door or depress the brake pedal.

If a smart key or digital key is not detected in the vehicle after the door is closed or the brake pedal is depressed, a warning message appears.

When the vehicle is in the ready mode, be careful as the vehicle may move when shifting the gear from P (Park) to another gear position.

To prevent damage to the vehicle:

- Do not press the Start/Stop button for more than 10 seconds except when the stop light fuse is blown.

When the stop light fuse is blown, replace the fuse, start the vehicle by pressing and holding the Start/Stop button for 10 seconds with the Start/Stop button in the OFF position.

- Pressing the brake pedal many times whilst **READY** indicator light is off will increase the possibility of discharging the 12 V battery.

For your safety always depress the brake pedal before starting the vehicle.

- If the **READY** indicator turns off whilst you are in motion, do not attempt to shift the gear to the P (Park) position.

If traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the gear in N (Neutral) whilst the vehicle is still moving and press the Start/Stop button in an attempt to restart the vehicle.

- Do not push or tow your vehicle to start the vehicle.
-

Information

- The vehicle starts by pressing the Start/Stop button, only when the smart key is in the vehicle.
 - The vehicle may not start even if the smart key is in the vehicle but it is not near you (for example, in the cargo area).
 - When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position, if any door is open, the system checks for the smart key. When the smart key is not in the vehicle, the  indicator blinks and the warning '**Key not in vehicle**' appears. When all doors are closed, the chime sounds for a few seconds. Keep the smart key in the vehicle when in the POWER ON position or if the vehicle is in the ready mode (READY indicator ON).
 - Always start the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal. Do not depress the accelerator whilst starting the vehicle. Do not race the motor whilst warming it up.
 - If ambient temperature is low, the () indicator may remain illuminated longer than the normal amount of time.
-

If the smart key battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly



Press the Start/Stop button with the smart key to start the vehicle.

Stopping the vehicle

- 1 Hold down the brake pedal and shift the gear to P (Park).
- 2 Apply the parking brake.
- 3 Press the Start/Stop button and turn off the vehicle whilst depressing the brake pedal.
- 4 Make sure the READY indicator is off in the instrument cluster.

CAUTION

If the READY indicator on the instrument cluster is still on, the vehicle is not turned off and can move when the gear is in any position except P (Park).

Information

Take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.

Remotely starting the vehicle



- 1 Press the door lock  button within 32 ft. (10 m) from the vehicle.
 - 2 Press and hold the remote start  button for over 2 seconds within 4 seconds.
- To turn off the vehicle, press the remote start  button once.

Information

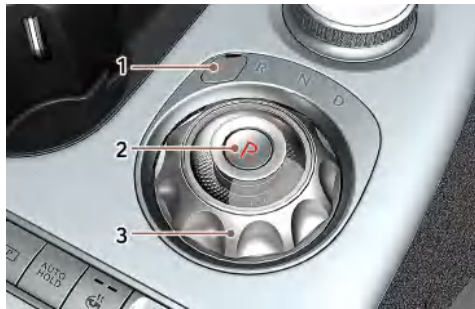
- The vehicle does not remotely start if the bonnet or tailgate is open.
 - The vehicle must be in P (Park).
 - The vehicle turns off if you get in the vehicle without a registered smart key or you do not get in the vehicle within 10 minutes.
-

Gear shifting

Crystal sphere



Shift dial mode



1. P release cap cover
2. P button
3. Rotary shifter (Rotary gear shift dial)

Gear shift operation

Crystal sphere is a shift lever that can be shifted to shift dial mode only whilst the **READY** indicator light is on in the instrument cluster. If the vehicle is not in a drivable state, maintain the crystal sphere. Depress the brake pedal whenever rotating the shift dial to change gear or shifting P (Park).



WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting a vehicle into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).
- Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the vehicle is shifted to the P (Park) position, then apply the parking brake, then press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed.

Rotary shifter/Rotary gear shift dial

P (Park)



Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park).

To shift the gear to P (Park), press the P button whilst depressing the brake pedal.



WARNING

- Shifting into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is moving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle.
- When parking on an incline, shift the gear to P (Park), apply the parking brake, and turn the wheels toward the kerb to prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill.
- Do not use the P (Park) position instead of the parking brake.

Automatic gear shift to P (Park)

The gear is shifted to P (Park) automatically for safety reasons under the following conditions:

- When the vehicle is turned off with the gear in R (Reverse), D (Drive) or N (Neutral).
- When the driver's door is open with the vehicle running, the gear in R (Reverse), D (Drive) or N (Neutral) and the vehicle at a standstill.
- When the driver's door is open with the gear in N (Neutral) and the vehicle is off.



CAUTION

In situations the gear must be in P (Park), always check if the gear is shifted to P (Park) by checking the instrument cluster.

Parking

Always come to a complete stop and continue to depress the brake pedal. Shift the gear to P (Park), apply the EPB, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Take the key with you when leaving the vehicle.

R (Reverse)



Use this position to drive the vehicle rearward.

To shift the gear to R (Reverse), rotate the rotary gear shift dial to R (Reverse) whilst depressing the brake pedal.

The direction of the rotary gear shift dial is the same as that of the wheel.

NOTICE

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse) to prevent damaging the reducer.

N (Neutral)



To shift the gear to N (Neutral), rotate the rotary gear shift dial to N (Neutral) whilst depressing the brake pedal.

Always depress the brake pedal when you are shifting from N (Neutral) to another gear.

D (Drive)



To shift the gear to D (Drive), rotate the rotary gear shift dial to D (Drive) whilst depressing the brake pedal.

The PE system (Power Electric system) automatically activates the regenerative braking system according to the road conditions.



CAUTION

When you start after stopping on a steep incline, even if the gear is in D (Drive), if you do not depress the accelerator or brake pedal, the vehicle may roll backwards, which can cause an accident.

NOTICE

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive) to prevent reducer damage.

Information

PE system refers to motor + inverter + reducer.

Shift-lock system

For your safety, your vehicle has a shift-lock system which prevents shifting the gear from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse) or D (Drive) unless the brake pedal is depressed.

With the vehicle on, shift from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse) or D (Drive) whilst depressing the brake pedal.

NOTICE

The gear cannot be shifted whilst the charging cable is connected.

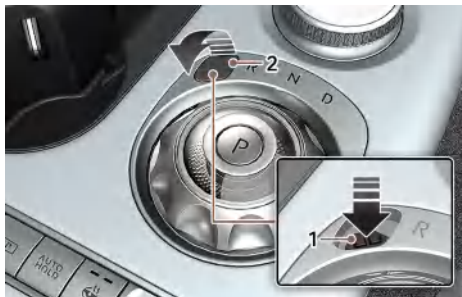
When the battery (12 V) is discharged

You cannot shift the gears when the battery is discharged.

In an emergency:

- 1 Connect the jumper cables from another vehicle or from another battery following the **Jump Starting (12 V Battery)**.
- 2 Depress the brake pedal and release the parking brake in the POWER ON position.

- 3 Remove the P release cap cover and press and hold the button whilst depressing the brake pedal.



1. Button
 2. P release cap cover
- The gear changes to the N (Neutral) position.

Information

In situations when the gear needs to be shifted from P (Park) to N (Neutral) when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position, refer to step 3.

Rotate the shift dial manually in case of emergency

CAUTION

- The manual mode switching function must be used only in an emergency. Use under normal circumstances may cause malfunction.
 - When switching to manual mode, be sure to pull towards the rear of the vehicle. Forcibly pushing in the forward direction may damage the part.
 - If normal mode conversion is continuously impossible, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products for inspection and maintenance.
-



If the READY indicator is on and it cannot rotate normally in shift dial mode, try restarting the vehicle by pressing the start/stop button. If the same phenomenon repeats after

restarting, pull the upper surface of the crystal sphere strongly toward the rear of the vehicle with your palm and rotate it until the shift dial is fully visible. At this time, you may hear a normal "click" sound, which releases the restraint of the instrument.

Cluster display messages

Press brake pedal to change gear

This message is displayed when the brake pedal is not depressed whilst shifting the gear. Depress the brake pedal and then shift the gear.

Shift to P after stopping

This message is displayed when the gear is shifted to P (Park) whilst the vehicle is moving. Stop the vehicle before shifting to P (Park).

This gear is already selected

This message is displayed when the currently selected shift gear is selected again.

This message is displayed when the shift gear does not properly operate in the P (Park) position.

We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Check P button

This message is displayed when there is a problem with the P (Park) button.

If this message is displayed when the button is not pressed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Rotary gear shift dial blocked. Remove obstructions

This message is displayed when motion is not possible due to obstacles around the shift dial. We recommend that you have to clean obstruction around the shift dial.

Operate rotary gear shift dial manually

This message is displayed when the driver tries to manually rotate the shift dial in case of a malfunction of the shift dial. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Shifting system error

This message is displayed when there is a malfunction with the rotary gear shift dial.

We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Check rotary gear shift dial

This message is displayed when there is a malfunction with the rotary gear shift dial.

We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Rotary gear shift dial stuck

This message is displayed when the rotary gear shift dial does not return back to it's normal position after rotating it.

We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

PARK button error! Engage parking brake when parking vehicle

This message is displayed when the P (Park) button does not operate properly.

We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Good driving practices

- Never shift the gear from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never shift the gear into P (Park) when the vehicle is moving.
Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Do not shift the gear to N (Neutral) when driving. If the gear is shifted to N (Neutral) whilst driving. Doing so may increase the risk of an accident.
Also, shift the gear back to D (Drive) whilst the vehicle is moving may severely damage the reducer.
- When driving uphill or downhill, always shift to D (Drive) for driving forward or shift to R (Reverse) for driving rearwards. After selecting D (Drive) or R (Reverse), check the gear position indicated on the instrument cluster before driving. If the vehicle moves in the opposite direction of the selected gear, the vehicle may turn off and a serious accident might occur due to degraded brake performance.
- Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light, but consistent pedal pressure can result in the brakes overheating, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.
- Always apply the parking brake when leaving the vehicle. Do not depend on placing the shift gear in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator.



WARNING

To reduce the risk of **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH**:

- **ALWAYS** wear your seat belt. In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.
 - Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.
 - Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.
 - The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.
 - Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over steers to reenter the roadway.
 - In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.
 - Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends you to follow all posted speed limits.
-

Regenerative braking system (paddle shifter)

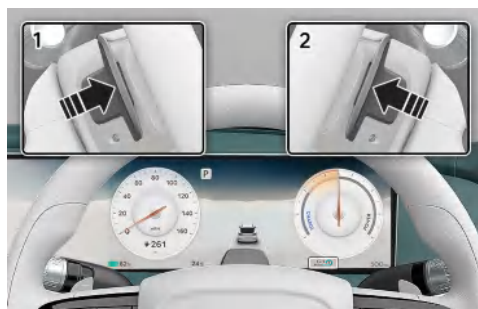
Regenerative braking system operates the paddle shifter to control the regenerative braking intensity of the vehicle. It improves the energy efficiency of the vehicle and helps the driver to have a better driving experience.

Information

The regenerative braking system uses the electric motor to engage the brake. The electric motor converts the kinetic energy generated from decelerating the vehicle to electricity and charges the high voltage battery.

Using regenerative braking system

Operating paddle shifter



1. Left paddle shift (+)
2. Right paddle shift (-)

Left paddle shift (+)

- Pull the left paddle shift (+) once to raise the regenerative braking intensity level by 1. It increases decelerating intensity.
- If you pull and hold it for more than 1 second, it will remain in full regenerative braking power until the vehicle stops. However, it does not operate when you reverse the vehicle (Cancelled when operating the accelerator pedal).

Right paddle shift (-)

- Pull the right paddle shift (-) once to lower the regenerative braking intensity level by 1. It decreases decelerating intensity.
- Pull and hold it for more than 1 second to turn on or off the smart regenerative system. However, it does not operate when you reverse the vehicle.

Checking the regenerative braking level



The selected regenerative braking level appears on the instrument cluster. When the vehicle is turned off and on again after the regenerative braking level is lowered to 0, the braking level changes to 1.

Regenerative braking system limitations

Regenerative braking intensity cannot be changed using the paddle shifter in the following situations:

- When the both paddle shifters are pulled at the same time.
- When the vehicle is decelerating by depressing the brake pedal.
- When Smart Cruise Control is activated.
- When regenerative braking is continuously operated with the battery fully charged.
- When entering the SNOW mode or using the SNOW mode

Adjustable range according to drive mode

Initial setting of the regenerative braking level and adjustable range vary according to the selected Drive mode.

Drive mode	Adjustable range
SNOW	0 to 1
ECO	0 to 3
COMFORT	0 to 3
SPORT	0 to 3

For more information, refer to the **Drive mode integrated control system**.

One Pedal Driving

One pedal driving operates the paddle shifter whilst coasting to control the intensity of regenerative braking. It assists the driver to stop the vehicle without depressing the brake pedal.

Information

Coasting is the process of driving a vehicle without the brake pedal and the accelerator depressed. Coasting uses the inertia of driving energy instead of the vehicle power.

Using one pedal driving

Pull and hold the left paddle shifter  for over 0.5 seconds whilst coasting to enable the one pedal driving mode.

- Release the paddle shifter when the vehicle speed is above 2 mph (3 km/h) to return to the previously set regenerative braking level.
- If the vehicle speed is below 2 mph (3 km/h), the vehicle will keep engaging the brake although the driver releases the paddle shifter.
- Releasing the paddle shifter after the vehicle comes to a stop maintain the vehicle stationary.



CAUTION

- The vehicle may not come to a stop although the one pedal driving function is active, depending on the condition of the vehicle and the road. Check the surroundings and depress the brake pedal to decelerate.
 - If the driver depresses the accelerator whilst pulling and holding the left paddle shifter  to increase the braking level, one pedal driving function will work like i-PEDAL function. In this case, the vehicle speed is no longer controllable through the paddle shifter.
-

One pedal driving limitations

In the following conditions, the vehicle may not come to a stop although the one pedal driving function is active. Depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.

- When driving on a slope, or when the vehicle is repeatedly driven and stopped.
- When the vehicle is driving through the end of the slope.
- When driving on a slippery surface such as an icy, rainy, or muddy road.
- When the wheels are not properly aligned.
- When a wheel slip or wheel spin occurs.
- When the weight on board is too heavy.
- When the vehicle is tilted to one side.
- When the tyre is worn out too much.

Automatic engagement of EPB

Use one pedal driving function to bring the vehicle to a stop and automatically engage the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).

After the vehicle is stopped, EPB is automatically engaged when any of the following conditions are satisfied:

- The driver's seatbelt is unfastened and the driver's door is open.
- The gear shifts to N (Neutral).
- The bonnet is open.
- The tailgate is open.

- 5 minutes have passed after the vehicle has stopped.
- One pedal driving is limited due to other reasons.

Using i-PEDAL

i-PEDAL assists the driver to accelerate, decelerate, and stop the vehicle with only the accelerator pedal.

Turning on/off the i-PEDAL

• Turning on i-PEDAL:

Pull the left paddle shifter  once when the regenerative braking level is at 3. i-PEDAL is turned on and the instrument cluster displays the i-PEDAL. i-PEDAL is not available whilst the smart regeneration system is ON. Turn off the smart regeneration system first before using i-PEDAL.

• Turning off i-PEDAL:

Pull the right paddle shifter  once whilst the function is ON. Otherwise, shift the gear to R (Reverse) then to D (Drive) whilst the function is ON. i-PEDAL is disabled and regenerative braking level is set to 3.



CAUTION

- Depending on the vehicle and road condition, the vehicle may not come to a stop although the i-PEDAL function is active. Check for the surroundings and depress the brake pedal to control the vehicle speed.
- Do not use i-PEDAL on slippery roads.

i-PEDAL limitations

In the following conditions, the vehicle may not come to a stop although the i-PEDAL is properly activated. Depress the brake to stop the vehicle.

- When driving on a slope, or when the vehicle is repeatedly driven and stopped
- When the vehicle is driving through the end of the slope
- When driving on a slippery surface such as an icy, rainy, or muddy road
- When the wheels are not properly aligned
- When a wheel slip or wheel spin occurs
- When the weight on board is too heavy
- When the vehicle is tilted to the side
- When the tyre is worn out too much

Smart regeneration system

The smart regeneration system recognises vehicle-to-vehicle distance, road gradient, and speed cameras and controls the regenerative braking level whilst coasting. It reduces unnecessary depressing of pedals to improve energy efficiency and driver convenience.

Information

- Coasting is the process of driving a vehicle without the brake pedal and the accelerator pedal depressed. Coasting uses the inertia of driving energy instead of the vehicle power.
 - The regenerative braking system uses the electric motor to engage the brake. The electric motor converts the kinetic energy generated from decelerating the vehicle to electricity and charges the high voltage battery.
-

Smart regeneration system on/off



Turning on the smart regeneration system:

Whilst the **READY** indicator is ON, shift the gear to D (drive), and pull and hold the right paddle shifter ($\rightarrow$) for over a second.

- The smart regeneration system is ON and the regenerative braking level appears as 'AUTO'.

Turning off the smart regeneration system:

Whilst the smart regeneration system is ON, pull and hold the right paddle shifter ($\rightarrow$) for over a second.

- The regenerative braking level appears instead of **AUTO** on the instrument cluster and the smart regeneration system turns off.

Using one pedal driving:

Whilst the smart regeneration system is ON, pull and hold the left paddle shifter ($\leftarrow$) for over 0.5 seconds (For more information, refer to the **One Pedal Driving**.)

i-PEDAL is not available whilst the smart regeneration system is ON. Turn off the smart regeneration system first before using i-PEDAL.

Smart regeneration system operating condition

When the regenerative braking level appears as **AUTO** and the vehicle speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h), the system automatically controls the regenerative braking level under the following conditions:

- The road gradient changes.
- Distance from the vehicle ahead reduces or increases.
- Speed of the vehicle ahead reduces or increases.



CAUTION

- When the Forward Safety warning light is ON, the smart regeneration system does not work properly. Depress the brake pedal to decelerate.
- The function that adjusts the regenerative braking intensity depending on the road gradient is only effective when the regenerative braking level is 0. Braking intensity does not significantly change depending on the road gradient if the regenerative braking level is 1 or above.

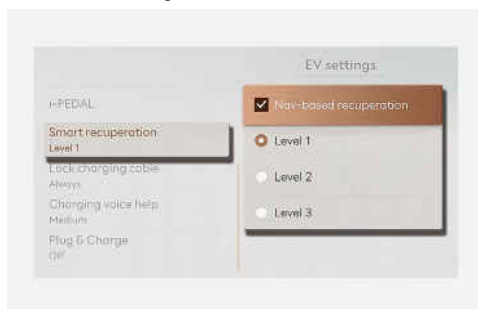
Smart regeneration level settings



1. Smart regeneration system operation indicator
2. Regenerative braking level indicator
3. Front vehicle/Speed camera detection indicator

When the smart regeneration system is ON, the regenerative braking level appears as **AUTO** on the instrument cluster. The **AUTO** appears in grey in the ready state. The system automatically controls the regenerative braking level according to the smart regeneration system operating conditions. If the front radar detects a vehicle in front, the indicator light appears in green.

Setting smart regenerative braking distance level



Select **Electric vehicle** > ⚙️ (EV settings) > **Smart recuperation** in the infotainment system and set the driver's distance level (Level 1/Level 2/Level 3) at the smart regenerative braking distance phase, and a distance from the leading vehicle is adjusted according to the setting.

Setting link to navigation route

if equipped

CAUTION

- The link to navigation route feature is for the convenience of drivers, and it is not a safety feature.
- Driving a vehicle safely by keeping eyes forward and following the Road Traffic Act is a duty of the driver. Hyundai Motor Company is not responsible for any accident on the road or the driver's violation of the Road Traffic Act.

Select **Electric vehicle** > ⚙️ (EV settings) > **Smart recuperation** in the infotainment system and set **Nav-based recuperation**.

Navigation-based speed control

if equipped

- The AUTO mode automatically adjusts the speed of the vehicle by utilizing the navigation information.
- The navigation-based speed control can provide service based on more accurate information when you set the destination. If you do not set the destination, some features may not operate.
- An automatic deceleration feature operates under the following circumstances
 - **Turning right or left at an intersection:** The feature decelerates the vehicle to a certain speed when turning right or left at an intersection.
 - **At curved roads:** The feature decelerates the vehicle to a certain speed at sharp-curved roads.
 - **Shift of the road speed limit:** The feature temporarily decelerates the vehicle to a certain speed when the speed limit on roads is reduced (for example, from 56 mph (90 km/h) to 31 mph (50 km/h)).

- **Roundabouts:** The vehicle automatically decelerates immediately before entering a roundabout to reach a certain speed.

Maintaining the speed on a downhill road

In the AUTO mode, the vehicle maintains the speed when the driver takes foot off the pedal on a downhill road using the regenerative braking.

Pausing smart regeneration system

The smart regeneration system is temporarily turned off in the following conditions. Whilst the system is turned off, the driver must keep eyes on the surroundings and depress the brake pedal to decelerate.

- The gear is shifted to N (Neutral), R (Reverse) or P (Park).
- Smart Cruise Control is activated.
- Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is operating/Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) is operating.
- The motor and battery temperature is high or low or there is a malfunction with the battery.
- State of Charge (SOC) is high.

Sensor precautions



1. Front radar

The front radar recognises the distance from the vehicle ahead to control the regenerative braking intensity. When the front radar is covered with snow, rain, or other foreign substances, the performance of the sensors may reduce, and the smart regeneration system may turn off. Always keep the sensors clean.

Smart regeneration system disabled

If the smart regeneration system is turned off due to the front radar being covered with foreign substances or due to other causes, the '**Check smart recuperation system**' warning message appears. Also the regenerative braking level appears instead of **AUTO**.

The system operates normally when such foreign material is removed, and the system is turned on by pulling and holding the right paddle shifter  for over a second.

If the smart regeneration system does not operate normally after the front radar has been uncovered or unblocked, we recommend that you visit an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products for inspection.

Smart regeneration system precautions

- Always monitor the distance to vehicles ahead on the road. The smart regeneration system is not a substitute for safe driving practices, but a supplemental function only.
- Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead and adjust your vehicle speed to the road conditions. The smart regeneration system may not recognise unexpected and sudden situations or complex driving situations.

General precautions

- Always maintain a safety distance from the vehicle ahead, and adjust your vehicle speed depending on the road conditions.
- Always prepare for unexpected situations and depress the brake pedal to decelerate when necessary. The smart regeneration system cannot react to pedestrians, vehicles making a sudden stop, and vehicles coming from the opposite lane.
- If the vehicle ahead frequently changes the lane, keep your eyes forward to be prepared for hazardous situations. In this case, the smart regeneration system may respond late and may inappropriately response to vehicle movements from the side lanes.
- The driver must depress the brake pedal when stopping the vehicle.
- Depress the brake pedal to decelerate in the following conditions when:
 - The front part of the vehicle is lifted up because of the cargo loaded on the rear part of the vehicle.
 - You are operating the steering wheel.
 - You are not driving in the centre of the lane.
 - You are driving on a that is too narrow or too curved.
- The smart regeneration system may be temporarily turn off when exposed to strong electromagnetic waves.

Front sensor precautions

- Make sure that no physical impact is applied to the sensor or its surroundings. If the sensor is dislocated due to the shock, the system may not work properly and the instrument cluster may not display any warnings. If the sensor is exposed to physical impacts, we recommend that you visit an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products for inspection.
- The sensors and its surroundings, the sensor covers, and the vehicle grille should always be kept clean.
- Do not attach any accessories such as molding or stickers on the sensor and its detection range, or change the vehicle grille. It may affect sensor performance.
- Always use genuine parts for the sensor cover, and do not paint it.
- Use soft fabric to prevent damage to the sensor cover when washing the car.
- Do not spray the sensor or the surrounding with high pressure water.

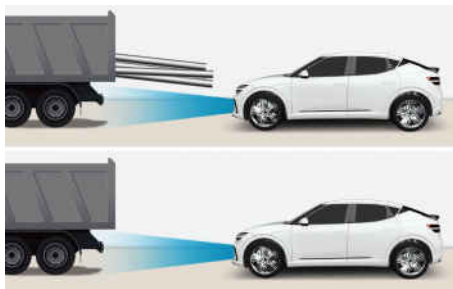
Vehicle detection precautions

Detecting vehicle ahead

- The front sensors may suddenly recognise the foregoing vehicle when the smart regeneration system reacts slowly, or the vehicle is going through the end of a slope or

curve. In this case, the regenerative braking intensity is increased and the vehicle may slow down.

- The front sensors may be unable to recognise the vehicle ahead in the following situations even if it is on the same lane.
 - Narrow vehicles such as motorcycles or bicycles
 - Vehicles offset to one side
 - Slow-moving vehicles or sudden decelerating vehicles
 - Vehicles with small rear profile such as trailers with no loads
 - Vehicles with higher ground clearance or cargo that extends rearward from the vehicle



- When the vehicle in front of the foregoing vehicle is at a stop and the foregoing vehicle changes the lane, the front sensors may be unable to recognise the stopped vehicle.

Driving on curves



- On a curved road, the front sensors may recognise the vehicles on the other lane as the foregoing vehicle of the same lane. It may increase the regenerative braking intensity and the vehicle may decelerate. Check the surroundings and depress the accelerator to prevent unnecessary reduce of speed.
- The front sensors may be unable to recognise the foregoing vehicle if you are coasting on a curve. The regenerative braking intensity may automatically be lowered, which may accelerate the vehicle.
- If the front sensors suddenly recognise the vehicle ahead, regenerative braking intensity may rise and the vehicle may decelerate.

Driving on hills



- When the vehicle is coasting through the end of a slope or where the gradient is changing, the front sensors may be unable to recognise, or may suddenly recognise the vehicle ahead. It may adjust the regenerative braking intensity and change the vehicle speed.
- When driving up or down the slope, check for the surroundings and depress the brake pedal to decelerate.

Changing lanes



1. Your vehicle
 2. Lane changing vehicle
- If a vehicle on the next lane is moving into the front of your vehicle, the front sensors can only recognise the vehicle when it is completely inside the detection range.
 - The front sensors may recognise the vehicles late that intervene suddenly.

Braking system

Power-assist brakes



WARNING

Take the following precautions:

- Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create abnormal high brake temperatures, excessive brake lining and pad wear, and increased stopping distances.
So increase the regeneration braking level with the left paddle shift lever to decrease the speed.
 - When descending down a long or steep hill, use the paddle shifter and manually downshift to a lower gear in order to control your speed without using the brake pedal excessively. Applying the brakes continuously will cause the brakes to overheat and may result in a temporary loss of braking performance.
 - Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to safely decelerate. Because wet brakes increase braking distance and cause noise troubles, select 0 step of the regenerative braking system and depress the brake pedal around 10 times, with keeping the safe distance from other vehicles, lightly in order to dry the braking system. Such procedure may decrease the driving distance by restraining the regenerative braking system, which is not a system malfunction. Inspect the braking system after car wash or driving over wet road conditions.
-

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

If the vehicle is not running or is turned off whilst driving, the power assist for the brakes does not work. You can still stop your vehicle by applying greater force to the brake pedal than typical. The stopping distance, however, may be longer than with power brakes.

When the vehicle is not running, the reserve brake power is partially depleted each time the brake pedal is applied. Do not pump the brake pedal when the power assist has been interrupted.

NOTICE

- Do not continue depressing the brake pedal if the vehicle is off (READY indicator is OFF). The battery may be discharged.
 - Noise and vibration generated during braking is normal.
 - Under normal operation, electric brake pump noise and motor vibration may occur temporarily in below cases.
 - When the pedal is depressed suddenly.
 - When the pedal is repeatedly depressed in short intervals.
 - When the ABS function is activated whilst braking.
 - If deicing chemicals get stuck on the brakes, abnormal wear and noise may occur on the brake discs and pads. Remove the deicing chemicals from the brake discs and pads whilst applying the brakes in a safe traffic condition.
-

Disc brakes wear indicator

When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you may hear a high pitched warning sound from your front or rear brakes. You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you depress the brake pedal.



WARNING

Always replace both the left and right brake pads on the front and rear axles at the same time.

High performance brake



If equipped

For vehicles equipped with the High Performance Brake (large diameter monoblock brakes with enhanced braking performance), noise such as a squeal, squeak or groan is generated whilst braking. This is normal and the friction may create circle patterns on the disc surface. This is also a normal condition which does not affect braking performance.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)



WARNING

To prevent serious injury or death from unintended vehicle movement:

- Always come to a complete stop and continue to depress the brake pedal before parking, shift the gear into P (Park), pull up the EPB switch, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Take the key with you when leaving the vehicle.
 - Never allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the EPB switch.
 - Only release EPB when you are seated inside the vehicle with your foot firmly on the brake pedal.
-



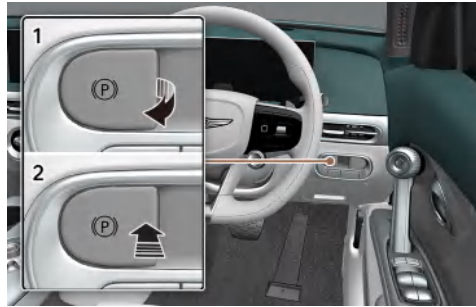
CAUTION

- Driving with the parking brake on may overheat the braking system and cause premature wear or damage to brake parts.
 - When leaving your keys with a parking attendant or assistant, make sure to inform him/her how to operate the EPB.
 - If the Parking Brake warning light is still on even though the EPB has been released, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
 - Do not drive your vehicle with EPB applied. It may cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.
 - Depress the brake pedal and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch before you drive downhill or when backing up.
-

Information

- For the Middle East, EPB is released regardless of seat belt fastening.
 - A clicking sound may be heard whilst operating or releasing the EPB. These conditions are normal and indicate that EPB is functioning properly.
 - You can apply EPB even though the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position (only if battery power is available), but you cannot release it.
-

Parking brake operation



Applying the parking brake

Pull up the EPB switch (direction 1) whilst depressing and holding the brake pedal.

- Make sure the Parking Brake warning light comes on.

Releasing the parking brake

With the Start/Stop button to the POWER ON or DRIVE READY position, press the EPB switch (direction 2) whilst depressing the brake pedal.

- Make sure the Parking Brake warning light goes off.

EPB automatic operation

EPB automatic application

- When requested by other systems
- When the driver turns the vehicle off whilst Auto Hold is operating

EPB automatic release

- When depressing the brake pedal and shifting out of P (Park) or N (Neutral) to R (Reverse) or D (Drive) with the vehicle ON.
 - Make sure the doors, bonnet, and tailgate are closed and the seat belt is fastened.
- When all below conditions are met and the accelerator pedal is depressed.
 - The vehicle is ON.
 - The driver's seat belt is fastened (except Middle East).
 - The driver's door, bonnet and tailgate are closed.
 - The gear is in R (Reverse) or D (Drive).

Make sure the Parking Brake warning light goes off.

If the driver's seat belt is unfastened, or the bonnet, tailgate, doors are open, and you try to drive with EPB applied, a warning sounds and the **'To release EPB, fasten seat belt and close door, bonnet and tailgate'** message appears.

Emergency braking

If there is a problem with the brake pedal whilst driving, emergency braking is possible by pulling up and holding the EPB switch. Braking is possible only whilst you are holding the EPB switch. However, braking distance may be longer than normal.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death, do not operate the EPB whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It may damage the brake system and cause a collision.

NOTICE

If you notice a noise or burning smell when the EPB is used for emergency braking, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Information

During emergency braking, the Parking Brake warning light illuminates and you may hear a clicking noise.

EPB malfunction

EPB warning light illuminates if the Start/Stop button in the POWER ON position and goes off in about 3 seconds if the system is operating normally.

If the EPB warning light remains on, comes on whilst driving, or does not come on when the Start/Stop button is POWER ON, the EPB may have malfunctioned.

If this occurs, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The EPB warning light may illuminate when the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) indicator comes on to indicate that ESC is not working properly, but it does not indicate a malfunction of EPB.

NOTICE

- If the Parking Brake warning light does not illuminate or blinks after the EPB switch has been pulled, the EPB may not be applied.
- If the EPB warning light is still on or the Parking Brake warning light blinks, press the switch, and then pull it up. Repeat this one more time. If the EPB warning does not go off, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Parking brake warning light

The Parking Brake  warning light illuminates when the Parking Brake is applied with the Start/Stop button in the POWER ON position.

Before driving, make sure the Parking Brake is released and the Parking Brake warning light is OFF.

If the Parking Brake warning light remains on after the Parking Brake is released whilst the vehicle is running, there may be a malfunction in the brake system.

If possible, stop driving the vehicle immediately. If that is not possible, use extreme caution whilst operating the vehicle and only continue to drive the vehicle until you can reach a safe location.

Auto Hold

Auto Hold maintains the vehicle in a standstill even though the brake pedal is not depressed after the driver brings the vehicle to a complete stop by depressing the brake pedal.

- When the vehicle is restarted, the last setting for Auto Hold is applied.

Auto Hold operation



Activating Auto Hold

With the driver's door, bonnet, and tailgate closed, press the **AUTO HOLD** button.

- The white Auto Hold AUTO HOLD indicator comes on and the system is in standby.
- When you stop the vehicle completely by depressing the brake pedal, Auto Hold maintains the brake pressure to hold the vehicle stationary. The indicator changes from white to green.

The vehicle remains stationary even if you release the brake pedal.

- If you depress the accelerator pedal with the gear in D (Drive) or R (Reverse), the Auto Hold is released automatically and the vehicle starts to move. The Auto Hold AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white.



WARNING

Always look around your vehicle before depressing the accelerator pedal to release Auto Hold.

Deactivating Auto Hold

Press the **AUTO HOLD** button whilst depressing and holding the brake pedal.

The Auto Hold AUTO HOLD indicator turns off.



WARNING

To prevent unintended vehicle movement, always depress your foot on the brake pedal to deactivate the Auto Hold before you:

- Drive downhill.
 - Drive the vehicle in R (Reverse).
 - Park the vehicle.
-

Non-operating conditions

- The Auto Hold does not operate when EPB is applied.
- The Auto Hold automatically switches to EPB when:
 - The driver's door or bonnet is opened.
 - The vehicle is in a standstill for more than 10 minutes.
 - The vehicle is on a steep slope.
 - The vehicle moves several times.
 - The tailgate is opened.

The Parking Brake warning light comes on, the Auto Hold AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white, a warning sounds, and a message appears to inform you that EPB has been automatically engaged. Before driving, depress the brake pedal, check the surrounding area, and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch.

NOTICE

- If the Auto Hold AUTO HOLD indicator changes to yellow, or the driver's door, bonnet, or tailgate open detection system malfunctions, Auto Hold does not work properly. We recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
 - When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly, a warning sounds and the '**Deactivating AUTO HOLD... Press brake pedal**' message appears. Depress the brake pedal to keep the vehicle stationary.
-

Brake Disc Cleaning (BDC)

Use the BDC function if noise is generated when depressing the brake whilst driving or if the brake disc gets rusty. It helps reduce the noise and rust. Regenerative braking is restrained whilst BDC is operated, which may lower the electric energy efficiency.

Press and hold the **AUTO HOLD** button for over 3 seconds.

- Brake disc cleaning starts operating when the message '**Brake disc cleaning**' appears on the cluster display.
- Regenerative braking is restrained whilst the brake is depressed about 10 times whilst driving (it may differ depending on driving conditions). It helps reduce the noise and rust.
- BDC function turns off automatically when the operation is completed. It can also be turned off before operation is completed by turning off the vehicle or pressing the **AUTO HOLD** button for over 3 seconds.

Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)



WARNING

ABS or ESC system does not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving manoeuvres. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead of you. Always reduce the vehicle speed in extreme road conditions.

The braking distance for vehicles equipped with ABS or ESC may be longer than for those without these systems in the following road conditions:

- Rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.
- On roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface height.
- Tyre chains are installed on your vehicle.

Never test the safety features of an ABS or ESC equipped vehicle by high speed driving or cornering. It may cause a collision and endanger the safety of yourself or others.

ABS is an electronic braking system that helps prevent a braking skid. ABS allows the driver to steer and brake at the same time.

ABS operation

To obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes. Depress your brake pedal as hard as possible.

When you apply your brakes under conditions that may lock the wheels, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle.

Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.

ABS does not prevent a skid that results from sudden changes in direction, such as trying to take a corner too fast or making a sudden lane change. Always drive at a safe speed for the road and weather conditions.

ABS cannot prevent a loss of stability. Always steer moderately when braking hard. Severe or sharp steering wheel movement can still cause your vehicle to veer into oncoming traffic or off the road.

On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the ABS may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.

The ABS  warning light stays on for several seconds after the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position.

During that time, ABS goes through self-diagnosis and the light goes off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.



WARNING

If the ABS  warning light is on and stays on you may have a problem with the ABS. Your power brakes work normally. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

NOTICE

When you drive on a road having poor traction, such as an icy road, and apply your brakes continuously, ABS is active continuously and the ABS  warning light may illuminate. Pull your vehicle over to a safe place and turn off the vehicle.

Restart the vehicle. If the ABS warning light is off, then your ABS system is normal.

If not, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

Information

When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the ABS  warning light may turn on at the same time. It does not mean your ABS is malfunctioning. Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

The ESC system helps stabilize the vehicle during cornering manoeuvres.

ESC checks where you are steering and where the vehicle is actually going. ESC applies braking pressure to any one of the vehicle's brakes and intervenes in the electric vehicle control system to assist the driver with keeping the vehicle on the intended path. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Always adjust your speed and driving to the road conditions.

WARNING

Never drive too fast for the road conditions or too quickly when cornering. The ESC system does not prevent a collision.

Excessive speed in turns, abrupt manoeuvres, and hydroplaning on wet surfaces may result in severe collisions.

ESC indicator light (blinks)



ESC OFF indicator light (comes on)



- When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position, the ESC  indicator light and the ESC OFF  indicator light illuminates, then goes off if the ESC system is operating normally.
- The ESC indicator light blinks whenever ESC is operating.
- If the ESC indicator light stays on, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

- The ESC OFF indicator light comes on when ESC is turned off.

ESC operation

Activating ESC

When the Start/Stop button is in the POWER ON position, the ESC and the ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for about 3 seconds. After both lights go off, ESC is activated.

When the ESC is activated, the ESC  indicator light blinks:

- When you apply your brakes under conditions that may lock the wheels, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal.
- When ESC activates, the vehicle may not respond to the accelerator as it does under routine conditions.
- If Cruise Control has been used when ESC activates, Cruise Control automatically disengages. For more information, refer to the **Smart Cruise Control (SCC)**.



WARNING

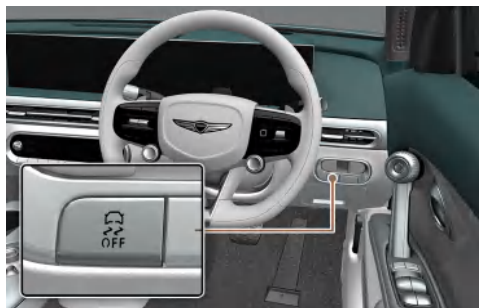
When ESC is active:

- Drive slowly and NEVER attempt to accelerate.
 - Never turn off ESC whilst the ESC indicator light is blinking. You may lose control of the vehicle and collide.
-

NOTICE

Driving with wheels and tyres with different sizes may cause the ESC system to malfunction. Before replacing tyres, make sure all four tyres and wheels are the appropriate size for your vehicle. Never drive the vehicle with different sized wheels and tyres installed.

ESC OFF operation



Activating ESC OFF

State 1 (traction control disabled)

Press the ESC OFF button briefly. The ESC OFF  indicator light illuminates and the message, '**Traction control disabled**' appears.

The traction control function of ESC (electric vehicle control management) is disabled, but the brake control function of ESC (braking management) still operates.

State 2 (traction and stability control disabled)

Press and hold the ESC OFF button continuously for more than 3 seconds. The ESC OFF  indicator light illuminates and/or message '**Traction control and ESC disabled**' appears and a warning chime sounds.

Both the traction control function of ESC (electric vehicle control management) and the brake control function of ESC (braking management) are disabled.

When driving

The ESC OFF mode should only be used briefly to help free the vehicle if stuck in snow or mud, by temporarily stopping operation of ESC, to maintain wheel torque.

To turn off ESC whilst driving, press the ESC OFF button whilst driving on a flat road surface.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the reducer:

- Do not allow wheel(s) of one axle to spin excessively whilst the ESC, ABS, and Parking Brake warning lights appear. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Reduce motor power and do not spin the wheel(s) excessively whilst these lights appear.
 - When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, make sure ESC is turned off (ESC OFF light illuminated).
-

Information

- If the Start/Stop button is pressed to the OFF position when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the vehicle, ESC automatically turns on again.
 - Turning ESC off does not affect ABS or standard brake system operation.
-

Vehicle Stability Management (VSM)

VSM is a function of the ESC system. It helps the vehicle stay stable when accelerating or braking suddenly on wet, slippery and rough roads where traction over the four tyres can suddenly become uneven.



WARNING

VSM is not a substitute for safe driving practices. To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always monitor the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead of you.
 - Never drive too fast for the road conditions. Excessive speed in bad weather or on slippery and uneven roads may result in severe collisions.
-

VSM operation

Activating VSM

When you apply your brakes under conditions that can activate ESC, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your VSM is active.

Deactivating VSM

To deactivate VSM operation, press the ESC OFF button. The ESC OFF  indicator light illuminates.

To activate VSM again, press the ESC OFF button again. The ESC OFF indicator light turns off.

Non-operating conditions

- When driving on a banked road such as gradient or incline.
- When driving in reverse.
- When the ESC OFF indicator light is on.
- When the Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS)  warning light is on or blinks.



WARNING

If the ESC OFF  indicator light or MDPS  warning light stays illuminated or blinks, your vehicle may have a malfunction with the VSM system. When the warning light illuminates, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

NOTICE

Driving with wheels and tyres with different sizes may cause the VSM system to malfunction. Before replacing tyres, make sure all four tyres and wheels are the appropriate size for your vehicle. Never drive the vehicle with different sized wheels and tyres installed.

Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC)

HAC helps prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards when starting from a stop on a hill.



WARNING

Always be ready to depress the accelerator pedal when starting from a stop on an uphill slope. HAC activates only for about 2 seconds.



CAUTION

- HAC does not activate when the gear is shifted to P (Park) or N (Neutral).
 - If ESC malfunctions, HAC does not activate.
-

Information

HAC activates even when the ESC is deactivated.

Emergency Stop Signal (ESS)

ESS alerts the driver behind by blinking the stop lights when sharply and severely braking.

ESS operation

Activating ESS

The stop light blinks quickly when the vehicle suddenly stops (the deceleration power exceeds 7 m/s^2 , and the driving speed exceeds 34 mph (55 km/h)) or ABS is activated whilst stopping.

Deactivating ESS

The stop lights stop blinking and the hazard warning flasher automatically turns on when:

- Driving speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h) and the sudden braking situation is over.
- ABS is deactivated.

The hazard warning flasher turns off when:

- The vehicle drives at a low speed for a certain period of time.
- The driver can manually turn off the hazard warning flasher by pressing the button.

Non-operating conditions

ESS does not activate when the hazard warning flashers are already on.

Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)

MCB controls the brake automatically in the event of an accident where the airbag deploys to reduce the risk of additional accidents that may occur.

MCB operation

Activating MCB

From the time the airbag deploys, MCB monitors the depression intensity of the brake pedal and accelerator pedal for a short period.

The system activates when the following conditions are met:

- Vehicle speed is below 112 mph (180 km/h) at the time of collision.
- The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is barely depressed.

When the driver depresses the brake pedal over a certain level whilst MCB is active, the braking power takes priority over automatic braking by MCB system. However, if the driver takes his/her foot off the brake pedal, automatic braking by MCB system maintains automatic braking.

Deactivating MCB

MCB is deactivated in the following situations:

- The accelerator pedal is depressed over a certain level.
- The vehicle stops.
- ESC or electronic devices has malfunctioned.
- In a situation system cannot operate normally.
- 10 seconds have passed since the brake has been controlled automatically by MCB system.

WARNING

- MCB decreases vehicle speed after a collision and reduces the risk of a second collision, but it does not prevent a second collision. You may drive away from the collision spot to avoid other dangerous situations by depressing the accelerator pedal.
 - After the vehicle is stopped by MCB, the system stops controlling the brakes. Depending on the situation, the driver should depress the brake or the accelerator pedal to prevent further accidents.
-

Brake Assistant System (BAS)

The BAS provides additional pressure when the brake pedal is momentarily and strongly depressed in a situation sudden braking is required whilst driving.

The BAS reduces the time for ABS control to enter and consequently reduces the braking distance, by providing additional pressure up to the point of ABS intervention.

WARNING

The system may not operate depending on driver's driving habit, driving speed, the degree to which the brake pedal is depressed and the road surface condition.

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)

TSA operates as a vehicle stability control system. The TSA system works to stabilize the vehicle and trailer when the trailer sways or oscillates. There are various reasons making the vehicle sway and oscillate. In most cases it happens at high speed. However, if the trailer is affected by crosswinds, buffeting, and improper overloading, there may be a risk of swaying.

Factors of swaying are:

- High speed
- Strong crosswinds
- Improper overloading
- Sudden controlling of steering wheel
- Uneven road

The TSA system continuously analyzes the vehicle and trailer instability. When the TSA system detects some sway, the brakes are applied automatically to stabilize the vehicle on the front wheel. However, if it is not enough to stabilize, the brakes are applied on all wheels automatically and vehicle power is properly reduced. When the vehicle is stable from swaying, the TSA system deactivates.

Good braking practices

WARNING

Whenever leaving the vehicle or parking, always come to a complete stop and continue to depress the brake pedal. Shift the gear to the P (Park) position, then apply the EPB, and move the Start/Stop button to the OFF position.

Vehicles parked with the EPB not applied or not fully engaged may roll inadvertently and may cause injury to the driver and others. ALWAYS apply the parking brake before exiting the vehicle.

Wet brakes can be dangerous! The brakes may get wet if the vehicle is driven through standing water or if it is washed. Your vehicle will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the vehicle to pull to one side.

To dry the brakes, apply the brakes slightly until the braking action returns to normal. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

DO NOT drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light, but constant pedal pressure can result in the brakes overheating, brake wear, and possibly even brake failure.

If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the vehicle pointed straight ahead whilst you slow down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe location.

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped to prevent the vehicle from rolling forward.

All Wheel Drive (AWD)

 if equipped

When All Wheel Drive (AWD) is activated, driving forces are distributed appropriately to front and rear wheels.

It could improve driving performance by maximizing the driving force of vehicles on severe road conditions such as steep hills, unpaved, slippery, etc.

Advantage of electronic AWD

- 1 Improvement of straight stability
- 2 Improvement of driving performance on curve
- 3 Secure stability on severe condition such as wet and sandy roads
- 4 Improvement of energy efficiency from driving mode automatic control



WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.
 - Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.
 - The risk of a rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.
 - Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over steers to reenter the roadway.
 - In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.
-

NOTICE

- Do not drive in water if the water level is higher than the bottom of the vehicle.
 - Check your brake condition once you are out of mud or water. Depress the brake pedal several times as you move slowly until you feel normal braking condition return.
 - Shorten your scheduled maintenance interval if you drive in off-road conditions such as sand, mud, or water.
 - Always wash your vehicle thoroughly after off-road use, especially the bottom of the vehicle.
 - Be sure to equip the vehicle with four tyres of the same size and type.
 - Make sure that a full time AWD vehicle is towed by a flat-bed tow truck.
-

Information

AWD vehicles could change the engagement status of the motor according to the situation required. Auto changing the driving mode (2WD/AWD) helps improve energy efficiency and driving stability.

For safe AWD operation

Before driving

- Make sure all passengers always wear their seat belts.
- Sit upright and closer to the steering wheel than usual. Adjust the steering wheel to a position comfortable for you to drive.

Driving on snow-covered or icy roads

- Start off slowly by applying the accelerator pedal gently.
- Use snow tyres or tyre chains.
- Keep a sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.
- Using regenerative braking helps the steering on the downhill. However, it may be difficult to adjust the vehicle whilst coasting using regenerative braking, so avoid using the third level of regenerative braking as much as possible.
- Avoid speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns to prevent skids.
- It is difficult to start again if the vehicle stops on an uphill road. Keep your distance from other vehicles and drive slowly.

Information

- When using snow tyres, mount them on all four wheels.
- When using tyre chains, install them on the rear tyres. However, driving speed must be below 20 mph (30 km/h) and minimise the driving distance. High-speed or long-term driving with the chains installed may malfunction or damage the AWD system.

For more information on Snow Tyres and Tyre Chains, refer to the **Winter driving**.

Driving in sand or mud

- Maintain slow and constant speeds.
- Use tyre chains when driving in mud if necessary.
- Keep a distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.
- Reduce the vehicle speed and always check the road condition.
- Avoid speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns to prevent getting stuck.

NOTICE

When the vehicle is stuck in snow, sand, or mud, place a nonslip material under the drive wheels to provide traction OR slowly spin the wheels in forward and reverse causing a rocking motion that may free the vehicle.

Driving up or down hills

- Driving uphill
 - Before starting off, check if it is possible to drive uphill.
 - Drive as straight as possible.
- Driving downhill
 - Drive straight as possible.



WARNING

- Exercise extreme caution driving up or down steep hills. The vehicle may roll over in the grade, terrain, and water/mud conditions.
 - Do not drive across the contour of steep hills. A slight change in the wheel angle may destabilize the vehicle. A stable vehicle may lose stability if the vehicle stops its forward motion. Your vehicle may roll over, resulting in a serious injury or death.
-

Driving through water

- Try to avoid driving in deep standing water.
- If you need to drive in water, stop your vehicle, and drive under 5 mph (8 km/h).



CAUTION

Always drive slowly in water. If you drive too fast, water may get into the motor compartment, causing your vehicle to suddenly stop.

Additional driving conditions

- Become familiar with the off-road conditions before driving.
- Always pay attention when driving off-road and avoid dangerous areas.
- Drive slowly when driving in heavy wind.
- Reduce vehicle speed when cornering. The centre of gravity of AWD vehicles is higher than conventional 2WD vehicles. The vehicle is more likely to roll over if you turn the steering wheel too quickly.
- Always hold the steering wheel firmly when you are driving off-road.



WARNING

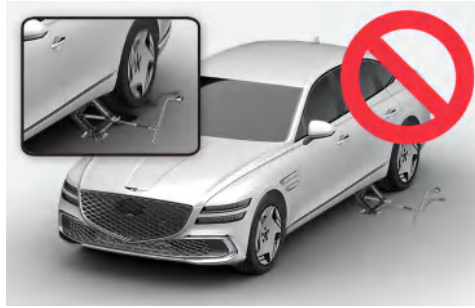
Do not grab the inside of the steering wheel when you are driving off-road. You may hurt your arm by a sudden steering manoeuvre or from steering wheel rebound due to an impact with objects on the ground. You may lose control of the steering wheel that may lead to serious injury or death.

Emergency precautions

Tyres

- Do not use tyres or wheels with different size and type from the one installed on your vehicle. It may affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could cause steering failure or rollover causing serious injury.
- When replacing the tyres, be sure to equip all four tyres with the same size, type, tread, brand, and load-carrying capacity. If you equip your vehicle with any tyre/wheel combination not recommended by Genesis Branded Vehicle for off-road driving, do not use these tyres for highway driving.

WARNING



Never start or run the vehicle whilst an AWD vehicle is raised on a jack. The vehicle may slip or roll off of a jack causing serious injury or death.

Towing

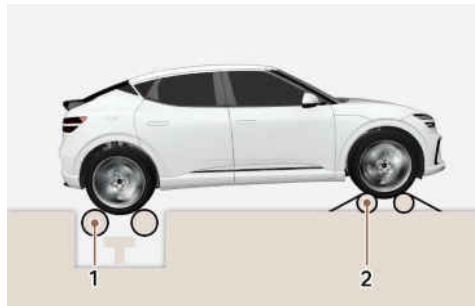
AWD vehicles must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground. For more information, refer to the **Towing**.

Vehicle inspection

- If the vehicle needs to be operated on a vehicle lift, do not attempt to stop any of the four wheels from turning. This may damage the AWD system.
- Never apply the parking brake whilst running the vehicle on a vehicle lift. This may damage the AWD system.

Dynamometer testing

An AWD vehicle must be tested on a special four wheel chassis dynamometer.



1. Roll tester (Speedometer)
2. Temporary free roller

If a 2WD roll tester must be used:

- 1 Check the tyre pressures recommended for your vehicle.
- 2 Place the rear wheels on the roll tester for a speedometer test as shown in the illustration.
- 3 Release the parking brake.

4 Place the front wheels on the temporary free roller as shown in the illustration.



WARNING

Keep away from the front of the vehicle whilst the vehicle is in gear on the dynamometer. The vehicle may jump forward and cause serious injury or death.

NOTICE

- Never engage the parking brake whilst performing the test.
 - When the vehicle is lifted up, do not operate the front and rear wheel separately. All four wheels should be operated.
-

Electronic control suspension

 if equipped

Electronic Control Suspension controls the vehicle suspension automatically using vehicle sensors to maximise driving comfort by taking into account the driving conditions such as speed, surface of the road, cornering, stopping requirements, and acceleration.

System malfunction

Check Electronic Suspension

When Electronic Control Suspension is not working properly, this warning message appears on the cluster display. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Electronically controlled suspension with road preview

 if equipped

Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview helps control the vehicle suspension automatically using the front view camera and vehicle sensors to maximise driving comfort by taking into account the driving conditions such as speed, surface of the road, cornering, stopping requirements, and acceleration.

Front view camera



1. Front view camera

The front view camera is a sensor that detects the front road. When the front view camera is covered or blocked, its detecting performance is reduced, and the data collected by the camera may be limited.

NOTICE

To prevent vehicle damage:

- Never disassemble the camera sensors or camera sensor assemblies.
 - Only have the detecting sensor replaced or repaired by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
 - Never install any accessories, stickers, or tint the front windscreen.
 - Always keep the camera dry.
 - Never place any reflective objects (for example, white paper, mirror) on the dashboard.
-

Information

We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products when:

- The windscreen glass is replaced.
 - The front view camera or cover gets damaged or replaced.
-

System malfunction

Check Electronic Suspension

When Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview is not working properly, the '**Check electronic suspension**' warning message may appear on the cluster display.

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

NOTICE

If the battery level is high or low, Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview may not work temporarily to protect the system. If this occurs, '**Check electronic suspension**' warning message may appear.

Limitations of the system

Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview always operates whilst driving according to the vehicle's movement, and the preview function starts to work when the front view camera detects road conditions such as speed bumps. Therefore, the preview function is limited when there is an extreme condition that the front view camera may not work normally. In this case, the electronic control suspension function operates without the preview function in accordance with vehicle movement.

Electronic limited slip differential

Electronic Limited Slip Differential controls the differential functions of the wheels to help:

- Improve steering performance when circling at high speed.
- Improve launching performance.
- Prevent slipping on rainy or snowy roads due to dissimilar friction of the left and right wheels.



WARNING

Never run the wheels with one of the wheels lifted on a jack. It is extremely dangerous for a vehicle equipped with Electronic Limited Slip Differential.

Drive mode selection

The characteristic of Electronic Limited Slip Differential varies according to the drive mode selected.

Selected mode	Characteristic of e-LSD
ECO	COMFORT
COMFORT	COMFORT
SPORT	SPORT
SNOW	SNOW
MY DRIVE (if equipped)	COMFORT/ SPORT

For more information, refer to the **Drive mode integrated control system**.

Warning messages

Electronic limited-slip differential disabled temporarily due to overheating

Overheating of related parts will temporarily disable Electronic Limited Slip Differential. Wait until the vehicle cools down.

Tyre size mismatch. Limited-slip differential disabled. Check tyre sizes

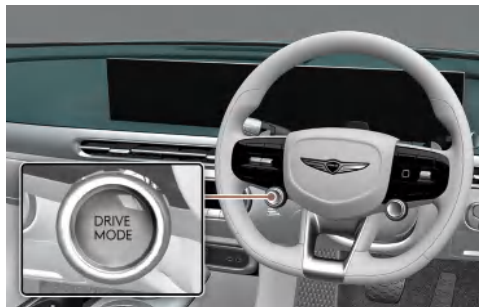
If your vehicle is equipped with different tyres (size, type, etc.), the message appears on the cluster display. To use Electronic Limited Slip Differential, equip the vehicle with the same tyres.

Check limited slip differential

When Electronic Limited Slip Differential is not working properly, this warning message appears on the cluster display. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Drive mode integrated control system

Drive mode



The drive mode can be selected according to the driver's preference or road condition. The mode changes, as the following, whenever the **DRIVE MODE** button is pressed.

- **ECO** → **COMFORT** → **SPORT** → **MY** → **SNOW**

MY DRIVE mode features

 if equipped

MY DRIVE mode allows driver to personalize the setting of the motor, steering wheel and suspension.

To set MY DRIVE mode, go to **Setup** > **Vehicle** > **Drive mode** > **MY DRIVE MODE** in the infotainment system.

- Motor: ECO/COMFORT/SPORT
- Steering: COMFORT/SPORT
- Suspension: COMFORT/SPORT
- E-LSD (if equipped): COMFORT/SPORT
- ESC: COMFORT/SPORT/OFF

Setting BRAKE mode

 if equipped

To set the BRAKE mode to adjust brake response, park the vehicle and shift the gear to P (Park). Go to **Setup** > **Vehicle** > **Drive mode** > **Brakes mode** in the infotainment system and select a mode.

- COMFORT: Brake response appropriate for comfort driving.
- SPORT: Brake response appropriate for dynamic driving.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Drive mode features

COMFORT mode

COMFORT mode provides a balanced motor response which is suited for everyday driving. The vehicle is usually driven with 2WD (Rear-wheel drive), but automatically shifts to AWD depending on the road and driving conditions.

ECO mode

ECO mode is a driving mode that helps improve energy efficiency by limiting maximum vehicle power (torque), providing smooth vehicle response and driving the vehicle with the rear wheels (2WD).

Energy efficiency varies according to the driver's driving habit and road condition.

- When ECO mode is selected, the ECO indicator will illuminate on the instrument cluster and theme of the instrument cluster will change.

When ECO mode is activated:

- All wheel drive and sharp acceleration and deceleration is limited
- The vehicle will automatically convert between 2WD to AWD when:
 - i-Pedal or One Pedal Driving is operating
 - The temperature is low
 - Driving on a slope or a slippery road

SPORT mode

SPORT mode is a driving mode that provides sporty but firm riding by making the motor response more quickly, making the steering wheel heavier and driving the vehicle with all four wheels (AWD).

In SPORT mode, the energy efficiency may decrease.

- When SPORT mode is selected, the SPORT indicator will illuminate on the instrument cluster and theme of the instrument cluster will change.
- Whenever the vehicle is restarted, the drive mode will revert back to COMFORT mode. If SPORT mode is required, re-select SPORT mode.

SNOW mode

SNOW mode is a driving mode improving driving performance by changing the engagement status of the motor according to the situation required. Auto changing the driving mode (2WD/AWD) helps improve driving stability.

- Press and hold the drive mode button to select SNOW mode.
- When SNOW mode is selected, the SNOW indicator will illuminate on the instrument cluster and the colour of the mood lamp will change.
- When SNOW mode is activated, the driving power is distributed to four wheels automatically, increasing the stability of the vehicle.

NOTICE

- Depress the accelerator pedal softly on the snow and the ice.
 - Keep the distance from the vehicle in the front.
 - Prevent rapid acceleration, deceleration and steering control.
- Abrupt driving on the snow may cause the accident.

Drive modes characteristic

The characteristic of each components varies according to which drive mode is selected.

Drive mode	ECO	COMFORT	SPORT	SNOW
Characteristics	High electric energy efficiency mode	Comfort driving mode	Sporty driving mode	Snow driving
Button activation	Press	Press	Press	Press more than 1 sec.
Indicator on the cluster	ECO	-	SPORT	SNOW
Climate system control	ECO/COMFORT	COMFORT	COMFORT	COMFORT
Speed limit	-	-	-	-
Regenerative braking level	0-3	0-3	0-3	0-1

Information

- The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the user's manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.
- You can set the driving condition for each drive mode, at the **Drive mode > ECO climate control** in the infotainment system.

Virtual Gear Shift (VGS)

 if equipped

Virtual Gear Shift is a function to enhance driving immersion by simulating gear shifts of an internal combustion engine vehicle by controlling VCU motor for an electric vehicle with motor and reducer.

You can simulate the following gear shifts of an internal combustion engine vehicle.

- **Shift gear pattern:** Different pattern by mode, controlling braking reduction rate, shift modification, etc.
- **Shift gear feeling:** Differentiate up/down shift by mode, downshift REV matching, etc.
- **Paddle shift:** When adjusting the paddle shift lever, it changes from the automatic shift mode to manual shift mode. The cluster will display the current mode. Press the regenerative braking lever () for about 2 seconds to cancel the manual shift mode and change it to the automatic shift mode.
- **Sound:** Maximise a sense of driving which a driver can experience in a vehicle with an engine and a shifter. Inside sound is matched to the motor torque for each virtual engine RPM/gear.
- **Interface:** Auto/manual mode by adjusting the regenerative braking lever. Displayed on the cluster screen (motor RPM, gear).

VGS (Virtual gear shift) settings

The VGS function must be turned ON from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select: **Setup > Vehicle > Drive mode > VGS**

- Press the custom buttons (★) to turn on or off VGS.

VGS (Virtual gear shift) operation

In DRIVE READY condition, drive mode should be **COMFORT** and **SPORT** to activate. (including **COMFORT**, **SPORT** in **MY DRIVE MODE**)

VGS (Virtual gear shift) disabled

The VGS function is automatically released under the following conditions:

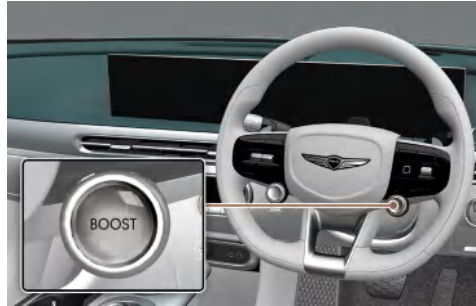
- The drive mode is changed to **ECO** or **SNOW** mode
- Drift mode is activated
- Boost mode is activated
- Smart Cruise Control is activated
- The speed limit is activated
- Remote Smart Parking Assist is activated
- Utility mode is activated
- Any problem occurs on the control system

Information

- A temporary communication error may disable the VGS function.
 - VGS is temporarily disabled when drive mode is changed to ECO, Smart Cruise Control, or speed limit system is activated during VGS operation. VGS is activated again when the drive mode is changed.
 - VGS may be partially limited when the vehicle is in specific conditions, such as fully charged high voltage battery or low SOC and driver safety functions like ESC are activated.
-

Boost mode

 if equipped



Controls motor to maximum performance when pressing **BOOST** button on the steering wheel remote control in situations where rapid acceleration is required.



CAUTION

The driver should hold the responsibility to safely drive and control the vehicle when using Boost mode.

Functional description and operating conditions

When **BOOST** button is pressed:

- When the vehicle accelerates, the motor overboost is activated.
- Boost mode is available for 10 seconds

Boost mode will turn off during operation or will not operated when:

- Gear in P (Park)/R (Reverse)/N (Neutral)
- Boost function is used for 10 seconds
- Motor malfunction
- Battery malfunction
- Low high voltage battery

Drift mode

DRIFT mode is a driving mode that automatically activates rear wheels (2WD) and brakes or Electronic Limited Slip Differential (e-LSD) to easily achieve drift with a small steering wheel angle and accelerator pedal.



WARNING

- The driver should hold the responsibility to safely drive and control the vehicle when using DRIFT mode.
 - Use the drift mode in wide and flat road surface without pedestrians, vehicles or obstacles for the safety of vehicles and pedestrians.
 - Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.
 - If you drive in DRIFT mode continuous, it can cause premature wear or damage to drive shafts and brake parts.
-

To activate drift mode

Pull and hold the left and right paddle shift levers for more than 3 seconds at the same time to switch to drift mode.

When activated DRIFT mode, the message 'DRIFT mode activated' and the DRIFT indicator will illuminate on the instrument cluster.

To activate the DRIFT mode, satisfy all of the following conditions:

- Gear in P (Park)
- The ESC OFF is in state 2
- The drive mode is SPORT mode
- Fully depress the brake pedal

Drift mode disabled

The DRIFT mode will be cancelled or limited when:

- If the driving mode is changed to a mode other than SPORT during DRIFT mode operation
- The ESC OFF stage 2 is released
- When pull and hold the left and right paddle shift levers for more than 3 seconds at the same times during DRIFT mode operation
- The power down warning (⚡) indicator or service warning (⚠) indicator is illuminate
- The ESC or e-LSD indicator is illuminated

Active Air Flap (AAF)



AAF system controls the air flap below the front bumper to cool the vehicle parts and improve energy efficiency.

- AAF system could be activated regardless of the vehicle condition (Parking, driving, charging, etc.).

AAF malfunction

The AAF system may not operate normally if the air flap is temporarily opened due to foreign factors or if the controller is contaminated by snow or rain, etc.

When the '**Check Active Air Flap system**' warning message appears on the cluster display, stop the vehicle in a safe place and check the status of the air flap.

Start the vehicle after performing the necessary work like foreign matter removal and waiting 10 minutes. If the warning message remains, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.



CAUTION

- Regardless of the warning message, if the air flaps are not in a symmetrical position, stop the vehicle and wait for 10 minutes and start the vehicle and inspect the air flap.
 - The AAF system is actuated by motors. Do not disturb actuation or apply force excessively. It may cause failure.
-

Road active noise control

 if equipped

Road Active Noise Control helps reduce noise caused whilst driving.

The system may not operate properly in the following conditions:

- Any of the window is open.
- Any of the door is open.
- The tailgate is open.
- Vehicle's microphone and speaker is blocked by loads.

NOTICE

If high temperature or high pressure steam is sprayed on the microphone, it may malfunction.

Active sound design

- Active Sound Design provides various virtual driving sounds based on the driving mode, motor RPM, and accelerator pedal.
- You can activate or deactivate the Active Sound Design function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select:
 - **Setup > Vehicle > Active Sound Design**
 - **Setup > Sound > Active Sound Design**
- Any unauthorised replacement of the vehicle's speaker and amplifier may cause Active Sound Design to malfunction.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Special driving conditions

Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving conditions are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud, and sand:

- Drive cautiously and allow for longer braking distances.
- Avoid abrupt braking or steering.
- If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, or sand, use the second gear. Accelerate slowly to avoid unnecessary wheel spin.
- Put sand, rock salt, tyre chains, or other non-slip materials under the wheels to provide additional traction, if stuck in ice, snow, or mud.



WARNING

Changing the tyre speed suddenly could cause the tyres to skid whilst driving on slippery surface. Be careful when driving on slippery surfaces.

Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a forward gear.

Try to avoid spinning the wheels, and do not race the vehicle.

To prevent reducer wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears.

Release the accelerator pedal whilst shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal whilst the reducer is in gear. Slowly spinning the wheels in forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that may free the vehicle.



WARNING

Always turn off the ESC system before rocking the vehicle. If the vehicle is stuck and excessive wheel spin occurs, the temperature in the tyres may increase very quickly. If the tyres become damaged, a tyre blow out or tyre explosion may occur - you and others may be injured. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are near the vehicle.

If you attempt to free the vehicle, the vehicle may overheat quickly, possibly causing a motor compartment fire or other damage. Try to avoid spinning the wheels as much as possible to prevent overheating of the tyres or the motor. DO NOT allow the vehicle to spin the wheels above 35 mph (56 km/h).

If you are still stuck after rocking the vehicle a few times, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid motor overheating, possible damage to the gear, and tyre damage. For more information, refer to the **Towing**.

Smooth cornering

Avoid braking or paddle shifter in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should be taken under gentle acceleration.

Driving at night

Night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight. Here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and keep more distance between you and other vehicles, because it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there are no street lights.
- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other drivers' headlights.
- Keep your headlights clean and properly aimed. Dirty or improperly aimed headlights can make it much more difficult to see at night.
- Avoid staring directly at the headlights of oncoming vehicles. You may be temporarily blinded, and it takes several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.

Driving in the rain

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous. When driving in the rain or on slick pavement:

- Slow down and allow extra following distance. A heavy rainfall makes it harder to see and increases the distance needed to stop your vehicle.
- Turn OFF your Cruise Control.
- Replace your windscreen wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windscreen.
- Make sure your tyres have enough tread. If your tyres do not have enough tread, making a quick stop on wet pavement may cause a skid and possibly lead to a collision. For more information, refer to the **Tyres and wheels**.
- Turn on your headlights to make it easier for others to see you. Using your headlights when using your windscreen wipers is required in some jurisdictions.
- Driving too fast through large puddles may affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.
- If you believe your brakes are wet, apply them several times whilst the vehicle is moving slowly.

Hydroplaning

If the road is wet enough and you are driving fast enough, your vehicle may have little or no contact with the road surface and actually ride on the water. The best advice is SLOW DOWN when the road is wet.

The risk of hydroplaning increases as the depth of tyre tread decreases. For more information, refer to the **Tyres and wheels**.

Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is not deeper than the bottom of the wheel hub. If you are not sure, turn around and find a different route.

Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because the brake performance can be reduced.

After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times whilst the vehicle is moving slowly.

Highway driving

Tyres

Adjust the tyre inflation, as specified. Under-inflation may overheat or damage the tyres. Do not install worn-out or damaged tyres, which may reduce traction or fail.

WARNING

Never over-inflate your tyres above the maximum inflation pressure, as specified on your tyres.

Coolant and high voltage battery

Driving at higher speeds on the highway consumes more electric energy and is less efficient than driving at a slower, more moderate speed. Maintain a moderate speed in order to conserve electric energy when driving on the highway.

Be sure to check both the coolant level and the electric energy level before driving.

Reducing the risk of rollover

Your multi-purpose passenger vehicle is defined as a Sports Utility Vehicle (SUV). Some SUVs have higher ground clearance and a narrower track to make them capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications. The specific design characteristics can give them a higher centre of gravity than ordinary passenger vehicles making them more likely to roll over if you make abrupt turns. SUVs have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. Always make sure you and your passengers wear your seat belts properly and securely. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a person wearing a seat belt.

There are steps that a driver can make to reduce the risk of a rollover. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres, do not load your vehicle with heavy cargo on the roof, and never modify your vehicle in any way.

WARNING

As with any Sports Utility Vehicle (SUV), failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover.

- Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.
 - Specific design characteristics (higher ground clearance, narrower track, etc.) give this vehicle a higher centre of gravity than ordinary vehicles.
 - An SUV is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional vehicles.
 - Avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres.
 - In a rollover crash, an unrestrained person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Make sure everyone in the vehicle is properly restrained.
-

Winter driving

Winter precautions

Check battery and cables

Winter temperatures may affect the battery performance. Inspect the battery and cables, as specified in Chapter 9. The battery charging level can be checked by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products or in a service station.

To prevent locks from freezing

Spray approved de-icing fluid or glycerin into key holes. When a lock opening is already covered with ice, spray approved de-icing fluid over the ice to remove it. When an internal part of a lock freezes, try to thaw it with a heated key. Carefully use the heated key to avoid an injury.

Use approved window washer antifreeze solution

Add window washer anti-freeze solution, as specified on the window washer container. Window washer anti-freeze solution is available from an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products, and most vehicle accessory outlets.

NOTICE

Do not use coolant or other types of anti-freeze solution, to prevent any damage to the vehicle paint.

Do not let your parking brake freeze

Under some conditions, your parking brake may freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or the brakes are wet. When there is the risk that your parking brake may freeze: temporarily apply the parking brake with the gear in P (Park), then block the rear wheels, and then release the parking brake.

Do not let ice and snow accumulate underneath

Under some conditions, snow and ice may build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. When driving in such conditions during the severe winter, check underneath the vehicle on a regular basis, to make sure that the front wheels and the steering components are not blocked.

Carry emergency equipment

In accordance with weather conditions, carry appropriate emergency equipment, whilst driving. Some of the items you may want to carry include tyre chains, tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, shovel, jumper cables, window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, blanket, etc.

Do not place objects or materials in the motor compartment

Putting objects or materials in the motor compartment may cause a motor failure. Such damage is not covered by the manufacturer's warranty.

Snow or icy conditions

You need to keep sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.

Apply the brakes gently. Speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are very hazardous practices. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause the vehicle to skid.

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to use snow tyres or to install tyre chains on your tyres.

Always carry emergency equipment. You may want to carry tyre chains, tow straps or chains, a flashlight, emergency flares, sand, a shovel, jumper cables, a window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, a blanket, etc.

Summer tyres

- Summer tyres are used to maximise the driving performance on dry roads.
- If the temperature is below 7 °C (45 °F) or you are driving on snowy or icy roads, the summer tyres lose their brake performance and traction as the tyre grip weakens significantly.

- If the temperature is below 7 °C (45 °F) or you are driving on snowy or icy roads, mount snow tyres or all-season tyres of the same size with your vehicle's standard tyre for safe driving. Both snow and all-season tyres have M+S markings.
- When using the M+S tyres, use tyres with the same tread produced by the same manufacturer for safe driving.
- When driving with the M+S tyres with the lower maximum allowable speed than that of the vehicle's standard summer tyre, be careful not to exceed the speed allowed for the M+S tyres.

Snow tyres

Use snow tyres when the road temperature is below 7 °C (45 °F).

Refer to the below chart, and mount the recommended snow tyre for your vehicle.

Standard tyre		Recommended snow tyre	
Tyre size	Wheel size	Tyre size	Wheel size
235/55 R19	8.0J x 19	235/55 R19	8.0J x 19
255/45 R20	8.5J x 20	255/45 R20	8.5J x 20
255/40 R21	8.5J x 21	255/40 R21	8.5J x 21

If you mount snow tyres on your vehicle, be sure to use the same inflation pressure as the original tyres. Mount snow tyres on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions.

The traction provided by snow tyres on dry roads may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tyres. Check with the tyre dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

WARNING

Snow tyres should be equivalent in size and type to the vehicle's standard tyres. Otherwise, the safety and handling of your vehicle may be adversely affected.

Tyre chains

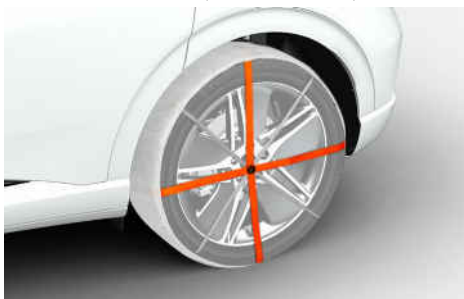


WARNING

The use of AutoSock (fabric snow chain) may adversely affect vehicle handling:

- Drive less than 20 mph (30 km/h) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.
- Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, sharp turns, and other road hazards, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.
- Avoid sharp turns or locked wheel braking.

AutoSock (fabric snow chain)



CAUTION

Since the sidewalls of radial tyres are thinner than other types of tyres, they may be damaged by mounting some types of tyre chains on them. Therefore, the use of snow tyres is recommended instead of snow chains. Do not mount tyre chains on vehicle equipped with aluminium wheels; snow chains may cause damage to the wheels. If snow chains must be used, use AutoSock (fabric snow chain). Damage to your vehicle caused by improper snow chain use is not covered by your vehicle manufacturer's warranty.

NOTICE

- Install AutoSock (fabric snow chain) only in pairs and on the rear tyres.
It should be noted that installing AutoSock (fabric snow chain) on the tyres will provide a greater driving force, but will not prevent side skids.
 - Do not install studded tyres without first checking local and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.
-

Chain Installation

When installing tyre chains, follow the manufacturer's instructions and mount them as tightly possible. Drive slowly (less than 20 mph (30 km/h) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit) with chains installed. If you hear the chains contacting the body or chassis, stop and tighten them. If they still make contact, slow down until the noise stops. Remove the tyre chains as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

When mounting snow chains, park the vehicle on level ground away from traffic. Turn on the vehicle's Hazard Warning Flasher and place a triangular emergency warning device behind the vehicle (if available). Always place the vehicle in P (Park), apply the EPB, and turn off the vehicle before installing snow chains.

NOTICE

When using AutoSock (fabric snow chain):

- Wrong size chains or improperly installed chains may damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels.
 - If you hear noise caused by chains contacting the body, retighten the chains to prevent contact with the vehicle body.
 - To prevent body damage, retighten the chains after driving 0.3-0.6 mi. (0.5-1.0 km).
-

Trailer towing

 if equipped

Towing a trailer requires experience. The combination of the vehicle and trailer itself is not as responsive as the vehicle by itself. Towing a trailer also requires additional equipment and adequate planning before a trip. Plan your trip according to the speed limits for towing a trailer that may differ from country to country. Always follow the posted speed limits whilst towing a trailer. Remember that driving your vehicle with a trailer is different from normal driving. Driving with a trailer causes changes to acceleration, braking, handling and stability, and energy economy. For safety of you and passengers, do not overload your vehicle or trailer. Refer to the table section in chapter 10 for the maximum towing capacity and payload.

This section contains important trailering recommendations and safety rules. Many of these recommendations are important considerations for the safety of you and your passengers. Be sure to read this section carefully and plan ahead before towing a trailer.



WARNING

To prevent serious injury or death:

- If you do not use the correct equipment and/or drive improperly, you can lose control of the vehicle when you are pulling a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the braking performance may be reduced. You and your passengers could be seriously or fatally injured. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section.
 - Before towing, make sure the total trailer weight, Gross Combination Weight (GCW), Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), Gross Axle Weight (GAW) and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.
-

NOTICE

- Do not install any equipment on the vehicle that blocks the license plate and cannot be easily removed or repositioned.
 - When a trailer is not used, detach it from the vehicle so that the license plate is visible.
-

If you decide to pull a trailer

- Consider using a sway control. You can ask a trailer towbar dealer about sway control.
- Do not do any towing with your vehicle during its first 1,200 mi. (2,000 km) in order to allow the motor to properly break in. Failure to heed this caution may result in serious motor or reducer damage.
- Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products for further information on additional requirements such as towing kit etc.
- Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) or the posted towing speed limit, whichever is lower, when towing a trailer. Note that towing speed limits differ by country. Always be aware of the posted towing speed limit.
- Do not exceed 45 mph (70 km/h) or the posted towing speed limit, whichever is lower on a long uphill grade.
- Trailer instability is more likely to occur when descending steep or long downhill grades. Pay close attention and slow your vehicle speed when descending a long

downhill grade. Allow more time and distance for braking and do not brake suddenly. Use the left paddle shifter  to reduce your vehicle speed and also to help prevent brakes from overheating.

- Carefully observe the weight and load limits provided in the following pages.

Towing load limits

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if you carefully observe the towing load limits, use proper equipment, and follow the towing guidelines. Check the load limits before driving.

Total trailer weight

Do not exceed the maximum allowable weight of the trailer, cargo, and everything in or on it.

For more information, refer to the **Reference weight and distance when towing a trailer**.

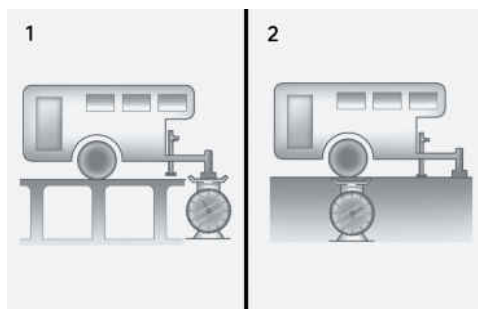


WARNING

Exceeding the load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a collision, resulting in serious injury or death.

Be sure to check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before driving.

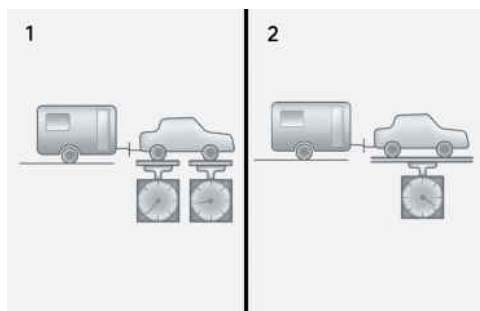
Trailer weight



1. Tongue load
2. Total trailer weight

Check if the total load is within limits at a public scale. If a public scale is not available, add the estimated weight of your cargo load to the weight of your trailer (as specified by your trailer manufacturer). In addition, measure the tongue load with an appropriate scale or tongue gauge, or estimate it based on the cargo distribution.

Tongue load



1. Gross axle weight
2. Gross vehicle weight

The tongue load is extremely important when setting up your trailer for towing with your vehicle. Excessive tongue load reduces front tyre traction and steering control. For example, too little tongue load can make the trailer unstable, causing the trailer to sway because the weight of the trailer is shifted to the rear. The tongue load measured at the towbar when fully loaded should be within 10-15 % of the total weight of the trailer. Be sure to check the load of your vehicle and trailer before driving. Check if the total load is within limits at a public scale. In addition, measure the tongue load with an appropriate scale or tongue gauge. If a public scale is not available, estimate the weight of your cargo load and add the value to the weight of your trailer (as specified by the trailer manufacturer). Refer to the trailer's manual for additional information. Never exceed the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) for your vehicle.

How to weigh the trailer loads at a public scale

Fully load the vehicle and trailer before going to the public scale. You and passengers should remain in the vehicle when performing the measurement.

- 1 Measure the front gross axle weight.
- 2 Measure the gross vehicle weight.
- 3 Measure the rear gross axle weight.
- 4 Measure the gross combined weight (vehicle and trailer).
- 5 Measure the hitched trailer weight.
- 6 Measure the unhitched trailer weight.

To calculate the tongue load, subtract (5) from (6).

After you have loaded your trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue separately, to see if the weights are proper. If not, you can correct them simply by moving some items around in the trailer.

WARNING

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Never load a trailer with more weight in the rear than in the front. The front should be loaded with about 60 % of the total trailer load. The rear should be loaded with about 40 % of the total trailer load.
 - Never exceed the maximum weight limits of the trailer or trailer towing equipment. Check weights and loading at a commercial scale or highway patrol office equipped with scales.
-

Trailer towing equipment

Towbars



- The bumpers on your vehicle are not intended for towbars. Do not attach rental towbars or other bumper-type towbars to them. Use only a frame mounted towbar that does not attach to the bumper.
- Any part of the rear license plate or lighting devices of the vehicle must not be obscured by the mechanical coupling device. If the rear number plate and/or lighting devices can be obscured partially by any part of the mechanical coupling device, mechanical coupling devices that cannot be easily removed or repositioned without use of any tools, except an easily operated (an effort not exceeding 15 lbf.ft (20 Nm) release key that is supplied by the manufacturer of the coupling device, are not permitted for use. Note that the mechanical coupling device that is fitted and not used must always be removed or repositioned if the rear number plate and/or rear lighting devices are obscured by any part of the mechanical coupling device.
- A Genesis Branded Vehicle trailer towbar accessory is available at an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

NOTICE

Make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets your country's regulations. Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends that you have all trailer towbar equipment installed at an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products with factory-recommended accessory parts that are specifically designed for your vehicle.

Safety chains

Always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer.

Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the towbar manufacturer or trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation when attaching safety chains. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your trailer. And, never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer brakes

Your country's regulations may require trailers to have their own braking system if the loaded weight of the trailer exceeds certain minimums that can vary from country to country. Read and follow the instructions for the trailer's braking system when it is installed, adjusted, and maintained properly. Never attempt to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic braking system.



WARNING

Do not use a trailer with its own brakes unless you are absolutely certain that you have properly set up the brake system. This is not a task for amateurs. Use an experienced, competent trailer shop for this work.

Driving with a trailer

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before driving, acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. Always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now longer and not nearly as responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check the trailer towbar and platform, safety chains, electrical connector(s), lights, tyres, and brakes.

During your trip, occasionally check the load is secure, and that the lights and trailer brakes are still working.

Following distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing distance

You need more passing distance when you are towing a trailer. Because of the increased vehicle length, you may need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

Backing up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, move your hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making turns

When you are turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer does not strike soft shoulders, kerbs, road signs, trees, or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden manoeuvres. Signal well in advance.

Turn signals

When you tow a trailer, your vehicle has to have a different turn signal flasher and extra wiring. The green arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly connected, the trailer lights will also flash to alert other drivers you're about to turn, change lanes, or stop.

When towing a trailer, the green arrows on your instrument panel flashes for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signals when, in fact, they are not. It's important to check occasionally to make sure the trailer bulbs are still working. Check the lights every time you disconnect and then reconnect the wires.



WARNING

Do not connect a trailer lighting system directly to your vehicle's lighting system. Use an approved trailer wiring harness. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle electrical system and/or personal injury. We recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products for assistance.

Driving on hills

Reduce speed and set to a higher regenerative braking system (paddle shifter) before you start down a long or steep downgrade. Otherwise, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get overheated and may not operate efficiently.

If your trailer weighs more than the maximum trailer weight without trailer brakes and you have reducer, drive in D (Drive) when towing a trailer.

Operating your vehicle in D (Drive) when towing a trailer can minimise heat build-up and extend the life of your reducer.

NOTICE

To prevent motor overheating:

If you tow a trailer with the maximum gross vehicle weight and maximum trailer weight, it can cause the motor to overheat. When driving in such conditions, allow the motor to idle until it cools down. You may proceed once the motor has cooled sufficiently.

NOTICE

When towing a trailer, your vehicle speed may be much slower than the general flow of traffic, especially when climbing an uphill grade. Use the right hand lane when towing a trailer on an uphill grade. Choose your vehicle speed according to the maximum posted speed limit for vehicles with trailers, the steepness of the grade, and your trailer weight.

Parking on hills

Generally, if you have a trailer attached to your vehicle, you should not park your vehicle on a hill.

If you ever have to park your trailer on a hill:

- 1 Pull the vehicle into the parking space. Turn the steering wheel in the direction of the kerb (left if headed down hill, right if headed up hill).
- 2 Shift the gear to P (Park).

- 3 Apply the parking brake and shut off the vehicle.
- 4 Place wheel chocks under the trailer wheels on the down hill side of the wheels.
- 5 Start the vehicle, hold the brakes, shift to N (Neutral), release the parking brake and slowly release the brakes until the trailer chocks absorb the load.
- 6 Reapply the brakes and parking brake.
- 7 Shift the gear to P (Park) when the vehicle is parked on an uphill grade and in R (Reverse) on a downhill.
- 8 Shut off the vehicle and release the vehicle brakes but apply the parking brake.



WARNING

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Do not get out of the vehicle without applying the parking brake firmly. If you have left the vehicle running, the vehicle may move suddenly. You and others may be seriously or fatally injured.
 - Do not apply the accelerator pedal to hold the vehicle on an uphill.
-

Driving the vehicle after it has been parked on a hill

- 1 With the gear in P (Park) or N (Neutral), apply your brakes and hold the brake pedal down whilst you:
 - Start your vehicle.
 - Shift into gear.
 - Release the parking brake.
- 2 Slowly remove your foot from the brake pedal.
- 3 Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
- 4 Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

Maintenance when towing a trailer

Your vehicle needs servicing more often when you regularly pull a trailer. Important items to pay particular attention to include reducer fluid, axle lubricant, and cooling system fluid. Brake condition is another important item to frequently check. If you are trailering, it is a good idea to review these items before you start your trip. Do not forget to maintain your trailer and towbar. Follow the maintenance schedule that accompanies your trailer and check it periodically. Preferably, conduct checking at the start of each day's driving. Most importantly, all towbar nuts and bolts must be tight.

NOTICE

To prevent vehicle damage:

- Due to higher load during trailer use, overheating may occur on hot days or during uphill driving. If the coolant gauge indicates over-heating, switch off the air conditioner and stop the vehicle in a safe area to cool down the vehicle.
 - When towing, check reducer fluid more frequently.
-

7. Driver assistance system

This chapter explains how to use the driver assistance features.

Information

- The illustrations are shown as a guide. The actual shape may differ from the illustration.
 - The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.
 - Due to the infotainment software version, the description of each function of the driver assistance system may differ from the owner's manual.
-

Driver assistance system information

Safety precautions

Be sure to read and understand the operation of each function before use.



WARNING

Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicles ahead and adjust your vehicle speed to the road conditions. Driver assistance system may not operate in all situations and cannot avoid all collisions.

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Never attempt to activate any driver assistance system by intentionally driving toward people, animals, objects, or other vehicles.
 - Always pay attention to road and traffic conditions whilst driving. Brake and steer as needed to avoid collisions. Do not solely rely on the driver assistance system.
 - Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.
 - Do not use driver assistance system when towing a trailer or using a towbar mounted carrier.
 - In case of an emergency whilst a driver assistance system is operating, control your vehicle appropriately. The braking and steering system of the vehicle operates normally even when the driver assistance system malfunctions.
-

CAUTION

- Driver assistance system may not operate properly when the detecting sensors are obscured or damaged. Before using the driver assistance system, refer to the safety precautions and location of the sensors.
- The braking and steering function of the driver assistance system operates properly only when the vehicle braking and steering system is operating normally. Before driving, check whether any braking or steering system warning light is illuminated and maintain normal operation through proper maintenance.
- Always be aware of your surroundings. Depending on the road and driving conditions, driver assistance system may warn the driver late, may not warn the driver, or operate unnecessarily.
- The driver should control the vehicle after a braking or steering event of a driver assistance system since the braking or steering automatically ends in a few seconds.
- Always be aware of your vehicle condition and surroundings even though a warning message or an audible warning does not appear or sound. When another system's warning message appears or audible warning sounds, some driver assistance system may not warn you.
- Keep the media volume to an appropriate level, and always be aware of the vehicle condition. You may not hear the audible warning of the driver assistance system if the surrounding environment is too noisy.
- Driver assistance system may not operate temporarily if there is interference from strong electromagnetic waves.
- Driver assistance system may not operate for a few seconds right after your vehicle is started or when the sensor or the infotainment system is being initialized.
- Driver assistance system may not operate properly when multiple switches or buttons are operated at the same time. Operate each switches and buttons properly in accordance with the function operation of each system.

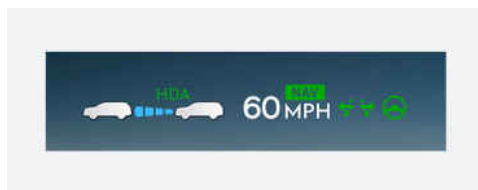
Driver assistance system warnings and indicators

The driver assistance system warnings and indicators appear on the cluster display.

- The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.
- For more information, refer to the **Cluster display view modes**.

Status indicators

The driver assistance system operating status appears at the top area of the cluster display.



The Manual Speed Limit Assist, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist, Lane Keeping Assist, Smart Cruise Control, Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control, Lane Following Assist, and

Highway Driving Assist indicator always appears when each function is operating. For more information, refer to each system information in this chapter.

Driving Assist view

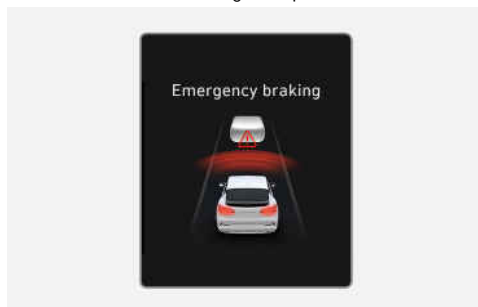
The current status of the driver assistance system appears when the Driving Assist view is selected from the cluster display view modes.

- The operation status of driver assistance system also appears on the Head-Up Display (if equipped). For more information, refer to the **Head-Up Display (HUD)**.

System warnings

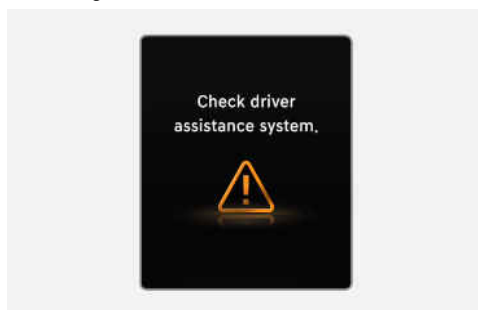
The warning messages of driver assistance system appears on the cluster display.

Warning example



The warning lights of each operating system (Forward Safety ⚠, Emergency Steering ⚠, Lane Safety ⚠, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist ⚠, and Inattentive Driving ⚠ warning light) also illuminates on the instrument cluster. For more information, refer to each system information in this chapter.

System malfunction warning

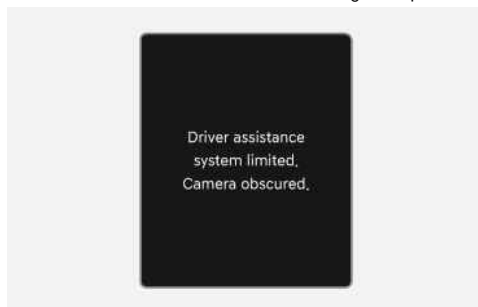


When the driver assistance system is not working properly, a warning message appears, the master ⚠ warning light illuminates, and the malfunctioning system's warning light illuminates on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

- You can check the warning message in the Normal view mode on the cluster display.

System disabled warning

Front view camera obscured warning example



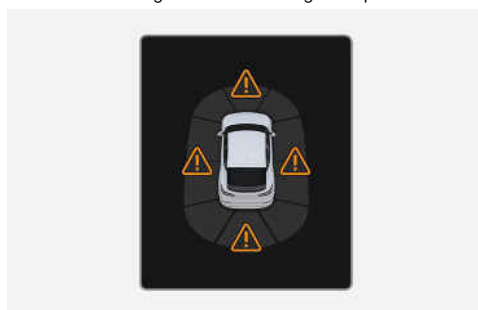
When the front windscreen where the front view camera is located, radar cover, bumper (if equipped), or ultrasonic sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable the driver assistance system.

If this occurs, a warning message and the master  warning light, and the disabled system's warning light appears on the instrument cluster, but it is not a malfunction. The system operates properly when snow, rain or foreign material is removed. Always keep the sensors clean.

- You can check the warning message in the Normal view mode on the cluster display.

If the system does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Parking Distance Warning example



- When the Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist, Parking Distance Warning, and Reverse Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist is operating, if the function is not operating properly or the ultrasonic sensor is obscured, the  warning light may illuminate in the direction of the corresponding sensor.

WARNING

- Even though the warning message or warning light does not appear on the instrument cluster, driver assistance system may not properly operate.
 - Driver assistance system may not operate properly in open areas where no objects are detected (for example, open terrain, empty parking lot, etc.) or when the detecting sensors are obscured right after the vehicle is turned on.
 - With the condition of blockage or malfunctioning maintained, driver assistance system may not operate properly even if the vehicle is restarted.
-

Driver assistance system settings

System settings

With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance** from the settings menu in the infotainment system to set whether to use each function.



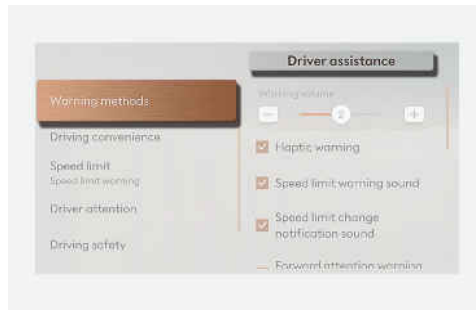
- To see the driver assistance system settings in a list, press the  button.
- Due to the infotainment software version, the description of each function of the driver assistance system may differ from the owner's manual. In this case, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.
- When the vehicle is restarted, each system maintains its last setting unless stated otherwise.

NOTICE

- For your safety, only change the settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.
 - Always check the settings of the driver assistance system before driving.
 - For your safety, read and familiarize yourself with each system before setting.
-

Warning methods

The warning methods can be set by selecting the  icon from the infotainment system.



- **Warning volume:** The warning volume can be adjusted.
- **Haptic warning:** The steering wheel vibration can be set.
- **Speed limit warning sound:** The Speed Limit Warning Sound can be turned on or off.
- **Speed limit change notification sound:** The Speed Limit Change Notification Sound can be turned on or off.
- **Forward attention warning sound:** The Forward attention warning sound can be turned off separately.
- **Lane safety warning sound:** You can turn on or off the Lane Safety warning sound when the **Haptic warning** is on.
- **Blind-spot safety warning sound:** Blind-Spot Safety Warning Sound can be turned off separately.
- **Driving safety priority:** Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when the driver assistance system warning sounds.
- **Parking safety priority:** Your vehicle lowers all other audio volumes when a parking assist view is active.

NOTICE

- If you change the warning methods, the warning methods of other driver assistance system may change.
 - When the vehicle is restarted, the warning methods maintains its last setting.
 - The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.
 - The **Lane safety warning sound** can only be set when the **Haptic warning** is on.
 - Even if **Speed limit warning sound** is turned off, **Speed limit warning sound** turns back on automatically when the vehicle is restarted.
-

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)

 if equipped

FCA helps avoid possible collision by detecting and monitoring a vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist ahead or around your vehicle whilst driving. FCA warns the driver with a warning message, warning sound, etc., or assists with braking or steering (if equipped) your vehicle according to the surroundings.

CAUTION

When driving at night, the motorcyclist recognition performance is degraded, so FCA may be temporarily limited or may not work.

NOTICE

A motorcyclist refers to the driver riding the following powered two-wheeler.

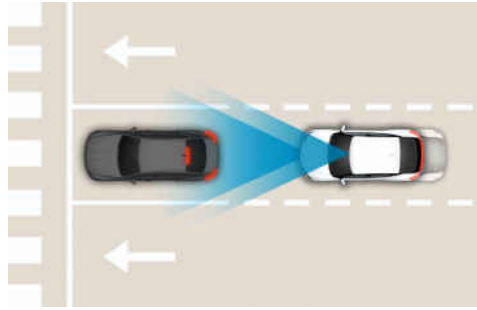
- Mopeds with 50 cc and restricted top speeds
- Motorcycles

FCA operation



- When FCA operates, Forward Safety  warning light or Emergency Steering  warning light blinks, a warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds and the steering wheel vibrates.
- Press the hazard warning flasher to turn off the audible warning of the collision warning or emergency braking.
- If the vehicle stops due to collision warning, emergency braking, or emergency steering (if equipped), a warning message appears on the instrument cluster.

Basic function



Whilst driving, FCA Basic function helps avoid a collision according to the speed of your vehicle and the vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist ahead by warning or applying emergency braking.

- Vehicle or motorcyclist:
 - The function operates with a strong braking power when there is a risk of collision, the vehicle ahead is moving, and your vehicle speed is between about 6-80 mph (10-130 km/h) or the vehicle ahead is not moving, and your vehicle speed is between about 6-47 mph (10-75 km/h).
If FCA judges that avoiding a collision is difficult even by changing the driving lane, braking is assisted more earlier when your vehicle speed is between about 6-62 mph (10-100 km/h). (if equipped)
 - The function operates with a weak braking power or a warning appears when there is a risk of collision and your vehicle speed is between about 6-125 mph (10-200 km/h).
- Pedestrian or cyclist:
 - Emergency braking may operate when there is a risk of collision and your vehicle speed is between about 6-40 mph (10-65 km/h).
 - Collision warning may operate when there is a risk of collision and your vehicle speed is between about 6-53 mph (10-85 km/h).

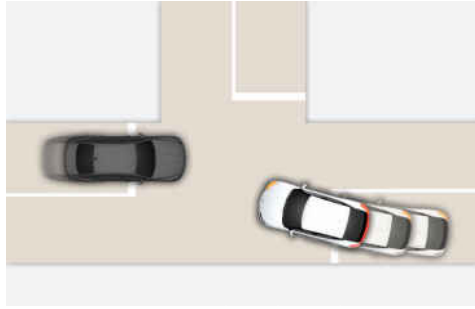
Braking control ends about 2 seconds after your vehicle is stopped following an emergency braking event. For your safety, the driver should depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.



CAUTION

The function operation speed range may decrease due to the front traffic condition or the surroundings of the vehicle.

Junction Turning function



When turning right at a crossroad with the turn signal on, Junction Turning function helps avoid a collision with an oncoming vehicle or motorcyclist in an adjacent lane by warning or applying emergency braking.

The function operates when:

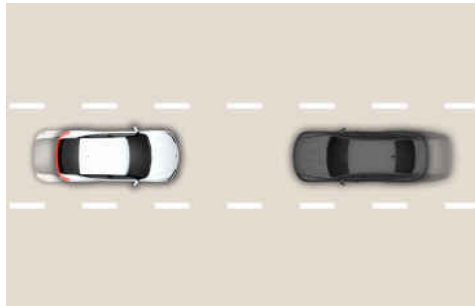
- Your vehicle speed is between about 6-19 mph (10-30 km/h)
- Oncoming vehicle speed is between about 19-44 mph (30-70 km/h)
- Oncoming motorcyclist or cyclist speed is between about 9-44 mph (15-70 km/h)

Braking control ends about 2 seconds after your vehicle is stopped following an emergency braking event. For your safety, the driver should depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.

NOTICE

When turning left at an intersection, braking is assisted to reduce or avoid collisions if there is a collision risk with a cyclist approaching at the speed of 9-12 mph (15-20 km/h) from the opposite side.

Direct Oncoming function



When there is a risk of collision with a vehicle or motorcyclist approaching from the opposite side, Direct Oncoming function helps reduce the speed by warning or applying emergency braking.

The function operates when:

- Your vehicle speed* is between about 19-80 mph (30-130 km/h)

- Oncoming vehicle or motorcyclist speed is about above 6 mph (10 km/h)

*: The function warns the driver if there is a risk of collision, even when your vehicle speed is between about 6-80 mph (10-130 km/h).

Braking control ends about 2 seconds after your vehicle is stopped following an emergency braking event. For your safety, the driver should depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.



CAUTION

If your vehicle or the oncoming vehicle or motorcyclist is not driving straight, Direct Oncoming function warning and control may be late or may not operate.

Junction Crossing function

 if equipped



When crossing an intersection, Junction Crossing function helps avoid a collision with an oncoming vehicle on the left or right side by warning or applying emergency braking.

The function operates when:

- Your vehicle speed is between about 6-34 mph (10-55 km/h)
- Crossing vehicle speed is between about 6-25 mph (10-40 km/h)
- The function warns the driver if there is a risk of collision, even when crossing vehicle speed is between about 6-37 mph (10-60 km/h)

Braking control ends about 2 seconds after your vehicle is stopped following an emergency braking event. For your safety, the driver should depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.



CAUTION

If the collision angle with the crossing vehicle is beyond a certain range, Junction Crossing function warning and control may be late or may not operate.

Lane-Change Oncoming function

 if equipped



When changing lanes, Lane-Change Oncoming function helps avoid a collision with an oncoming vehicle or motorcyclist by warning or assisting the driver's steering.

The function operates when:

- Your vehicle speed is between about 25-90 mph (40-145 km/h)
- Oncoming vehicle or motorcyclist speed is above about 6 mph (10 km/h)
- Relative speed with your vehicle and the oncoming vehicle or motorcyclist is about below 124 mph (200 km/h)
- When both lane markings are detected



WARNING

Lane-Change Oncoming function only operates when both lane markings are detected.



CAUTION

If there is a risk of collision with a surrounding vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist due to emergency steering, only a collision warning is provided.

Lane-Change Side function

 if equipped





When changing lanes, Lane-Change Side function helps avoid a collision with the vehicle or motorcyclist ahead in the next lane by warning or assisting the driver's steering.

The function operates when:

- Your vehicle speed is between about 25-90 mph (40-145 km/h)
- When both lane markings are detected



WARNING

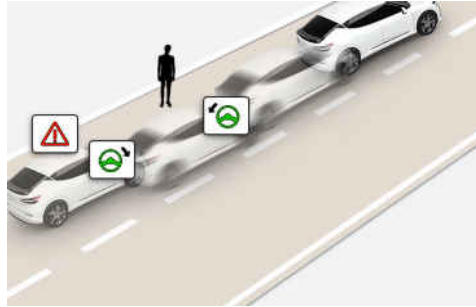
- Lane-Change Side function does not operate if the vehicle or motorcyclist in the next lane is not moving.
 - The detection range is set to a standard road width. On a narrow or wide road, the Lane-Change Side function may detect a vehicle or motorcyclist two lanes over or may not detect a vehicle or motorcyclist in the next lane properly.
 - Lane-Change Side function may be cancelled under the following circumstances:
 - Your vehicle enters the next lane by a certain distance.
 - You steer away from the collision risk.
 - The steering wheel is sharply steered.
 - The brake pedal is depressed.
 - FCA Emergency braking is operating.
 - After Lane-Change Side function operation or lane change, you must drive to the centre of the lane. Lane-Change Side function does not operate if the vehicle is driven close to one side of the lane.
-

NOTICE

- If there is an approaching vehicle or motorcyclist in the rear side, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror also illuminates.
 - If there is a risk of additional collision due to emergency steering, Lane-Change Side function only provides a collision warning.
 - If the driver's seat is on the left side, collision warning operates when you turn left, and when it is on the right side, the system operates when you turn right.
-

Evasive Steering Assist function

 if equipped



When there is a risk of collision with a subject ahead in the same lane, Evasive Steering Assist function helps avoid a collision by warning or assisting the driver's steering.

Emergency steering (Driver steering assist)

If there is a risk of collision with a vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist in front, the steering is assisted to help prevent collision when the driver steers the vehicle to avoid collision.

The function operates when:

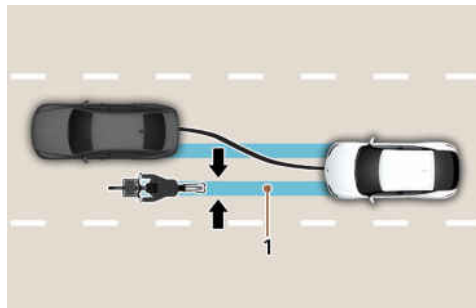
- Your vehicle speed is between about 25-53 mph (40-85 km/h)

Emergency steering (Evasive steering assist)

If there is high risk of collision with a pedestrian or cyclist in front, and the vehicle speed to operate emergency braking has exceeded, the steering is assisted to help prevent collision when there is space to avoid collision in the driving lane.

The function operates when:

- Your vehicle speed is between about 40-47 mph (65-75 km/h)
- Pedestrian or cyclist is moving in the same direction as your vehicle, or in the opposite direction
- When both lane markings are detected



1. Operating area of Evasive Steering Assist function

CAUTION

- The steering wheel may turn automatically when emergency steering is operating.
- Emergency steering automatically cancels when risk factors disappear. If necessary, the driver must steer the vehicle.
- Emergency steering may not operate or may cancel during operation if the steering wheel is held tight or steered in the opposite direction.
- When steering is assisted to avoid collision with a vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist, Evasive Steering Assist may be cancelled if a collision with other object (vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist) is expected.
- Evasive Steering Assist may not operate if space to avoid collision in the driving lane is insufficient.

FCA settings



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving safety** from the settings menu in the infotainment system to set whether to use each function.

- When **Forward safety** is selected, Basic function, Junction Turning function and Direct Oncoming function operate. When **Forward safety** is deselected, the functions turn off. The Forward Safety  warning light illuminates on the instrument cluster.
- Select **Forward safety warning timing** to change the initial warning activation time for FCA. The warning time can be set to either **Standard** (or **Normal**) or **Late**.
 - **Standard** (or **Normal**): Use in Normal driving conditions. If the Forward Safety Warning Timing seems sensitive, change it to Late.
 - **Late**: FCA warning appears more slowly.
- The setting for **Forward safety warning timing** does not apply for **Forward/Side safety**.
- When **Forward cross-traffic safety** is selected, Junction Crossing function operates. **Forward safety** should be activated for **Forward cross-traffic safety** to activate. (if equipped)
- When **Forward/Side safety** is selected, Lane-Change Oncoming function, Lane-Change Side function, and Evasive Steering Assist function operate. When **Forward/Side safety** is deselected, the functions turn off. The Emergency Steering  warning light illuminates on the instrument cluster. (if equipped)

The driver can monitor FCA on/off status from the Settings menu. If the Forward Safety  or Emergency Steering  (if equipped) warning light remains on when **Forward**

safety or **Forward/Side safety** is on, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.



WARNING

When the vehicle is restarted, **Forward safety**, **Forward cross-traffic safety**, and **Forward/Side safety** is always selected. If you deselect to turn off the function, FCA cannot assist you. The driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.

Warning methods

You can set the following Warning methods for FCA:

- Warning volume
- Haptic warning
- Driving safety priority

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system settings**.



WARNING

Take the following precautions when using FCA:

- Only change the settings after parking your vehicle at a safe location.
 - The driver has the responsibility to control the vehicle. Do not solely depend on FCA. Rather, maintain a safe distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce driving speed or to stop the vehicle.
 - FCA does not operate in all situations or cannot avoid all collisions.
 - FCA may stop working, may not operate properly, or may operate unnecessarily depending on the road conditions and the surroundings. Always check your surroundings to prevent dangerous situations.
 - Never deliberately operate FCA on people, objects, etc. It may cause serious injury or death.
 - FCA may not operate if the driver depresses the brake pedal to avoid a collision.
 - During FCA operation, passengers and loose objects in the vehicle may shift and injure passengers. Always have the seat belt on and keep loose objects secured.
 - If any other system's warning message appears or audible warning is generated, FCA warning message may not appear and audible warning may not be generated.
 - You may not hear the warning sound of FCA if the surrounding is noisy. Adjust other sounds in the vehicle to an appropriate level and always be aware of your surroundings.
 - Even if there is a problem with FCA, the vehicle's basic braking and steering functions normally.
 - During emergency braking, braking control by FCA automatically cancels when the driver excessively depresses the accelerator pedal or sharply steers the vehicle.
-

CAUTION

- Depending on the condition of the vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist in front and the surroundings, the speed range or detection range to operate FCA may reduce. FCA operation may be limited or may not operate.
 - FCA operates under certain conditions by judging the risk level based on the condition of the oncoming vehicle, motorcyclist, or cyclist, driving direction, speed and surroundings.
 - FCA may be limited or disabled if the vehicle speed is too fast or the speed difference with the other vehicle, motorcyclist, or cyclist is large.
 - When a collision with a surrounding vehicle is expected, Lane-Change Oncoming, Lane-Change Side, and Evasive Steering Assist may not assist you with steering but only warn you of a collision (if equipped).
-

NOTICE

In a situation where collision is imminent, braking may be assisted by FCA when braking is insufficient by the driver.

FCA malfunction and limitations

FCA malfunction

When FCA or related component malfunctions, a warning message, the Master  warning light, and the Forward Safety  or Emergency Steering  warning light appears on the instrument cluster. When the detecting sensors are obscured, the system may be temporarily limited or disabled. The system operates properly when foreign material is removed from the sensors. If the system does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system warnings and indicators**.

Detecting sensors

FCA uses the following sensors:

- Front view camera
- Front radar
- Front corner radar (if equipped)
- Rear corner radar (if equipped)

For more information, refer to the **Sensor information**.

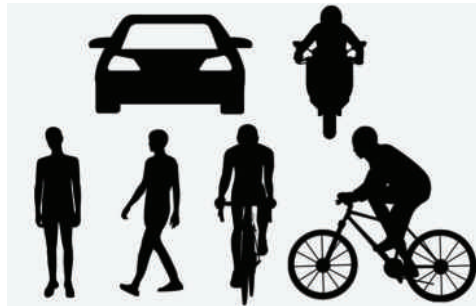
FCA limitations

FCA may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- Only part of the vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian or cyclist is detected
- The vehicle or motorcyclist in front is a bus, heavy truck, truck with an unusually shaped cargo, trailer, etc.
- The vehicle or motorcycle in front has no tail lights, tail lights are located unusually, etc.

- In low light conditions, the tail lights of the front vehicle or motorcycle are turned off or not bright.
- The rear of the front vehicle is small or the vehicle does not look normal, such as when the vehicle is tilted, overturned, or the side of the vehicle is visible, etc.
- The front vehicle's ground clearance is low or high
- A vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist suddenly cuts in front
- A material is near that reflects very well on the front radar, such as a guardrail, nearby vehicle, etc.
- The cyclist in front is on a bicycle made of material that does not reflect on the front radar
- The vehicle or motorcyclist in front is detected late
- The vehicle or motorcyclist in front is suddenly blocked by an obstacle
- The vehicle or motorcyclist in front suddenly changes lane or suddenly reduces speed
- The vehicle or motorcyclist in front is at an angle to your vehicle
- The vehicle in front is covered with snow
- You are departing or returning to the lane
- Your vehicle is unstably driving
- You are on a curve or a roundabout and the vehicle or motorcyclist in front is not detected
- You are continuously driving in a circle
- The vehicle in front has an unusual shape
- The vehicle in front is driving uphill or downhill
- The pedestrian or cyclist is not fully detected, for example, if the pedestrian is leaning over or is not fully walking upright
- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing or equipment that makes it difficult to detect
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is moving very quickly
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is short or is posing a low posture
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is moving unsteadily or intersected with the driving direction
- There is a group of pedestrians, cyclists or a large crowd in front
- The pedestrian or cyclist is difficult to distinguish from the surroundings (wearing clothing that easily blends into the background, similarly shaped structure, etc.)
- You are passing by a pedestrian, cyclist, traffic signs, structures, etc., near the intersection
- You are driving in following places:
 - Driving through steam, smoke or shadow
 - Driving through a tunnel or iron bridge
 - Driving in vast areas where there are few vehicles or structures (for example, desert, meadow, suburb, etc.)
 - Driving in a parking lot

- Driving through a tollgate, construction area, unpaved road, partial paved road, uneven road, speed bumps, etc.
- Driving near areas containing metal substances, such as a construction zone, railroad, etc.
- Driving on an incline road, curved road, etc.
- Driving through a roadside with trees or streetlights
- Driving through a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown
- Driving in an area where there is interference by electromagnetic waves, such as strong radio waves or electrical noise
- The vehicle moves unstably or vibrates excessively
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.
- Your vehicle is installed with a snow chain, or different size wheel.



The illustration above shows the image the front view camera and front radar are capable of detecting as a vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist.

Junction Crossing, Lane-Change Oncoming, Lane-Change Side, Evasive Steering Assist function

FCA may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- Driving on a highway (or motorway) ramp
- Driving on a road where the guardrail or wall is in double structure
- The other vehicle drives very close behind your vehicle, or the other vehicle passes by your vehicle in close proximity
- The speed of the other vehicle is very fast that it passes by your vehicle in a short time
- Your vehicle passes by the other vehicle
- Your vehicle has started at the same time as the vehicle next to you and has accelerated
- The vehicle in the next lane moves two lanes away from you, or when the vehicle two lanes away moves to the next lane from you
- The following object is detected:
 - A small motorcycle or bicycle
 - A vehicle such as a flat trailer

- A big vehicle such as a bus or truck
- A small moving obstacle such as a pedestrian, animal, shopping cart or a baby stroller
- A vehicle with low height such as a sports car
- The lane is difficult to distinguish because:
 - There is a kerb or road edges without a lane
 - The lane markings are complicated or a structure substitutes for the lines, such as a construction area
 - The lane is difficult to see due to foreign material, such as rain, snow, dust, sand, oil and water puddles
 - The lane is very wide or narrow
 - There are road markings, such as zigzag lanes, crosswalk markings and road signs
 - There are more than two lane markings on the road
 - The lane number increases or decreases, or the lane markings are crossing
 - The colour of the lane marking is not distinguishable from the road due to wet road, oil, etc.
 - There are markings on the road near the lane or the markings on the road looks similar to the lane markings
 - The shadow is on the lane marking by a median strip, trees, guardrail, noise barriers, etc.
 - The lane suddenly disappears, such as at the intersection
 - The distance to the front vehicle is extremely short or the vehicle in front is driving is blocking the lane marking

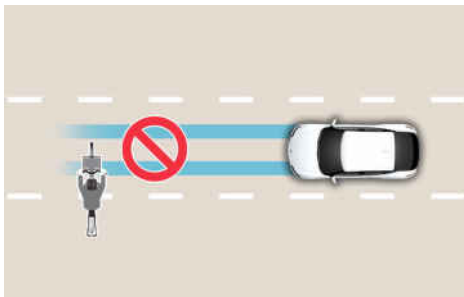
Limitations of Evasive Steering Assist

Evasive Steering Assist function may not work properly in the following situations when:

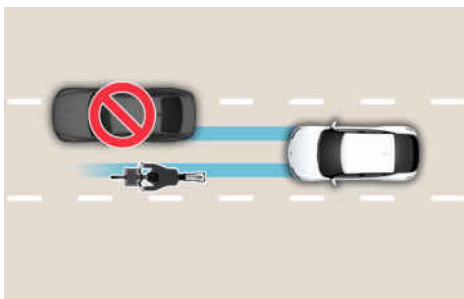
- The pedestrian or cyclist is positioned outside of the operating area.



- The pedestrian or cyclist is moving laterally.



- The pedestrian or cyclist is positioned inside of the operating area, but there is not enough space available for evasive steering.



WARNING

- **Driving on a curved road**



FCA may not detect a vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist in front of you when driving on curved roads, adversely affecting the performance of the sensors. This may result in no warning, braking assist or steering assist (if equipped) when necessary.

FCA may detect a vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian or cyclist in the next lane or outside the lane when driving on a curved road. If this occurs, FCA may unnecessarily warn the driver, assist emergency braking or emergency steering (if equipped).

Always check the traffic conditions around the vehicle. If necessary, steer your vehicle and depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed.

- **Driving on an inclined road**

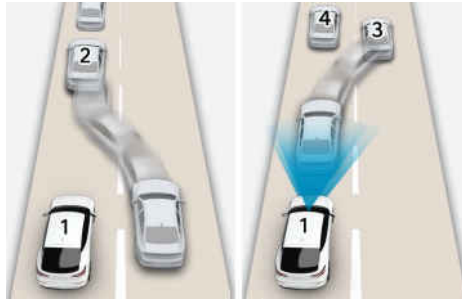


FCA may not detect a vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist in front of you whilst driving uphill or downhill, adversely affecting the performance of the sensors. This may result in no warning, braking assist or steering assist (if equipped) when necessary.

Also, vehicle speed may rapidly decrease when a vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian or cyclist ahead is suddenly detected.

Always have your eyes on the road whilst driving uphill or downhill and if necessary, steer your vehicle and depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed.

- **Changing lanes**

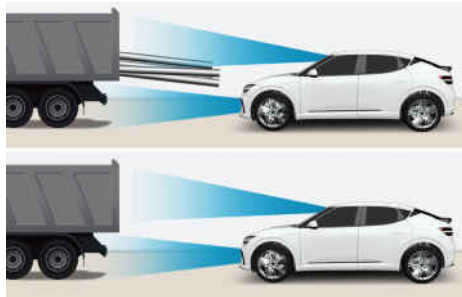


When the vehicle **2** moves into your lane from an adjacent lane, it cannot be detected by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range. FCA may not immediately detect the vehicle when the vehicle changes lanes abruptly.

When the vehicle **3** in front of you merges out of the lane, FCA may not immediately detect the vehicle **4** that is now in front of you.

Always check the traffic conditions around the vehicle. If necessary, steer your vehicle and depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed.

- **Detecting vehicle**



If the vehicle in front of you has cargo that extends rearward from the cab, or when the vehicle in front of you has higher ground clearance, additional special attention is required.

In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, steer your vehicle and depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance. Always check the traffic conditions around the vehicle.

- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off FCA for safety reasons.
- FCA may operate if an object that is similar in shape or characteristics to a vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist is detected.
- FCA does not operate on bicycles, or smaller wheeled objects, such as luggage bags, shopping carts, or strollers.
- FCA may be temporarily disabled if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.
- FCA may not operate for about 15 seconds after the vehicle is started or the front view camera is initialized.

For more information on limitations in the driver's blind spot areas and precautions for the rear corner radars, refer to the **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)**.

Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)

Whilst driving over a certain speed, LKA detects lane markings (or road edges) and may warn you if your vehicle leaves the lane without using the turn signal and may assist with steering to prevent your vehicle departing from its travel lane.

Turning LKA on/off

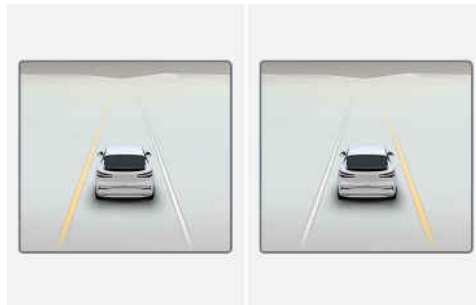
With the vehicle on, press and hold the Lane Driving Assist  button located on the steering wheel to turn the function on or off.



- When the operating condition of LKA are met, the instrument cluster is illuminated with a green .
- When the operating conditions are not met, a grey  indicator is illuminated.
- When LKA is turned off, the  indicator turns yellow.

If the indicator remains illuminated after vehicle inspection, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

LKA operation



To warn the driver that the vehicle is departing from the projected lane in front without activating the turn signal, the green  indicator light blinks on the instrument cluster, and the steering wheel makes adjustments to keep vehicle inside the lane.

If the vehicle is departing from the projected lane, an additional audible warning sounds and the steering wheel vibrates.

LKA operates under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle speed is about 40-120 mph (60-200 km/h)

- When the lane markings (or road edges) are detected

Precautions

- You can steer your vehicle even when steering is assisted by LKA.
- It may require more or less force to turn the steering wheel when LKA is providing steering assistance.
- When lane markings (or road edges) are detected, the lane lines on the cluster display changes from grey to white.
- The lane lines displayed on the cluster display may differ from the actual lane lines.
- When the lane markings (or road edges) are detected and Motorway Lane Change Assist is on, the lane lines on the cluster display may change to green. (if equipped)
- For more information on instrument cluster settings, refer to the **Cluster display control**.



WARNING

- The steering wheel may not be assisted if the steering wheel is held very tight or the steering wheel is steered over a certain degree.
- LKA does not operate at all times. It is the responsibility of the driver to safely steer the vehicle and to maintain the vehicle in its lane.
- The hands-off warning message may appear late depending on road conditions. Always have your hands on the steering wheel whilst driving.
- If the steering wheel is held very lightly, the hands-off warning message may appear because LKA may not recognise that the driver has their hands on the steering wheel.
- If you attach objects to the steering wheel, the hands-off warning may not work properly.



CAUTION

If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel for several seconds, the warning message appears on the cluster display, and an audible warning sounds in stages.

LKA settings

Lane safety

With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving safety > Lane safety** from the settings menu in the infotainment system to set whether to use each function.

If **Lane safety** is selected, LKA automatically assists the driver's steering when lane departure is detected to help prevent the vehicle from moving out of its lane. If **Lane safety** is deselected, LKA turns off and the yellow  indicator light appears on the instrument cluster.

- If you press and hold the Lane Driving Assist  button and turn off LKA, **Lane safety** also turns off.



WARNING

- When the vehicle is restarted, LKA always turns on and **Lane safety** is automatically selected.
 - Always be aware of the surroundings. If **Lane safety** is deselected, LKA does not assist you.
-

Warning methods

You can set the following Warning methods for LKA:

- Warning volume
- Haptic warning
- Lane Safety Audible Warning
- Driving safety priority

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system settings**.

LKA malfunction and limitations

LKA malfunction

When LKA or related component malfunctions, a warning message, the Master  warning light and the yellow Lane Safety  indicator light appears on the instrument cluster. When the detecting sensors are obscured, the system may be temporarily limited or disabled. The system operates properly when foreign material is removed from the sensors. If the system does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system warnings and indicators**.

Detecting sensors

LKA uses the following sensor:

- Front view camera

For more information, refer to the **Sensor information** and **FCA limitations**.

LKA limitations

LKA may not operate properly or may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The lane is contaminated or difficult to detect because:
 - The Lane markings (or road edge) are covered with rain, snow, dirt, oil, etc.
 - The colour of The Lane marking (or road edge) is not distinguishable from The road
 - There are markings (or road edges) on The road near The Lane or The markings (or road edges) on The road look similar to The Lane markings (or road edge)
 - The Lane marking (or road edge) is indistinct or damaged
 - The shadow is on The Lane marking (or road edge) by a median strip, trees, guardrail, noise barriers, etc.
- The lane number increases or decreases, or the lane markings (or road edges) are crossing
- There are more than two lane markings (or road edges) on the road

- The lane markings (or road edges) are complicated or a structure substitutes for the lines, such as a construction area
- There are road markings, such as zigzag lanes, crosswalk markings and road signs
- The lane suddenly disappears, such as at the intersection
- The lane (or road width) is very wide or narrow
- There is a road edge without a lane
- There is a boundary structure in the roadway, such as a tollgate, sidewalk, kerb, etc.
- The distance to the front vehicle is extremely short or the vehicle in front is covering the lane marking (or road edge)



WARNING

- The driver has the responsibility to safely drive and control the vehicle. Do not solely rely on LKA and drive dangerously.
 - The operation of LKA can be cancelled or not work properly depending on road conditions and surroundings. Always be cautious whilst driving.
 - Refer to **LKA malfunction and limitations** if the lane is not detected properly.
 - When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off LKA for safety reasons.
 - If the vehicle is driven at high speed, the steering wheel may not be controlled. The driver must always follow the speed limit when using LKA.
 - If any other system's warning message appears or audible warning is generated, LKA warning message may not appear and audible warning may not be generated.
 - You may not hear the warning sound of LKA if the surrounding is noisy.
 - If you attach objects to the steering wheel, steering may not be assisted properly.
 - LKA may not operate for about 15 seconds after the vehicle is started or the front view camera is initialized.
 - LKA does not operate when:
 - Within a certain period of time after turning on or off the turn signal or hazard warning flasher.
 - The vehicle is not driven in the centre of the lane when LKA is turned on or right after changing a lane.
 - Electronic Stability Control (ESC) or Vehicle Stability Management (VSM) is activated.
 - The vehicle is driven on a sharp curve.
 - Vehicle speed is below 35 mph (55 km/h) or above 130 mph (210 km/h).
 - The vehicle makes sudden lane changes.
 - The vehicle brakes suddenly.
 - Driving stability may decrease when the vehicle is overloaded or the weight distribution is uneven. This may degrade the LKA performance.
-

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)

BCA detects approaching vehicles in the driver's blind spot areas and warn you of a possible collision with a warning light, warning sound, and warning message. If there is a collision risk when exiting a parallel space, BCA may assist with braking your vehicle to help avoid a collision.

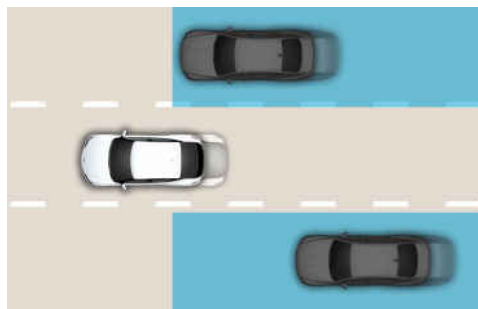
BCA operation



BCA warns the driver that warning or emergency braking is activated as follows:

- The warning light on the outside rearview mirror (or digital side mirror) illuminates
- The warning message appears on the cluster display
- An audible warning sounds
- Head-Up Display (HUD) illuminates (if equipped)
- The steering wheel vibrates

Collision warning (whilst driving)



When a vehicle is detected in the rear blind spot area, the warning light illuminates on the outside rearview mirror (or digital side mirror), a warning appears on the cluster display, and HUD (if equipped) under following conditions:

- Your vehicle speed: above 12 mph (20 km/h)
- Vehicle in the blind spot area: above 7 mph (10 km/h)

Collision warning operates when the turn signal is turned on in the direction of the detected vehicle. The warning light blinks on the outside rearview mirror (or digital side mirror), a warning appears on the cluster and HUD (if equipped), and an audible warning sounds under following conditions:

- Your vehicle speed: above 24 mph (40 km/h)
- Vehicle in the blind spot area: above 7 mph (10 km/h)



WARNING

- The detecting range of the rear corner radar is determined by a standard road width. On narrow roads, BCA may detect other vehicles two lane over and warn you. On wide roads, BCA may not be able to detect a vehicle driving in the next lane and may not warn you.
- When the hazard warning flasher is on, the collision warning initiated by activating the turn signal may not operate.



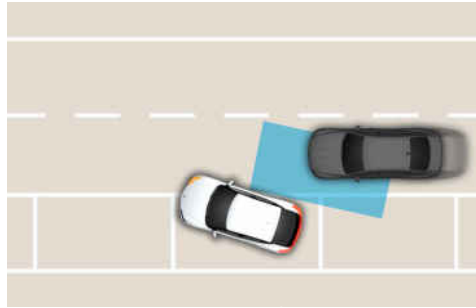
CAUTION

- The warning range may differ depending on the speed of your vehicle.
- If you pass other vehicles at high speeds, BCA may not warn you even when there is a vehicle in the blind spot area.
- The warning timing may differ depending on the speed of the vehicle approaching you at high speed.

NOTICE

If the driver seat is on the right side, the collision warning may occur when you turn right. Maintain a proper distance from other vehicles when turning.

Collision-avoidance assist (whilst exiting parallel parking)



When the driver turns the steering wheel about one turn to exit the vehicle forward, if there is a risk of collision, warning (with warning light, warning message, warning sound, and steering wheel vibration) and braking activates under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle speed: below 2 mph (3 km/h)
- Vehicle in the blind spot area: above 3 mph (5 km/h)

Braking control ends about 2 seconds after your vehicle is stopped following an emergency braking event. For your safety, the driver should depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.



WARNING

- If any other system's warning message appears or audible warning is generated, BCA's warning message may not appear and audible warning may not be generated.
- You may not hear the warning sound of BCA if the surrounding is noisy. Adjust other sounds in the vehicle to an appropriate level and always be aware of your surroundings.
- BCA may not operate if the driver applies the brake pedal to avoid a collision.
- When BCA is operating, braking control by the function automatically cancels when the driver excessively depresses the accelerator pedal or sharply steers the vehicle.
- During BCA operation, passengers and loose objects in the vehicle may shift and injure passengers. Always have the seat belt on and keep loose objects secured.
- Even if there is a problem with BCA, the vehicle's basic steering and braking performance operates properly.
- BCA does not operate in all situations and cannot avoid all collisions.
- BCA may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver depending on the road and driving conditions.
- Driver should maintain control of the vehicle at all times. Do not solely depend on BCA. Rather, maintain a safe distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce driving speed or to stop the vehicle.
- Never deliberately test BCA. It may cause serious injury or death.
- The brake control may not operate properly depending on the status of Electronic Stability Control (ESC).

Braking is not assisted and only a warning is provided when:

- The ESC warning light is on
 - ESC is engaged in a different function
-

BCA settings

With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving safety > Blind-spot safety** from the settings menu to set whether to use each function.

When **Blind-spot safety** is selected or the vehicle is restarted with **Blind-spot safety** selected, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror blinks for 3 seconds.

When the vehicle is restarted with **Blind-spot safety** off, the '**Blind-spot safety system is Off**' message appears on the cluster display.

Warning methods

You can set the following Warning methods for BCA:

- Warning volume
- Haptic warning
- Blind-spot warning sound
- Driving safety priority

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system settings**.

WARNING

If **Blind-spot safety** is deselected, BCA cannot assist you. The driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.

BCA malfunction and limitations

BCA malfunction

When BCA or related component malfunctions, a warning message and the Master  warning light appears on the instrument cluster. Also, when the outside rearview mirror (or digital side mirror) is not working properly, a warning message and the Master  warning light appears on the instrument cluster. When the detecting sensors are obscured, the system may be temporarily limited or disabled. The system operates properly when foreign material is removed from the sensors. If the system does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system warnings and indicators**.

CAUTION

Turn off BCA when a trailer, carrier, or another attachment is installed. Remove the trailer, carrier, or another attachment to use BCA.

Detecting sensors

BCA uses the following sensor:

- Rear corner radar

For more information, refer to the **Sensor information**.

BCA limitations

BCA may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- Driving on a highway ramp
- Driving on a road where the guardrail or wall is in double structure
- There is inclement weather, such as heavy snow, heavy rain, etc.
- The rear corner radar is covered with snow, rain, dirt, etc.
- The temperature around the rear corner radar is high or low
- The rear corner radar is blocked by other vehicles, walls or pillars
- Driving on a highway (or motorway) ramp or driving through a tollgate
- The road pavement (or the peripheral ground) abnormally contains metallic components (for example, possibly due to subway construction)
- There is a fixed object near the vehicle, such as sound barriers, guardrails, central dividers, entry barriers, street lamps, signs, tunnels, walls, etc. (including double structures)
- Driving through a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown
- Driving in vast areas where there are few vehicles or structures (for example, desert, meadow, suburb, etc.)
- Driving on a wet road surface, such as a puddle on the road

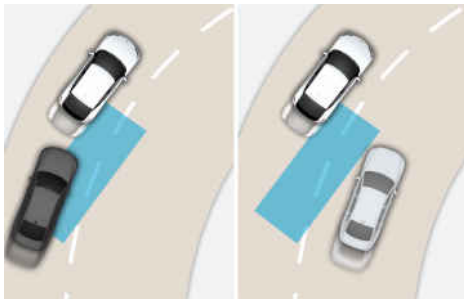
- The other vehicle drives very close behind your vehicle, or the other vehicle passes by your vehicle in close proximity
- The speed of the other vehicle is very fast that it passes by your vehicle in a short time
- Your vehicle passes by the other vehicle
- Your vehicle changes lane
- Your vehicle has started at the same time as the vehicle next to you and has accelerated
- The vehicle in the next lane moves two lanes away from you, or when the vehicle two lanes away moves to the next lane from you
- A trailer, carrier or other attachment is installed around the rear corner radar
- The bumper around the rear corner radar is covered with objects, such as a bumper sticker, bumper guard, bike rack, etc.
- The bumper around the rear corner radar is impacted, damaged or the radar is out of position
- Your vehicle is installed with a snow chain, or different size wheel.
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, installed with tyres of different specification, etc.
- The following object is detected:
 - A small motorcycle or bicycle
 - A vehicle such as a flat trailer
 - A big vehicle such as a bus or truck
 - A moving obstacle such as a pedestrian, animal, shopping cart or a baby stroller
 - A vehicle with low height such as a sports car

Braking control may not work, driver's attention is required in the following circumstances:

- The vehicle severely vibrates whilst driving over a bumpy road, uneven road or concrete patch
- Driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
- The tyre pressure is low or a tyre is damaged
- The braking system has been modified
- The vehicle makes abrupt lane changes

WARNING

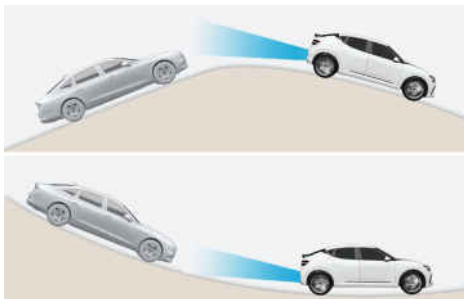
- Driving on a curved road



BCA may not operate properly when driving on a curved road. The function may not detect the vehicle in the next lane or the function may recognise a vehicle in the same lane.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.

- Driving on an inclined road



BCA may not operate properly when driving on a slope. The function may not detect the vehicle in the next lane or may incorrectly detect the ground or structure. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.

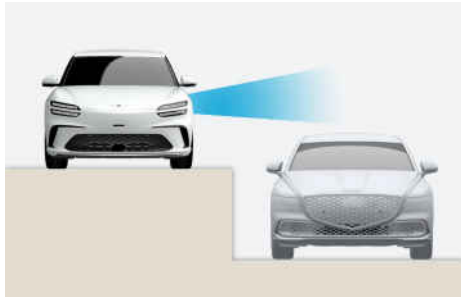
- Driving where the road is merging/dividing



BCA may not operate properly when driving where the road merges or divides. The function may not detect the vehicle in the next lane.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.

- **Driving where the heights of the lanes are different**



BCA may not operate properly when driving where the heights of the lanes are different. The function may not detect the vehicle on a road with different lane heights (underpass joining section, grade separated intersections, etc.).

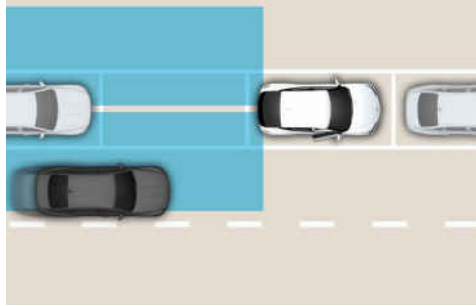
Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.

- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, make sure that you turn off BCA.
 - BCA may not operate properly if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.
 - BCA may not operate for about 3 seconds after the vehicle is started or the rear corner radars are initialized.
-

Safe Exit Warning (SEW)

 if equipped

SEW detects a vehicle approach the rear corner of your vehicle, after the vehicle is stopped and a passenger opens a door.



SEW operation



SEW warns the driver with a warning message and an audible warning. The warning light on the outside rearview mirrors (or digital side mirrors) also blinks to warn you.

Collision warning when exiting vehicle

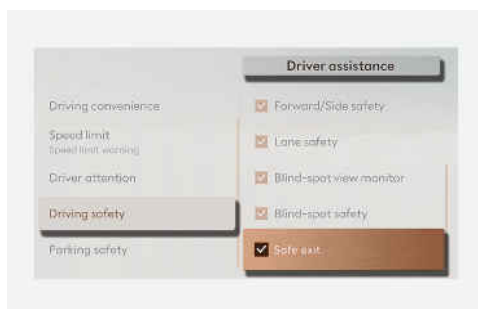
- When an approaching vehicle from the rear is detected at the moment a door is opened, the '**Collision warning!**' warning message appears on the cluster display, and an audible warning sounds.
- SEW warns the driver when:
 - Your vehicle speed: below 2 mph (3 km/h)
 - Vehicle approaching from the rear: above 4 mph (6 km/h)
- After the vehicle is turned off, SEW operates for about 3 minutes. However, SEW turns off immediately if the doors are locked.

WARNING

- For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.
 - If any other system's warning message appears or audible warning is generated, SEW's warning message may not appear and audible warning may not be generated.
 - You may not hear the warning sound of SEW if the surrounding is noisy. Adjust other sounds in the vehicle to an appropriate level and always be aware of your surroundings.
 - SEW does not operate in all situations or cannot prevent all collisions.
 - SEW may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver depending on the road and driving conditions. Always check vehicle surroundings.
 - The driver and passengers are responsible for accidents that occurs whilst exiting the vehicle. Always check the surroundings before you exit the vehicle.
-

SEW settings

Safe exit



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving safety > Safe exit** from the Settings menu to turn on SEW and deselect to turn off the function.

WARNING

If **Safe exit** is deselected, SEW cannot assist you. The driver should always be aware of his or her surroundings.

Warning methods

You can set the following Warning methods for SEW:

- Warning volume
- Driving safety priority

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system settings**.

SEW malfunction and limitations

SEW malfunction

When SEW or related component malfunctions, a warning message, the Master  warning light appears on the instrument cluster. When the detecting sensors are obscured, the system may be temporarily limited or disabled. The system operates properly when foreign material is removed from the sensors. If the system does not

operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system warnings and indicators**.



CAUTION

Turn off SEW when a trailer, carrier, or another attachment is installed. Remove the trailer, carrier, or another attachment to use SEW.

Detecting sensors

SEW uses the following sensor:

- Rear corner radar

For more information, refer to the **Sensor information** or **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)**.

SEW limitations

SEW may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- Getting out of the vehicle where trees or grass are overgrown
- Getting out of the vehicle where the road is wet
- The approaching vehicle is very fast or very slow



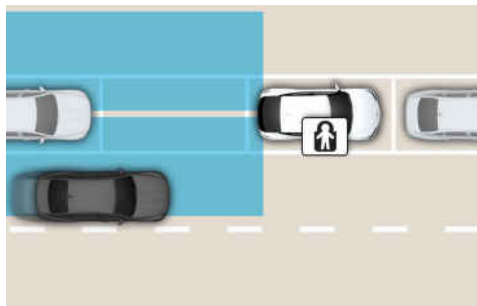
WARNING

- SEW may not operate properly if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.
 - SEW may not operate for about 3 seconds after the vehicle is started or the rear corner radars are initialized.
 - If the vehicle is turned off and restarted whilst the radar is blocked or malfunctioned, the condition is maintained. Therefore, SEW may not operate properly.
-

Safe Exit Assist (SEA)

 if equipped

SEA detects a vehicle approach the rear corner of your vehicle, after the vehicle is stopped and a passenger opens a door. SEA may warn you with an audible warning, a warning message, and the electronic child lock remains locked to help avoid a collision.



SEA operation



Collision warning when exiting vehicle

When an approaching vehicle from the rear is detected at the moment a door is opened, the '**Collision warning!**' warning message appears on the cluster display, and an audible warning sounds.

SEA linked with Electronic child safety lock

When the electronic child safety lock  button is in the LOCK position and an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected, the electronic child safety lock button does not unlock even if the driver presses the button to prevent the rear doors from opening.

- SEA warns the driver when:
 - Your vehicle speed: below 2 mph (3 km/h)
 - Vehicle approaching from the rear: above 4 mph (6 km/h)

After the vehicle is turned off, SEA operates for about 3 minutes. However, SEA turns off immediately if the doors are locked.

- If a rear door is opened from the outside, it opens regardless of SEA operation.

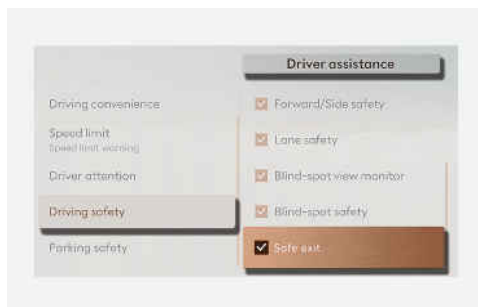
- For more information on electric child safety lock  button, refer to the **Electronic child safety lock**.

WARNING

- If the driver presses the electronic child lock  button again within 10 seconds after the warning message appears, SEA judges that the driver has unlocked the doors acknowledging the rear status. The electronic child safety lock turns off (button indicator OFF) and the rear doors unlock. Always check the surroundings before turning off the electronic child safety lock button.
 - If any other system's warning message appears or audible warning is generated, SEA warning message may not appear and audible warning may not be generated.
 - You may not hear the warning sound of SEA if the surrounding is noisy.
 - SEA does not operate in all situations or cannot prevent all collisions.
 - SEA may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver depending on the road and driving conditions. Always check vehicle surroundings.
 - The driver and passengers are responsible for accidents that occurs whilst exiting the vehicle. Always check the surroundings before you exit the vehicle.
 - Never deliberately operate SEA. Doing so may lead to serious injury or death.
-

SEA settings

Safe exit



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving safety > Safe exit** from the Settings menu to turn on SEA and deselect to turn off the function.

WARNING

If **Safe exit** is deselected, SEA cannot assist you. The driver should always be aware of his or her surroundings.

Warning methods

You can set the following Warning methods for SEA:

- Warning volume
- Driving safety priority

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system settings**.

SEA malfunction and limitations

SEA malfunction

When SEA or related component malfunctions, a warning message, the Master  warning light appears on the instrument cluster. When the detecting sensors are obscured, the system may be temporarily limited or disabled. The system operates properly when foreign material is removed from the sensors. If the system does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system warnings and indicators**.



CAUTION

Turn off SEA when a trailer, carrier, or another attachment is installed. Remove the trailer, carrier, or another attachment to use SEA.

Detecting sensors

SEA uses the following sensor:

- Rear corner radar

For more information, refer to the **Sensor information** or **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)**.

SEA limitations

SEA may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- Getting out of the vehicle where trees or grass are overgrown
- Getting out of the vehicle where the road is wet
- The approaching vehicle is very fast or very slow



WARNING

- SEA may not operate properly if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.
 - SEA may not operate for about 3 seconds after the vehicle is started or the rear corner radars are initialized.
 - If the vehicle is turned off and restarted whilst the radar is blocked or malfunctioned, the condition is maintained. Therefore, SEA may not operate properly.
-

Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA)

You can set the speed limit when you do not want to drive over a specific speed.

MSLA operation

If you drive over the preset speed limit, MSLA operates (set speed limit blinks and chime sounds) until the vehicle speed returns within the speed limit.

- When the vehicle speed decreases below the speed limit, the warning sound stops.
- You can check the status of MSLA on the Driving Assist view on the cluster display.



1. Speed Limit indicator
2. Set speed

Setting speed limit



- 1 Press and hold the Driving Assist  button at the desired speed.
 - The set speed and Speed Limit  indicator appears on the instrument cluster.
 - Press the Driving Assist  button to turn MSLA off. The Speed Limit  indicator goes off.
- 2 Push the **+** switch up or **—** switch down, and release it at the desired speed.
 - Push the **+** switch up or **—** switch down and hold it. The speed increase or decrease to the nearest multiple of 5 in mph (multiple of 10 in km/h) at first, and then increase or decrease by 5 mph (10 km/h).
 - Push the **+** switch up or **—** switch down and release it immediately. The set speed increase or decrease by 1 mph (1 km/h) each time the switch is operated in this manner.
 - If you would like to drive over the preset speed limit, the set speed limit blinks and a chime sounds until you return the vehicle speed within the speed limit.
 - If you would like to drive over the preset speed limit, depress the accelerator pedal beyond the pressure point to activate the kickdown function.

Temporarily pausing or Resuming MSLA

Press the  switch to temporarily pause the set speed limit.

- The set speed limit turns off but the Speed Limit  LIMIT indicator stays on.

To resume MSLA after the function was paused, operate the **+**, **-**,  switch.

- If you push the **+** switch up or **-** switch down, vehicle speed is set to the current speed on the cluster display.



WARNING

MSLA does not substitute for proper and safe driving. It is the responsibility of the driver to always drive safely and be aware of unexpected and sudden situations. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.



CAUTION

- Always set the vehicle speed to the speed limit in your country.
 - Keep MSLA off when the function is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed. Check that the Speed Limit  LIMIT indicator is off.
-

MSLA settings

Warning methods

You can set the following Warning methods for MSLA:

- Warning volume

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system settings**.

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA)

 if equipped

ISLA uses information from the detected road sign and navigation system to inform you of the speed limit and additional information, and help maintain within the speed limit on the road.

CAUTION

- ISLA may not operate properly if used in other countries.
- If a navigation is applied to your vehicle, the navigation needs to be regularly updated for ISLA to operate properly. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

ISLA operation

Displaying speed limit

Speed limit sign example



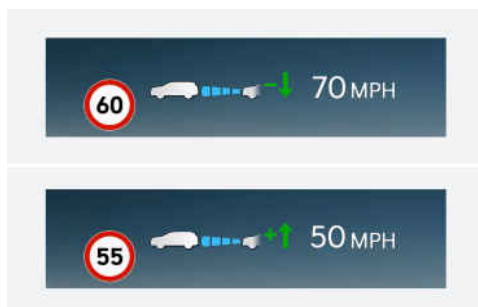
Speed limit information appears on the instrument cluster.

- If speed limit information of the road cannot be recognised, '---' sign appears. Please refer to the **ISLA limitations** section, if the road signs are difficult to recognise.
- ISLA provides additional road sign information in addition to speed limit. The additional road sign information provided may differ according to your country.
- Supplementary sign appearing under the speed limit or overtaking restriction sign means the conditions under which the signs must be followed. If the supplementary sign is not recognised, it appears as blank.

Warning overspeed

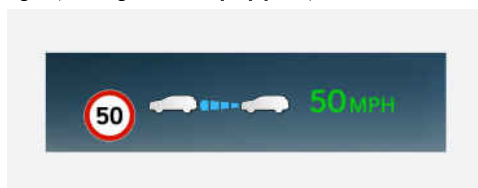
When driving at a speed higher than the appearing speed limit, the red speed limit indicator blinks and a warning sounds.

Changing set speed



If the speed limit of the road changes during the operation of Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA) or Smart Cruise Control (SCC), an arrow in the direction of up or down appears to inform the driver that the set speed needs to be changed. At this time, the driver can change the set speed according to the speed limit by using the **+** or **-** switch on the steering wheel.

Set Speed Auto Change (Navigation equipped)



If the driver sets the set speed to the speed limit on the road, when MSLA or SCC is activated, the set speed is automatically adjusted accordingly when the speed limit is changed. The function operates on the road which has a speed limit of 44 mph (70 km/h) or higher. When the function is active, the cruising speed on the instrument cluster appears in green.

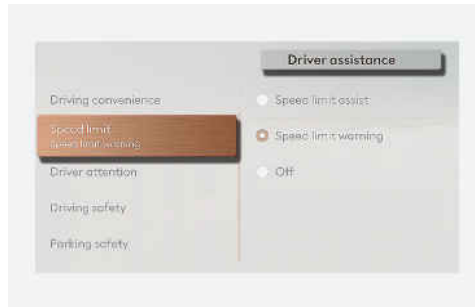
- For more information on MSLA operation, refer to the **Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA)**.
- For more information on SCC operation, refer to the **Smart Cruise Control (SCC)**.



WARNING

- Even after changing the set speed according to the speed limit of the road, the vehicle can still be driven over the speed limit. If necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed.
- If the speed limit of the road is under 20 mph (30 km/h), the set speed change function does not work.
- ISLA operates using the speed units in the instrument cluster set by the driver. If the speed unit is not set to the speed unit used in your country, ISLA may not operate properly.

ISLA settings



With the vehicle on, select or deselect **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Speed limit** from the Settings menu to set whether to use each function

- **Speed limit assist:** ISLA informs the driver of speed limit and additional road signs. In addition, ISLA informs the driver to change set speed of MSLA and/or SCC to help the driver stay within the speed limit.
- **Speed limit warning:** ISLA informs the driver of speed limit. In addition, ISLA warns the driver when the vehicle is driven faster than the speed limit.
- **Off:** ISLA turns off. The  warning light appears.



WARNING

- When the vehicle is restarted, ISLA always turns on. However, if ISLA is set to **Off** and the vehicle is restarted, **Speed limit warning** is automatically selected.
- ISLA does not substitute for proper and safe driving. It is the responsibility of the driver to always drive safely and be aware of unexpected and sudden situations. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.

Warning methods

You can set the following Warning methods for ISLA:

- Warning volume
- Speed limit warning sound: The Speed Limit warning sound can be turned on or off.
- Speed limit change notification sound: The Speed Limit change notification sound can be turned on or off.

When the vehicle is restarted, Speed Limit Warning Sound always turns on.

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system settings**.

ISLA malfunction and limitations

ISLA malfunction

When ISLA or related component malfunctions, a warning message, the Master  and speed limit  warning light appears on the instrument cluster. When the detecting sensors are obscured, the system may be temporarily limited or disabled. The system operates properly when foreign material is removed from the sensors. If the system does

not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system warnings and indicators**.

Detecting sensors

ISLA uses the following sensor:

- Front view camera

For more information, refer to the **Sensor information** and **FCA malfunction and limitations**.

ISLA limitations

ISLA may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The road sign is contaminated or indistinguishable
 - The road sign is difficult to see due to bad weather, such as rain, snow, fog, etc.
 - The road sign is partially obscured by surrounding objects or shadow
- The road signs do not conform to the standard
 - The text or illustration on the road sign is different from the standard
 - The road sign is installed between the main line and the exit road or between diverging roads
 - A sign is attached to another vehicle
- The distance between the vehicle and the road signs is too far
- The vehicle encounters illuminant road signs
- ISLA incorrectly recognises numbers or illustrations in the street signs or other signs as the speed limit
- A road sign near the road you are driving is detected
- Multiple signs are installed close together
- The other traffic sign or signboards are alongside the road sign
- The minimum speed limit sign is misrecognised as a maximum speed limit sign
- The brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel or passing under a bridge
- Headlights are not used or the brightness of the headlights are weak at night or in the tunnel
- Road signs are difficult to recognise due to the reflection of sunlight, street lights, or oncoming vehicles
- The field of view of the front view camera is obstructed by sun glare
- Driving on a road that is sharply curved or continuously curved
- Driving through speed bumps, or driving up and down or left to right on steep inclines
- The vehicle is shaking heavily
- The navigation information or GPS information contain errors.
- The driver does not follow the guide of the navigation.
- The driver is driving on a new road that is not in the navigation system yet.

- Driving on a road under construction.
- The navigation software is being updated whilst driving
- The navigation is restarted whilst driving



WARNING

- ISLA is a supplemental function that helps the driver to comply with the speed limit on the road, and the correct speed limit may not appear or control the driving speed properly.
 - Under the Road Traffic Act, it is the driver's responsibility to comply with the speed limit.
 - ISLA may not operate for about 15 seconds after the vehicle is started or the front camera is initialized.
-

Driver Attention Warning (DAW)

DAW monitors your driving pattern whilst driving. When the driver's attention level is below a certain level, DAW recommends a break to help with safe driving.

DAW operation

Consider taking a break

The '**Consider taking a break**' message appears and the Inattentive Driving  warning light blinks on the instrument cluster with a warning sound to suggest that the driver take a break, when the driver's attention level is below a certain level.

- DAW does not suggest a break when the total driving time is shorter than 4 minutes or 4 minutes has not passed after the last break was suggested.



CAUTION

- DAW may suggest a break depending on the driver's driving pattern or habits, even if the driver doesn't feel fatigue.
 - DAW is a supplemental function and may not be able to determine whether the driver is inattentive.
 - A driver who feels fatigued should take a break at a safe location, even though there is no break suggestion by DAW.
-

Leading vehicle departure alert function

When a detected vehicle in front departs from a stop, Leading vehicle departure alert informs the driver with a '**Leading vehicle is driving away**' message on the cluster display and a warning sound.



WARNING

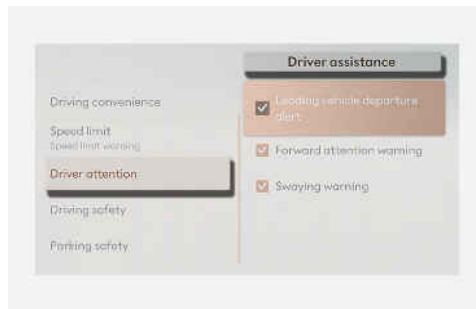
If any other system's warning message appears or audible warning such as the seat belt warning chime is already generated, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert's warning message may not appear and audible warning may not be generated.



CAUTION

- Leading vehicle departure alert is a supplemental function and may not alert the driver whenever the front vehicle departs from a stop.
 - Always check the front of the vehicle and road conditions before departure.
-

DAW settings



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driver attention** and then enable **Leading vehicle departure alert** in the infotainment system to use the function.

- **Leading vehicle departure alert:** The function informs the driver when a detected vehicle in front departs from a stop.
- **Swaying warning:** DAW can be turned on or off.



WARNING

- When the vehicle is restarted, Swaying warning always turns on.
 - Inattentive Driving Warning is always on in the Europe region, so the Inattentive Driving Warning menu will not be displayed.
-

Warning methods

You can set the following Warning methods for DAW:

- Warning volume
- Inattentive driving warning sound
- Driving safety priority

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system settings**.

DAW malfunction and limitations

DAW malfunction

When DAW or related component malfunctions, a warning message, the Master  warning light, and the Inattentive Driving  warning light appears on the instrument cluster. When the detecting sensors are obscured, the system may be temporarily limited or disabled. The system operates properly when foreign material is removed from the sensors. If the system does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system warnings and indicators**.

Detecting sensors

DAW uses the following sensor:

- Front view camera

For more information, refer to the **Sensor information** and **FCA malfunction and limitations**.

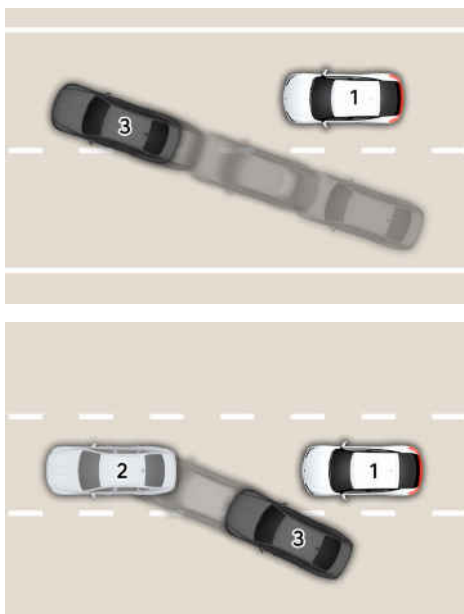
DAW limitations

DAW may not work properly in the following situations:

- The camera is damaged, obstructed by foreign material, or its detection performance is reduced due to the surroundings.
- The vehicle is driven violently
- The vehicle intentionally crosses over lanes frequently
- The vehicle is controlled by driver assistance system, such as Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)
- Lanes are blurred or erased

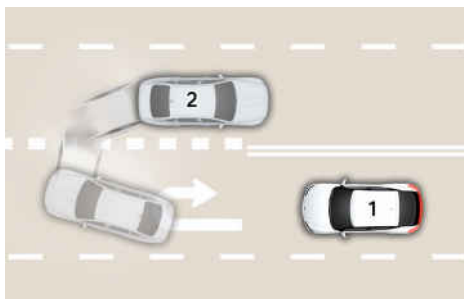
Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not work properly in the following situations:

- When a vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle



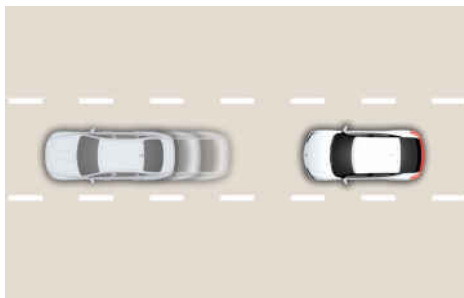
1. Your vehicle
2. Front vehicle
3. Intervening vehicles

- When the vehicle ahead sharply steers (such as to turn left or right or make a U-turn, etc.)



1. Your vehicle
2. Front vehicle

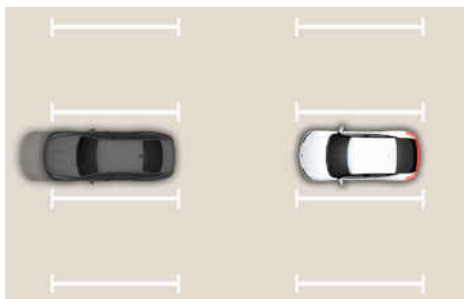
- When the vehicle ahead abruptly departs



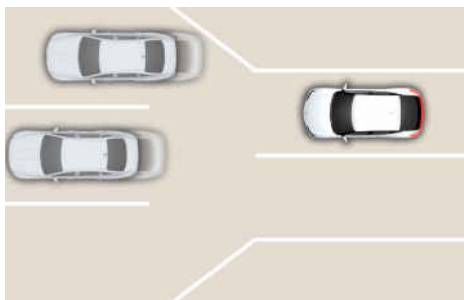
- When a pedestrian or bicycle is between you and the vehicle ahead



- When the vehicle detects a parked vehicle in front drive away in a parking lot



- When your vehicle stops at a lane that divide or merge and it is difficult to identify the vehicle ahead



WARNING

DAW may not operate for about 15 seconds after the vehicle is started or the front view camera is initialized.

Forward Attention Warning (FAW)

FAW uses the in-cabin camera to help prevent the driver from being distracted whilst driving with an audible warning and warning light.

FAW operation

FAW

FAW determines whether the driver is focused on the road depending on information, such as the amount of time the driver is looking elsewhere, the amount of time the eyes are closed, etc. If FAW judges the driver is not focused, an audible warning sounds for about 1 second, and the  warning light appears on the instrument cluster until off conditions are met.

The warning comes on:

- When the driver's gaze is not focused on the road continuously for 3 seconds whilst driving above 12 mph (20 km/h).
- When the driver's gaze is not focused on the road for 10 seconds or more in total during a 30 seconds time span whilst driving above 12 mph (20 km/h).
- When the driver's eyes are closed for over 2 seconds or more whilst driving above 6 mph (10 km/h).

The warning goes off:

When the driver looks forward continuously for over 2 seconds.

Driver Drowsiness Attention Warning

The Driver Drowsiness Attention Warning monitors your eyes whilst driving. When the driver's eyes are constantly closed or not facing forward frequently, the Driver Drowsiness Attention Warning recommends a break to help with safe driving. The '**Consider taking a break**' warning message and the  warning light appears on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning sounds until the off conditions are met.

The warning comes on:

When the driver's eyes are constantly closed or not facing forward frequently whilst driving above 6 mph (10 km/h).

The warning goes off:

When the driver's gaze is focused on the road.



WARNING

If any other system's warning message appears or audible warning is generated, FAW's warning message may not appear and an audible warning may not be generated.

CAUTION

- FAW may warn the driver even though the driver is focused on the road because of driving style and driving pattern.
- FAW is a supplemental function and may not determine whether the driver is distracted whilst driving.
- The driver is responsible for safe driving and must focus on the road.

NOTICE

FAW does not transmit recorded videos outside of the vehicle or store the video.

FAW settings



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driver attention > Forward attention warning** in the infotainment system to set whether to use the function. If **Forward attention warning** is enabled, the function warns the driver when the driver's gaze is not focused on the road.

- When the vehicle is restarted, **Forward attention warning** always turns on.
- The Warning method for FAW can not be changed.

FAW malfunction and limitations

FAW malfunction

When FAW or related component malfunctions, a warning message and the Forward Attention  warning light appears on the instrument cluster. When there is an object right in front of the in-cabin camera or between the driver and the camera for a certain period of time FAW does not operate properly. If the object is removed or the camera is able to detect the driver's face, the function operates normally. If FAW does not operate properly after the object is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system warnings and indicators**.

Detecting sensors

FAW uses the following sensor:

- In-cabin camera

For more information, refer to the **Sensor information**.



WARNING

Do not look toward the camera within 8 in. (20 cm) for longer than a minute.

NOTICE

Two red lights may appear on the camera in the following conditions when:

- The outside brightness is dim or driving at night
 - The vehicle drives inside a building, such as a basement parking lot, garage or tunnel
 - The camera case is partially broken
-

FAW limitations

FAW may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

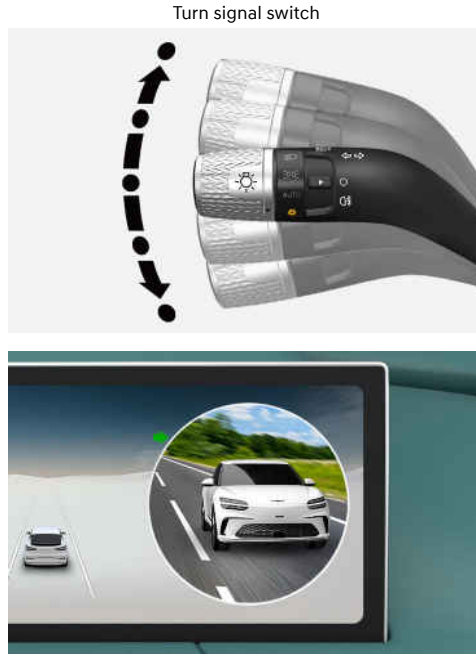
- The driver is wearing sunglasses, special glasses, infrared cutoff glasses, refracting glasses or thick glasses
- The driver has heavy eye makeup (eyeliner, mascara, colour makeup, false eyelash) or eye piercing
- The driver's view is blocked by his/her hair, hat, etc.
- The driver is winking or wearing an eye patch on one eye
- The driver's face is covered partially by a mask, muffler, etc.
- The driver's view is blocked by incoming light from outside of the vehicle
- Light from outside, sunlight or infrared LED light of the camera is reflected by glasses or sunglasses
- The driver turns or lowers his/her head so that the face or an eye is hidden from the camera
- The driver shakes his/her head up and down, or adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations whilst driving
- The driver is improperly positioned in the driver's seat so that the driver's face is not detected
- The driver is too tall or short
- The camera is blocked by the driver's grip on the steering wheel
- More than two people are looking at the instrument cluster simultaneously from the driver's seat
- The driver's eyes are narrowed due to laughing or sun glare
- Misrecognise a picture or mannequin that has a similar size of the driver's face
- There are other devices using infrared light in the vehicle

Blind-Spot View Monitor (BVM)

 if equipped

BVM uses the wide-side view cameras to show the rear blind spot areas of your vehicle on the instrument cluster when the turn signal is turned on to help with safe lane changes.

BVM operation



When the left or right side turn signal turns on, the image in that direction appears on the instrument cluster.

BVM is cancelled when one of the following conditions is met:

- The turn signal turns off
- The hazard warning flasher is on
- Other important warning appears on the instrument cluster

BVM settings



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving safety** and then enable **Blind-spot view monitor** in the infotainment system to turn on the BVM feature.

BVM malfunction

When BVM is not working properly, or the cluster display flickers, or the camera image does not appear properly, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.



WARNING

- The image shown on the cluster may differ from the actual distance of the object. Make sure to directly check the vehicle's surroundings for safety.
- Always keep the camera lens clean. If the lens is covered with foreign material, it may adversely affect camera performance and BVM may not operate properly.

Detecting sensors

BVM uses the following sensor:

- Wide-side view camera

For more information, refer to the **Sensor limitations**.

Smart Cruise Control (SCC)

SCC detects a vehicle ahead and helps maintain the distance from the vehicle ahead and the set speed.

Information

Some Smart Cruise Control operations may change if Emergency Stop is equipped. Make sure to familiarize yourself with the Emergency Stop function.

For more information, refer to the **Emergency Stop (ES)**.

SCC operation



You can see the status of the SCC operation in the Driving Assist view on the cluster display. Refer to the **Cluster display settings**.

Operating conditions

SCC operates when the following conditions are satisfied.

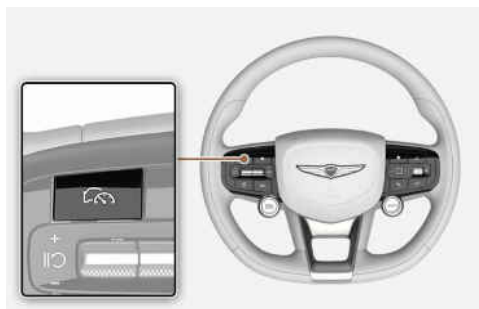
- The gear is in D (Drive)
- Your vehicle speed is within the operating speed range
 - 5-112 mph (10-180 km/h): when there is no vehicle in front
 - 0-112 mph (0-180 km/h): when there is a vehicle in front
- Electronic Stability Control (ESC) or Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) is on

SCC does not operate in the following conditions.

- Your vehicle is in power down mode (⚡ indicator on)
- The driver's door is opened
- Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) is applied
- ESC or ABS is controlling the vehicle
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) brake control is operating
- Remote Smart Parking Assist (RSPA) brake control is operating (if equipped)

When stopped behind another vehicle, the driver can turn on SCC whilst the brake pedal is depressed.

Turning SCC on/off



Press the Driving Assist  button briefly to turn on or off SCC.

- When SCC is on, the current speed on the cluster is set as the set speed.
- If there is no vehicle in front of you, the set speed is maintained, but if there is a vehicle in front of you, the speed may change to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead. If the vehicle ahead accelerates, your vehicle travels at a steady cruising speed after accelerating to the set speed.

Operating status



1. Whether there is a vehicle ahead and the selected distance level
2. Set speed

The status of the SCC operation appears at the top area of the cluster display.

When temporarily cancelled

Your vehicle and set speed appears in grey.

- When there is a vehicle ahead, it appears in grey. (if equipped)

You can also see the status of the SCC operation in the Driving Assist view on the cluster. Refer to the **Cluster display settings**.

- The lane lines displayed on the cluster display may differ from the actual lane lines.

Precautions

- When you press and hold the Driving Assist  button to turn off SCC, MSLA turns on. To turn SCC back on, press the Driving Assist  button to turn off MSLA, then press the Driving Assist  button once more.
- If your vehicle speed is between 0-20 mph (0-30 km/h) when you press the Driving Assist button, SCC speed is set to 20 mph (30 km/h).
- The distance of the front vehicle on the cluster display appears according to the actual distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

- The target distance may differ according to the vehicle speed and the set distance level. If the vehicle speed is low, even though the vehicle distance have changed, the change of the target vehicle distance may be small.
- SCC may not temporarily operate whilst the vehicle is turning on or detecting sensors are initializing (such as rebooting, etc.).
- You may hear sounds when SCC is braking your vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a malfunction.
- You can also see the status of the SCC operation in the Driving Assist view on the cluster. For more information, refer to the **Cluster display settings**.

Increasing or decreasing set speed

Push the **+/-** switch up or down and release it immediately. The set speed increases or decreases by 1 mph (1 km/h) each time the switch is operated in this manner.

- To quickly change the set speed, push and hold the **+** switch up or **-** switch down. The set speed changes to a multiple of 5 mph (10 km/h).
- You can increase the set speed up to 110 mph (180 km/h) or decrease the set speed to 20 mph (30 km/h).
- The driving speed may not reach the set speed depending on the vehicle characteristics and driving conditions.

WARNING

Check the driving condition before using the **+** switch. Driving speed may sharply increase when you push up and hold the **+** switch.

Setting vehicle distance

To change the vehicle distance, press the **⏮** button repeatedly.

- The closest inter-vehicle distance is 1.



If you drive at 56 mph (90 km/h), the distance is maintained as follows:

- Distance 4: about 172 ft. (52.5 m) > Distance 3: about 130 ft. (40 m) > Distance 2: about 106 ft. (32.5 m) > Distance 1: about 82 ft. (25 m)

WARNING

Do not use the switches and buttons at the same time. SCC may not operate properly.

Information

When the vehicle is restarted or Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled, the following distance maintains the last setting.

Temporarily canceling and resuming SCC



If the Smart Cruise Control feature has been temporarily turned off, it can be turned on again using one of the following methods:

- Press the **||○** switch. The feature turns on and operates at the set speed used before it was turned off.
- Press the **+**, **-** switch up or down. The set speed changes to the current driving speed, and the feature turns on and starts operating again.
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed and the current driving speed is lower than the set speed, press the **+**, **-** switch up or down. The feature immediately turns on and starts operating, and the set speed is adjusted based on the current driving speed.



WARNING

Check the driving condition before using the **||○** switch. Driving speed may sharply increase or decrease when you press the **||○** switch.

Temporarily canceling SCC

If SCC is temporarily cancelled automatically, the '**SCC (Smart Cruise Control) Cancelled**' warning message appears on the cluster display, and an audible warning sounds to warn the driver.

SCC is temporarily cancelled automatically when:

- The vehicle speed is above 118 mph (190 km/h)
- The vehicle is stopped for a certain period of time
- The accelerator pedal is continuously depressed for a certain period of time
- The conditions for the SCC to operate is not satisfied

If SCC is temporarily cancelled whilst the vehicle is at a standstill with the function activated, EPB may be applied.



WARNING

When SCC is temporarily cancelled, distance with the front vehicle is not maintained. Always have your eyes on the road whilst driving, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

Accelerating temporarily

If you want to speed up temporarily without altering the set speed whilst SCC is operating, depress the accelerator pedal. Whilst the accelerator pedal is depressed, the set speed, distance level and target distance blinks on the cluster. However, if the accelerator pedal is depressed insufficiently, the vehicle may decelerate.



WARNING

Be careful when accelerating temporarily, because the speed and distance is not controlled automatically even if there is a vehicle in front of you.

Overtaking Acceleration Assist

Overtaking Acceleration Assist operates when the turn signal indicator is turned on to the right whilst SCC is operating, and the following conditions are satisfied:

- Your vehicle speed is above 40 mph (60 km/h) and a vehicle is detected in front of your vehicle

Overtaking Acceleration Assist does not operate in the following conditions.

- The hazard warning flasher is on
- Vehicle speed is reduced to maintain distance with the vehicle in front



WARNING

- Be careful when your vehicle temporarily accelerates to overtake a vehicle in front. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.
 - Regardless of the driving direction in your country, Overtaking Acceleration Assist operates when the conditions are satisfied. When using the function in countries with different driving direction, always check the road conditions at all times.
-

Based on driving style

 if equipped

SCC operates based on the driver's driving style, such as vehicle distance, acceleration, reaction speed.

When Based on driving style is operating, the vehicle distance level and target distance appears white based on the driving style.

- Based on driving style does not reflect any other driving style other than inter-vehicle distance, acceleration and reaction speed.



WARNING

Changes in the driver's driving style may change the previously reflected vehicle distance, acceleration intensity, and response speed. Always pay attention.

CAUTION

- The vehicle must be driven sufficiently to reflect the actual driving style of the driver, such as inter-vehicle distance, acceleration and reaction speed.
 - Based on driving style may not reflect the driver's driving style or driving conditions that affects driving safety.
 - If you are driving in special conditions, such as snow, rain, fog or steep slopes, the vehicle may not be driven according to the driver's driving style.
 - Based on driving style may not reflect the driver's driving style other than the inter-vehicle distance, acceleration intensity, and reaction speed.
-

Warnings of SCC

SCC conditions not satisfied

If the Driving Assist button, **+** switch, **—** switch or **||○** switch is operated when SCC operating conditions are not satisfied, the '**SCC (Smart Cruise Ctrl.) conditions not met**' appears on the cluster display, and an audible warning sounds.

Restarting after stopping

In traffic, your vehicle stops if the vehicle ahead of you stops. Also, if the vehicle ahead of you starts moving within a certain period, your vehicle starts as well.

- If your vehicle is equipped with Emergency Stop and an in-cabin camera for Forward Attention Warning, the vehicle's dwell time may be extended depending on whether the driver is keeping eyes forward.

In addition, after the vehicle has stopped and a certain time has passed, the '**Use switch or pedal to accelerate**' message appears on the instrument cluster. Depress the accelerator pedal or operate the **+** switch, **—** switch or **||○** switch to start driving. Always pay attention to the situation ahead when restarting.

Warning road conditions ahead

In the following situation, the '**Watch for surrounding vehicles**' warning message appears on the cluster display, and an audible warning sounds to warn the driver of road conditions ahead.

- The vehicle in front disappears when SCC is maintaining the distance with the vehicle ahead whilst driving below a certain speed.

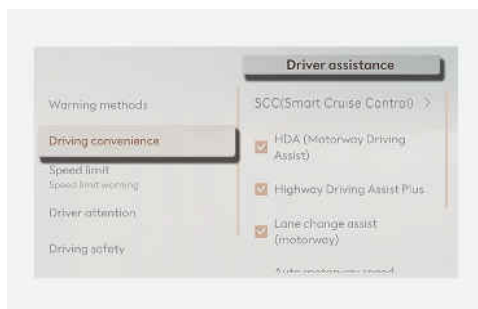
WARNING

Always pay attention to vehicles or objects that may suddenly appear in front of you, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

Collision warning

Whilst SCC is operating, when the collision risk with the vehicle ahead is high, FCA operates to warn the driver. Always have your eyes on the road whilst driving, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance. For more information, refer to the **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)**.

SCC settings



With the vehicle on, if **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving convenience > SCC (Smart Cruise Control)** is selected in the infotainment system, you can change the vehicle distance, the acceleration, and the reaction speed manually.

- When **Based on driving style** is activated, SCC adjusts the vehicle distance, acceleration, reaction speed according to the driver's driving style. Driving style can also be set manually. (if equipped)
- Whilst SCC is operating with **Based on driving style** selected, if you press and hold the Vehicle Distance  button, Based on driving style deactivates. If you press and hold the Vehicle Distance  button again, 'Driving Style Setting' activates.
- Based on driving style setting continuously learns when the driver drives the vehicle.
- When Based on driving style is deactivated, the driver's driving style such as vehicle distance, acceleration, reaction speed maintains the same stage.
- Even if the steps of the driver's driving style such as vehicle distance, acceleration, reaction speed appearing when the Based on driving style is activated or deactivated are the same, the driving style to be controlled may be differently.



WARNING

- SCC does not substitute for proper and safe driving. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.
 - SCC may not recognise unexpected and sudden situations or complex driving situations, so always pay attention to driving conditions and control your vehicle speed.
 - Keep SCC off when the function is not in use to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.
 - Do not open the door or leave the vehicle when SCC is operating, even if the vehicle is stopped.
 - Always be aware of the selected speed and headway distance.
 - Keep a safe distance according to road conditions and vehicle speed. Especially during high-speed driving, if the set vehicle distance is too short, it may result in a serious collision. Always pay attention.
 - When maintaining distance with the vehicle ahead, if the front vehicle disappears, SCC may suddenly accelerate to the set speed. Always be aware of unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.
 - Vehicle speed may decrease on an upward slope and increase on a downward slope.
 - Always be aware of situations such as when a vehicle cuts in suddenly.
 - When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off SCC for safety reasons.
 - Turn off SCC when your vehicle is being towed.
 - SCC may not operate properly if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.
 - SCC may not detect an obstacle in front and lead to a collision. Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.
 - Vehicles moving in front of you with a frequent lane change may cause a delay in SCC reaction or may cause SCC to react to a vehicle actually in an adjacent lane. Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.
 - Always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely, even though a warning message does not appear or an audible warning does not sound.
 - If any other system's warning sound such as the seat belt warning chime is already generating, SCC warning sound may not be generated.
 - You may not hear the warning sound of SCC if the surrounding is noisy.
 - The vehicle manufacturer is not responsible for any traffic violation or accidents caused by the driver.
 - Always set the vehicle speed under the speed limit in your area.
-

Precautions

- SCC may not operate for few seconds after the vehicle is started or the front view camera or front radar is initialized
- You may hear a sound when the brake is controlled by SCC.
- Based on driving style may not reflect the driver's driving style or driving conditions that affects driving safety.

SCC malfunction and limitations

SCC malfunction

When SCC or related component malfunctions, a warning message, the Master  warning light appears on the instrument cluster. When the detecting sensors are obscured, the system may be temporarily limited or disabled. The system operates properly when foreign material is removed from the sensors. If the system does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system warnings and indicators**.

Detecting sensors

SCC uses the following sensors:

- Front view camera
- Front radar
- Front corner radar

For more information, refer to the **Sensor information** and **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)**.

SCC limitations

SCC may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle in front is detected late
- The vehicle in front is suddenly blocked by an obstacle
- The vehicle in front suddenly changes lane or suddenly reduces speed
- The vehicle in front is bent out of shape
- The front vehicle's speed is fast or slow
- With a vehicle in front, your vehicle changes lane at low speed
- The vehicle in front is covered with snow
- Unstable driving
- You are on a round about and the vehicle in front is not detected
- You are continuously driving in a circle
- The adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations whilst driving
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.
- When driving under following circumstances:
 - Driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
 - Driving on a curved road
 - Driving through steam, smoke or shadow
 - Driving through a tunnel or iron bridge
 - Driving in vast areas where there are few vehicles or structures (for example, desert, meadow, suburb, etc.)
 - Driving near a highway (or motorway) interchange or tollgate
 - Driving in a parking lot

- Driving through a construction area, unpaved road, partial paved road, uneven road, speed bumps, etc.
 - Driving near areas containing metal substances, such as a construction zone, railroad, etc.
 - Driving on an incline road, curved road, etc.
 - Driving through a roadside with trees or streetlights
 - Driving through a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown
 - There is interference by electromagnetic waves, such as driving in an area with strong radio waves or electrical noise
- **Driving on a curved road**



On curves, SCC may not detect a vehicle in the same lane, and may accelerate to the set speed. Also, vehicle speed may rapidly decrease when the vehicle ahead is detected suddenly.

Select the appropriate set speed on curves and apply the brake pedal or accelerator pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.

Your vehicle speed can be reduced due to a vehicle in the adjacent lane. Apply the accelerator pedal and select the appropriate set speed. Check to be sure that the road conditions permit safe operation of the SCC.

- **Driving on an inclined road**



During uphill or downhill driving, the SCC may not detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and cause your vehicle to accelerate to the set speed. Also, vehicle speed rapidly decreases when the vehicle ahead is detected suddenly. Select the appropriate set speed on inclines and apply the brake pedal or accelerator pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.

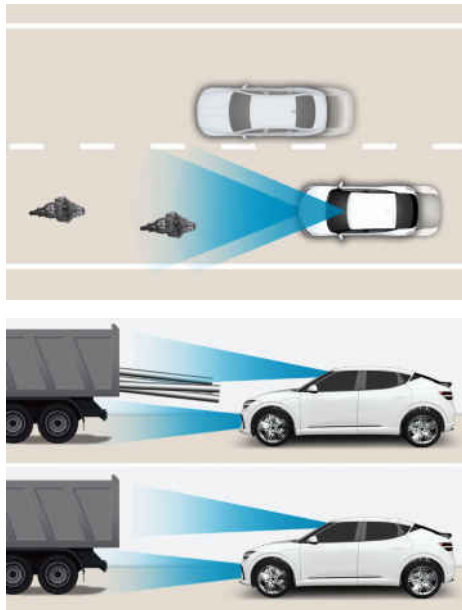
- **Changing lanes**



1. Your vehicle
2. Lane changing vehicle

When a vehicle moves into your lane from an adjacent lane, it cannot be detected by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range. SCC may not immediately detect the vehicle when the vehicle changes lanes abruptly. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

- **Situations when detecting are limited**



In the following cases, some vehicle, pedestrian, or animal in your lane cannot be detected by the sensor. Always check the traffic conditions around the vehicle. If necessary, control your speed.

- Vehicle that is offset to one side

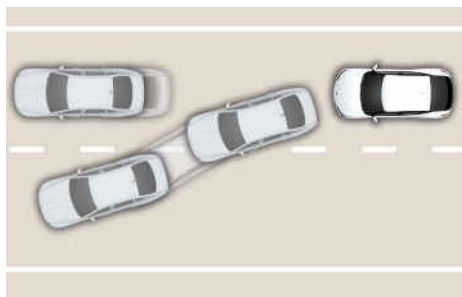
- Slow-moving vehicle or sudden decelerating vehicle
- Vehicle with higher ground clearance or vehicle carrying loads that stick out of the back of the vehicle
- Vehicle that has the front lifted due to heavy loads
- Oncoming vehicle
- Vehicle within about 6 ft. (2 m) from your vehicle
- Stopped vehicle
- Vehicle with small rear profile, such as a trailer
- Narrow vehicle, such as a motorcycle or bicycle
- Special vehicle
- Animal or pedestrian

Adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead. In the following cases, the vehicle in front cannot be detected by the sensor:

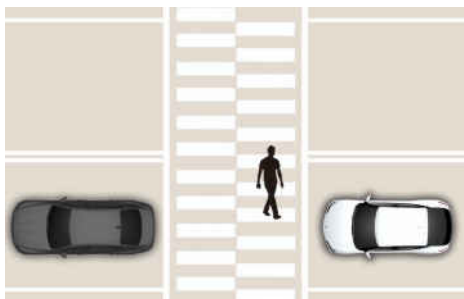
- You are steering your vehicle
- Driving on narrow or sharply curved roads
- When a vehicle ahead disappears at an intersection, your vehicle may accelerate. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.



- When a vehicle in front of you merges out of the lane, SCC may not immediately detect the new vehicle that is now in front of you. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.



- Always look out for pedestrians when your vehicle is maintaining a distance with the vehicle ahead.



Emergency Stop (ES)

 if equipped

If ES judges the driver is unresponsive, the function stops your vehicle within the driving lane by centering the vehicle in the lane and assisting in braking.

ES Operation

Operating conditions

ES is ready to operate when both Smart Cruise Control and Lane Following Assist operate.

- ES is also ready to operate when both Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control and Lane Following Assist operate simultaneously, or Highway Driving Assist operates. For more information about Smart Cruise Control, Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control, Lane Following Assist, and Highway Driving Assist, refer to the **Smart Cruise Control (SCC)**, **Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control (NSCC)**, **Lane Following Assist (LFA)**, and **Highway Driving Assist (HDA)**.
- Once ES is ready to operate, the driver's focus on the road will be monitored continuously even if **Forward Attention Warning** is turned off. For more information, refer to the **Forward Attention Warning (FAW)**.
- Lane Following Assist cannot be turned on if the in-cabin camera is malfunctioning.

ES forewarning and braking control

- ES determines that the driver is unresponsive if the hands-off warning or the driver's distraction detected by the in-cabin camera is continued. When the driver is determined to be unresponsive, a warning message appears on the instrument cluster, an audible warning sounds, and the steering wheel vibrates as a forewarning.
- If the driver is still unresponsive despite the prior warning, Emergency Stop controls the steering wheel and brake pedal to stop the vehicle within the driving lane. It is also notified to the driver that Emergency Stop is operating with a warning message, a warning sound, the hazard warning flasher blinking, and vibration on the steering wheel.
- Whilst ES is operating, the vehicle distance setting of Smart Cruise Control is changed to Distance 4. The vehicle distance setting is set to the last distance setting after ES is deactivated.
- The forewarning and ES are deactivated if one of the following conditions is met:
 - The driver's gaze is detected to be focused on the road ahead by in-cabin camera and the driver controls the steering wheel.
 - Smart Cruise Control is temporarily disabled or turned off.
 - Lane Following Assist is turned off

After stopping

After the vehicle is stopped by ES, a warning message appears on the cluster display, an audible warning sounds, and the hazard warning flasher blinks. After your vehicle has stopped, the following is performed:

- Doors are unlocked.
- SOS call is made. (if served)
- Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.

Deactivating ES

If the function judges you have responded, ES is deactivated when one of the following condition is met:

- The driver focuses on the road ahead and controls the steering wheel.
- The driver strongly and continuously depresses the accelerator pedal.
- The driver strongly depresses the brake pedal
- The driver presses the Lane Driving Assist / button.
- The driver presses the Driving Assist  button.
- The driver presses the hazard warning flasher button after the vehicle has stopped.
- The front door is opened.

The vehicle needs to be restarted to reactivate Lane Following Assist or Highway Driving Assist after the vehicle is stopped and ES is deactivated.



CAUTION

SCC operation is limited if the in-cabin camera is unable to detect your face.

ES Malfunction and Limitations

ES malfunction

When ES is not working properly, the '**Check emergency stopping function.**' warning message appears, and the Master  warning light illuminates on the instrument cluster. If this occurs, have your vehicle inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Detecting sensors

ES uses the following sensors:

- Front view camera
- Front radar

For more information, refer to the **Sensor information**.

Limitations of ES

For more information, refer to the **Smart Cruise Control (SCC)** and **Lane Following Assist (LFA)**.

Navigation-based Smart Cruise Control (NSCC)

 if equipped

NSCC can help drive at a safe speed according to the road conditions when driving on highways (or motorways) by using road information from the navigation system whilst Smart Cruise Control (SCC) is operating.

- NSCC is available only on certain highways.
- Certain highways with limited entrances and exits that allow uninterrupted high speed traffic flow. Only passenger cars and motorcycles are allowed on controlled access roads.
- Additional highways may be available in future navigation system updates.
- NSCC operates on main roads of highways (or motorways), and does not operate on interchanges or junctions.

NSCC operation

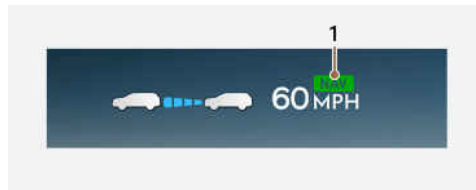
Operating conditions

NSCC is ready to operate if all of the following conditions are satisfied:

- **Auto motorway speed change** is selected from the infotainment system
- SCC is operating
- Driving on main roads of highways (or motorways)

NSCC display and control

If the operating conditions are satisfied, the green **NAV** indicator light illuminates on the instrument cluster.



1. NSCC indicator

- Green: If the operating conditions are satisfied
- Blinking Green: Whilst the speed is being controlled
- Grey: If NSCC cannot control the vehicle, such as when SCC is temporarily cancelled or the navigation system is searching for a route
- Blinking White: When the driver depresses the accelerator pedal

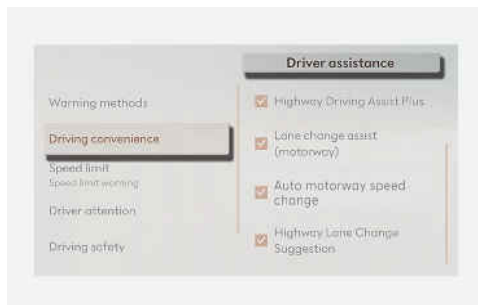
Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown

Depending on the curve ahead on the highway (or motorway), your vehicle decelerates, and after passing the curve, your vehicle accelerates to SCC's set speed.

- Vehicle deceleration time may differ depending on the vehicle speed and the degree of the curve on the road. The higher the driving speed, deceleration starts faster.

NSCC settings

Highway Set Speed Auto Change



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving convenience > Auto motorway speed change** from the Settings menu to turn on NSCC or deselect to turn off the function.

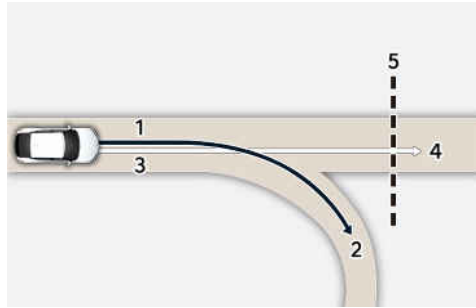
- When there is a problem with NSCC, the function cannot be set from the Settings menu.

NSCC limitations

NSCC may not operate properly under the following circumstances:

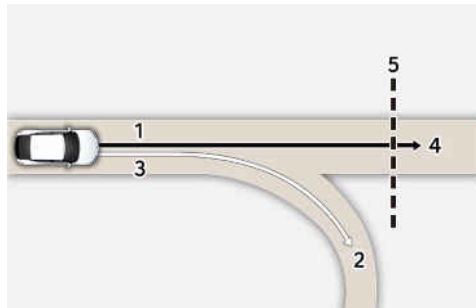
- The navigation is not working properly
- Map information is not transmitted due to infotainment system's abnormal operation
- The map information and the actual road is different because of real-time GPS data or map information error
- The navigation searches for a route whilst driving
- GPS signals are blocked in areas such as a tunnel
- The vehicle enters a service station or rest area
- Android Auto or Car Play is operating in the infotainment system
- The navigation cannot detect the current vehicle position (for example, elevated roads including overpass adjacent to general roads or nearby roads exist in a parallel way)
- The navigation is being updated whilst driving
- The navigation is being restarted whilst driving
- The speed limit of some sections changes according to the road situations
- Driving on a road under construction
- Driving in lane-restricted driving situations
- There is bad weather, such as heavy rain, heavy snow, etc.
- The vehicle leaves the main road to enter an interchange, junction, rest area, etc.
- You go off the route set in the navigation system
- A road that divides into two or more roads and joins again
- When lanes appear or disappear at sections other than the road that divides into two or more roads.
- When the performance of sensors that detect objects around the vehicle is at limit

- If the lane marking (or road edge) is unusual or damaged



1. Set route
2. Branch line
3. Driving route
4. Main road
5. Curved road section

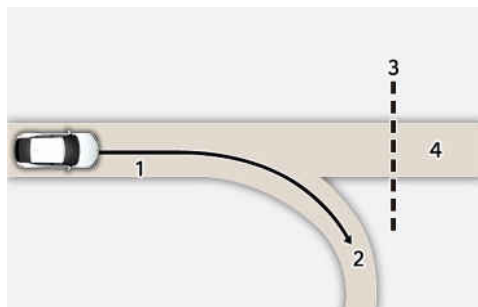
- When there is a difference between the navigation set route (branch line) and the driving route (main road), Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function may not operate until the driving route is recognised as the main road.
- When the vehicle's driving route is recognised as the main road by maintaining the main road instead of the navigation set route, Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function operates. Depending on the distance to the curve and the current vehicle speed, vehicle deceleration may not be sufficient or may decelerate rapidly.



1. Set route
2. Branch line
3. Driving route
4. Main road
5. Curved road section

- When there is a difference between the navigation route (main road) and the driving route (branch line), Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function may temporarily operate based on the curve information on the main road.

- When it is judged that you are driving out of the route by entering the highway interchange or junction, Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function does not operate.



1. Driving route
2. Branch line
3. Curved road section
4. Main road

- If there is no destination set on the navigation, Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function operates based on the curve information on the main road. Even if you depart from the main road, Highway Curve Zone Auto Slowdown function may temporarily operate due to navigation information of the highway curve section.

WARNING

- NSCC is not a substitute for safe driving practices, but a convenience function. Always have your eyes on the road, and it is the responsibility of the driver to avoid violating traffic laws.
- The navigation's speed limit information may differ from the actual speed limit information on the road. It is the driver's responsibility to check the speed limit on the actual driving road or lane.
- NSCC automatically cancels when you leave the highway (or motorway) main road. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.
- NSCC may not operate due to the existence of leading vehicles and the driving conditions of the vehicle. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.
- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off NSCC for safety reasons. You may lose control stability.
- After you pass through a tollgate on a highway (or motorway), NSCC operates based on the first lane. If you enter one of the other lanes, NSCC might not operate properly.
- The vehicle accelerates if the driver depresses the accelerator pedal whilst NSCC is operating, and the function does not decelerate the vehicle. However, if the accelerator pedal is depressed insufficiently, the vehicle may decelerate.
- If the driver accelerates and releases the accelerator pedal whilst NSCC is operating, the vehicle may not decelerate sufficiently or may rapidly decelerate to a safe speed.
- If the curve is too large or too small, NSCC may not operate.

Precautions

- A time gap could occur between the navigation's guidance and when NSCC operation starts and ends.
- The speed information on the instrument cluster and navigation may differ.
- Even if you are driving at a speed lower than SCC set speed, acceleration may be limited by the speed camera or curve sections ahead.
- If NSCC is operating whilst leaving the main road to enter an interchange, junction, rest area, etc., the function may operate for a certain period of time.
- Deceleration by NSCC may feel it is not sufficient due to road conditions such as uneven road surfaces, narrow lanes, etc.

Lane Following Assist (LFA)

LFA helps detect lane markings and/or a vehicle ahead on the road, and provide steering assist to keep your vehicle in the centre of the lane.

Turning LFA on/off



With the vehicle on, shortly press the Lane Driving Assist / button located on the steering wheel to turn on LFA. Press the button again to turn off the function.

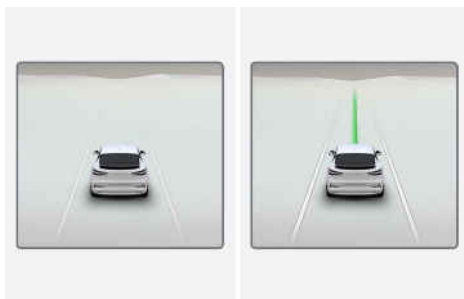
LFA operation



You can see the status of the LFA operation in the Driving Assist view on the cluster display. For more information, refer to the **Cluster display settings**.

- When both lane markings are detected, the lane lines on the cluster display changes from grey to white.

Lane undetected/Lane detected



Lane Following Assist

If the vehicle ahead and/or both lane markings are detected and your vehicle speed is below 110 mph (180 km/h), the green Ⓢ indicator light appears on the cluster display, and LFA helps centre the vehicle in the lane by assisting the steering wheel.



WARNING

LFA does not operate when the turn signal light or the hazard warning flasher is on.



CAUTION

When the steering wheel is not assisted, the white Ⓢ indicator light blinks and changes to grey.

Precautions

- If lane markings are not detected, steering wheel control by LFA can be limited depending on whether a vehicle is in front or the driving conditions of the vehicle.
- Even though the steering is assisted by LFA, the driver may control the steering wheel.
- The steering wheel may feel heavier or lighter when the steering wheel is assisted by LFA than when it is not.
- The lane lines displayed on the cluster display may differ from the actual lane lines.

Hands-off warning

If the driver does not keep their hands on the steering wheel for several seconds, the warning message appears and a warning sounds in stages.

- First stage: '**Keep hands on steering wheel**' warning message appears
- Second stage: Warning message (red steering wheel) appears with a warning sound

Canceling LFA

If the driver still does not have their hands on the steering wheel after the hands-off warning, the '**LFA (Lane Following Assist) cancelled**' warning message appears and LFA is automatically cancelled.



WARNING

- The steering wheel may not be assisted if the steering wheel is held very tight or the steering wheel is steered over a certain degree.
 - LFA does not operate at all times. It is the responsibility of the driver to safely steer the vehicle and to maintain the vehicle in its lane.
 - The hands-off warning message may appear late depending on road conditions. Always have your hands on the steering wheel whilst driving.
 - If the steering wheel is held very loosely or you have gloves on, the hands-off warning message may appear because the LFA may not recognise that you have your hands on the steering wheel.
 - If you attach objects to the steering wheel, the hands-off warning may not work properly.
-

LFA settings

Warning methods

You can set the following Warning methods for LFA:

- Warning volume
- Driving safety priority

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system settings**.

LFA malfunction and limitations

LFA malfunction

When LFA or related component malfunctions, a warning message, the Master  warning light appears on the instrument cluster. When the detecting sensors are obscured, the system may be temporarily limited or disabled. The system operates properly when foreign material is removed from the sensors. If the system does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system warnings and indicators**.

Detecting sensors

LFA uses the following sensor:

- Front view camera

For more information, refer to the **Sensor information**.

LFA limitations

When the detecting sensors cannot detect the surroundings, LFA may not operate properly.

For more information, refer to the **LKA malfunction and limitations**.



WARNING

- For more information on LFA precautions, refer to the **LKA malfunction and limitations**.
 - Loading in excess of the maximum load allowance or concentrated loading at one point in the cargo compartment can reduce the vehicle's driving stability, which can in turn reduce the effectiveness of LFA.
-

Highway Driving Assist (HDA)

 if equipped

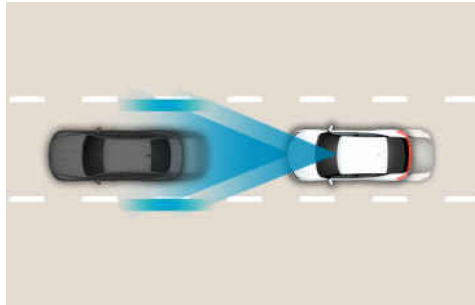
HDA helps maintain a set distance and speed from the vehicle ahead whilst driving on a highway main section and helps centre the vehicle in the lane.

HDA operation



HDA operates on main roads of highways (or motorways), and does not operate on interchanges or junctions.

Basic function



HDA function helps maintain the set speed and distance from the vehicle ahead, and helps centre your vehicle in the lane.

Turning HDA on/off



HDA operates when driving on the main road of highways, and turning on/off HDA by pressing the Driving Assist  button.

- HDA operates automatically when entering the main road of highways whilst Lane Following Assist (LFA) and Smart Cruise Control (SCC) are operating.

HDA operating status



The indicators appear on the cluster display as below depending on the status of HDA.

No.	Description
1	Highway Driving Assist HDA indicator • Green: The indicator appears in green when HDA is on and the vehicle distance, speed and, centering control is activated. • Grey: HDA is in standby state when the driver presses the  switch or depresses the brake pedal to temporarily cancel SCC. At this time, LFA operates properly. • Blinking White: The indicator blinks in white when the driver temporarily accelerates by depressing the accelerator. • Not appearing: When HDA turns off, the indicator also turns off.
2	SCC set speed
3	LFA operating status

- For more information on LFA limitations, refer to the **Lane Following Assist (LFA)**.
- For more information on SCC limitations, refer to the **Smart Cruise Control (SCC)**.
- You can see the status of the HDA operation in the Driving Assist view on the cluster display. For more information, refer to the **Cluster display settings**.

Restarting after stopping

When HDA is operating, your vehicle stops if the vehicle ahead of you stops. Also, if the vehicle ahead of you starts moving within 30 seconds after the stop, your vehicle starts as well.

- If your vehicle is equipped with Emergency Stop and an in-cabin camera for Forward Attention Warning, the vehicle's dwell time may be extended depending on whether the driver is keeping eyes forward.

In addition, after the vehicle has stopped and 30 seconds have passed, the '**Use switch or pedal to accelerate**' message appears on the cluster display. Depress the accelerator pedal or operate the **+** switch, **—** switch or **||○** switch to start driving.

Warning and control when hands-off detected

Hands-off warning

If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel for several seconds, the '**Keep hands on steering wheel**' warning message appears and an audible warning sounds.



CAUTION

When Emergency Stop (ES) is applied and if you keep taking your hands off the steering wheel, then Emergency Stop will activate.

For more information, refer to the **Emergency Stop (ES)**.

HDA system cancelled

If the driver still does not have their hands on the steering wheel after the hands-off warning, '**HDA (Motorway Driving Assist) sys. cancelled**' warning message appears and HDA is automatically cancelled.

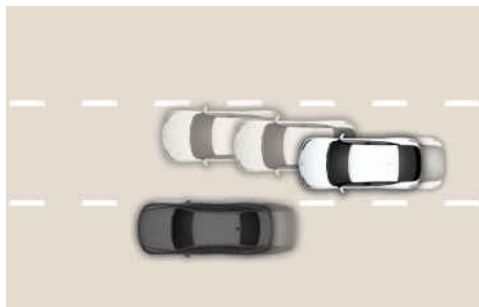
Driving speed limit

When HDA is cancelled by the hands-off warning, The driving speed is limited below 40 mph (60 km/h). Whilst Driving speed limit function is operating, the '**Driver's grasp not detected. Speed will be limited**' warning message appears on the instrument cluster, and an audible warning sounds continuously.

- Driving Speed Limit is cancelled in the following circumstances:
 - When the driver grabs the steering wheel again
 - When the driver turns on LFA by pressing the Lane Driving Assist **/☺** button
 - When **+**, **—**, **||○** switch or **☺** button is operated, or the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal is depressed

Driving to one side within lane

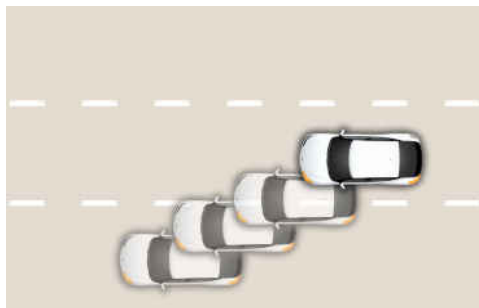
 if equipped



When your vehicle speed is above 40 mph (60 km/h), if a detected vehicle around you is driving at a close distance, your vehicle controls steering in the opposite direction of the vehicle to assist in safe driving. If there a detected vehicle in both sides of the lane that are driving close to you, the function does not veer to the opposite side of the lane.

Highway Lane Change Assist

 if equipped



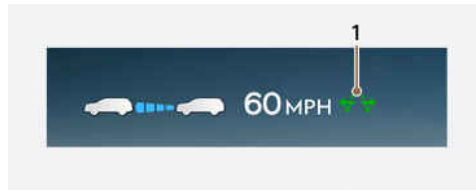
Highway Lane Change Assist function helps change lanes to the direction you operate the turn signal switch if the function judges that lane change is possible.

Turning on Highway Lane Change Assist

Highway Lane Change Assist turns on under the following circumstances:

- Operate the **+**, **-**, **||**  switch to turn on HDA. Highway Lane Change Assist also turns on.
- If you want to use Highway Lane Change Assist, press the **OK** () button on the steering wheel when a message appears on the cluster display.

Operating status



Highway Lane Change Assist   indicator appears depending on the status of the function.

When the function is not operating or cancels during operation, a warning message appears on the cluster display.

You can see the status of the Highway Lane Change Assist operation in the Driving Assist view on the cluster display. Operating status is shown with indicator colours, arrows, etc.

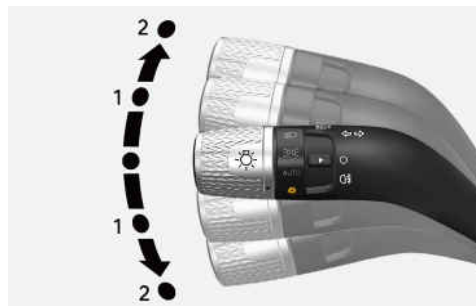
Highway Lane Change Assist ready to operate

When all the following conditions are satisfied, Highway Lane Change Assist function is ready to operate, and the   indicator turns green:

- HDA is operating
- LFA is operating
- A vehicle in the rear area of your vehicle is detected more than once after the vehicle is turned on
- Your vehicle speed is above 18 mph (30 km/h)
- When your vehicle is between 18-50 mph (30-80 km/h), a vehicle is detected in the rear area of your vehicle's left and right side lanes, and there is no risk of collision when changing a lane
- Hands-off warning is not appearing on the cluster display
- Hazard warning flasher is off

Whilst Highway Lane Change Assist function is turned on (indicator on), LFA does not cancel even if the turn signal indicator or hazard warning flasher is operating.

Highway Lane Change Assist operation



Highway Lane Change Assist operates and the   indicator blinks in green when you push the turn signal lever up or down slightly or completely and all of the following conditions are satisfied.

- The driver has his/her hand on the steering wheel
- There is no collision risk in the direction of lane change
- There is a single dotted lane line in the direction of lane change
- There are no Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) and Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA) warnings
- The vehicle is driven in the middle of the lane (should not be driving close to one side of the lane)
- The road you are driving on, or the road you are about to change lane is a road that the function can operate

Highway Lane Change Assist cancels when the driver performs the following actions. When Highway Lane Change Assist is cancelled, the indicator blinks in white for a moment.

- The turn signal lever is pushed completely and it's released to the centre before the vehicle steps a lane line whilst Highway Lane Line Assist is operating.
- The turn signal lever is turned on in the opposite direction of lane change
- The steering wheel is steered sharply



WARNING

When Highway Lane Change Assist function turns off whilst operating, steering assist is temporarily cancelled. Always be cautious whilst driving.

Highway Lane Change Assist precautions

- Highway Lane Change Assist operates when the turn signal lever is pushed completely. After stepping on the lane, even if the lever is released to the centre, Highway Lane Change Assist does not cancel.
- Highway Lane Change Assist operates when the turn signal lever is pushed slightly. The turn signal indicator blinks until the lane change is complete even when the turn signal lever is released to the centre.

Highway Lane Change Assist standby

Highway Lane Change Assist function is in the standby state and the indicator appears in grey when one of the ready state condition is not satisfied, or when entering or driving on one of the following roads.

- Road within a certain distance from the tollgate on the main road of the highway
- The road ahead ends without an interchange or junction
- Road with sharp curves
- Road with narrow lanes
- When the function is in the ready state, and vehicle speed is below 15.5 mph (25 km/h), the function changes to the standby state.
- When your vehicle is between 18-50 mph (30-80 km/h), and a vehicle is not detected in the rear area of your vehicle's left and right side lanes, the function changes to the standby state.
- If there is a risk of collision, the function changes to the standby state.

Highway Lane Change Assist automatic cancellation

Lane Change Assist function turns off automatically and the indicator blinks in white when driven in the following road conditions:

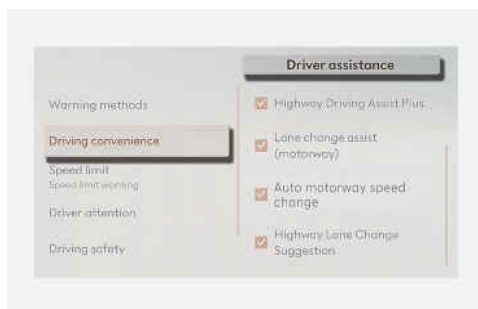
- HDA is turned off
- LFA or SCC is turned off or temporarily cancelled
- Hands-off warning message is appearing on the cluster display
- The hazard warning flasher is turned on
- FCA or BCA warning message is appearing
- Possible collision with a vehicle or road structure, etc., is detected, even though there are no warning messages
- Possible collision with a road structure is detected, due to the road branching ahead in the lane change direction.
- The target lane to make a lane change disappears
- The lane of target lane is not detected.
- There is a problem with turn signal lights
- Highway Lane Change Assist function is off (The function turns off when the function is turned off from the settings menu, when the road changes to a one-way road, when there is an intersection or crosswalk ahead, when you enter a road with no structure, such as a medium strip, guardrail, etc., or when there is a pedestrian or cyclist on the driving lane.)
- Your vehicle speed is below 15.5 mph (25 km/h)
- When your vehicle is between 18-50 mph (30-80 km/h), and a vehicle is not detected in the rear area of your vehicle's left and right side lanes
- If there is a risk of collision with a vehicle in the rear area of your vehicle
- Entering a road under construction



WARNING

- Whilst the function is operating, when the function is cancelled, depending on the driving conditions, the vehicle may drive to the middle of the driving lane or steering assist may stop. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.
 - The function may not operate properly on roads with pedestrians or cyclists, such as an intersection or crosswalk. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.
-

HDA settings



With the vehicle on, select or deselect **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Driving convenience** from the Settings menu to set whether to use each function.

- If Highway Driving Assist is selected, it helps maintain distance from the vehicle ahead, maintain the set speed, and helps centre the vehicle in the lane.
- If '**Lane change assist (motorway)**' is selected, it helps the driver change lanes. (If equipped)
- When '**Lane change assist (motorway)**' is selected, the setting for '**Lane change assist (motorway)**' can be changed.
- If there is a problem with the functions, the settings cannot be changed. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- If the vehicle is restarted, the functions maintains the last setting.

Warning methods

You can set the following Warning methods for HDA:

- Warning volume
- Driving safety priority

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system settings**.

HDA malfunction and limitations

HDA malfunction

When HDA or related component malfunctions, a warning message, the Master  warning light appears on the instrument cluster. When the detecting sensors are obscured, the system may be temporarily limited or disabled. The system operates properly when foreign material is removed from the sensors. If the system does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system warnings and indicators**.

Detecting sensors

HDA uses the following sensors:

- Front view camera
- Front radar

- Front corner radar (if equipped)
- Rear corner radar (if equipped)

For more information, refer to the **Sensor information, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)** and **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)**.



WARNING

- The driver is responsible for controlling the vehicle for safe driving
 - Always have your hands on the steering wheel whilst driving.
 - HDA is a supplemental function that assists the driver in driving the vehicle and is not a complete autonomous driving system. Always check road conditions, and if necessary, take appropriate actions to drive safely.
 - Always have your eyes on the road, and it is the responsibility of the driver to avoid violating traffic laws. The vehicle manufacturer is not responsible for any traffic violation or accidents caused by the driver.
 - HDA may not be able to recognise all traffic situations. HDA may not detect possible collisions due to limitations of the function. Always be aware of the limitations of the function. Obstacles such as vehicle, motorcyclist, bicycle, pedestrian, or unspecified object or structure such as guardrails, tollgate, etc., that may collide with the vehicle may not be detected.
 - HDA turns off automatically under the following situations:
 - Driving on roads that HDA does not operate, such as a rest area, intersection, junction, etc.
 - The navigation does not operate properly such as when the navigation is being updated or restarted
 - HDA may inadvertently operate or turn off depending on road conditions (navigation information) and surroundings.
 - LFA function may be temporarily disabled when the front view camera cannot detect lanes properly or the hands-off warning is on.
 - You may not hear the warning sound of HDA if the surrounding is noisy.
 - If the vehicle is driven at high speed above a certain speed at a curve, your vehicle may drive to one side or may depart from the driving lane.
 - When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off HDA for safety reasons. Your vehicle may lose control stability.
 - The hands-off warning message may appear early or late depending on how the steering wheel is held or road conditions. Always have your hands on the steering wheel whilst driving.
 - For your safety, please read the owner's manual before using the HDA.
 - HDA does not operate when the vehicle is started, or when the detecting sensors or navigation is being initialized.
-

HDA limitations

When the detecting sensors cannot detect the surroundings, HDA may not operate properly.

HDA may not operate properly, or may not operate under the following circumstances. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving:

- The map information and the actual road is different because the navigation is not updated
- The map information and the actual road is different because of real-time GPS data or map information error
- The infotainment system is overloaded by simultaneously performing functions such as route search, voice recognition, etc.
- GPS signals are blocked in areas such as a tunnel
- The driver goes off course or the route to the destination is changed or cancelled by resetting the navigation
- The vehicle enters a service station or rest area
- Android Auto or Car Play is operating in the infotainment system
- The navigation cannot detect the current vehicle position (for example, elevated roads including overpass adjacent to general roads or nearby roads exist in a parallel way)
- White single dotted lane line or road edge cannot be detected
- The road is temporarily controlled due to construction, etc.
- There is no structure, such as a median strip, guardrails, etc., on the road
- There is a changeable lane in the direction of lane change
- If a trailer, carrier, etc., is installed

Rear View Monitor (RVM)

 if equipped

RVM shows the area behind the vehicle to assist you when parking or driving.

RVM operation

Turning RVM on/off



1. Home button
2. View Mode button
3. Infotainment system screen button

When the gear is shifted to R (Reverse), RVM turns on and the rear view appears on the screen.

When RVM turns on, touch the View Mode button to select rear view, rear top view, or rear wide view.

RVM turns off under the following circumstances:

- The gear is shifted to P (Park)
- The gear is shifted to N (Neutral) or D (Drive) and your vehicle speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h).

Extended Rear View Monitor

The rear view maintains showing on the screen to help with safe parking when the gear is shifted from R (Reverse) to N (Neutral) or D (Drive).

If Extended Rear View Monitor is selected, RVM screen stays on under the following circumstances:

- The gear is shifted from R (Reverse) to N (Neutral) or D (Drive)
- The Parking/View button is pressed whilst the vehicle is driving below 6 mph (10 km/h) or less in D (drive) or N (Neutral)
- The Parking/View button is pressed whilst the gear is in P (Park)

When Extended Rear View Monitor is operating, touch the View Mode button to select rear view, rear top view, or rear wide view.

Extended Rear View Monitor function turns off under the following circumstances:

- The gear is shifted to P (Park)
- The Parking/View button is pressed again
- The Home button is selected on the rear view menu
- One of the infotainment system screen button is selected
- The vehicle speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h)

Rear View whilst driving

Rear View whilst driving turns on under the following circumstances:

- The Parking/View button is pressed, whilst the gear is in N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and the vehicle speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h)

Touch the View Mode button to select rear view or rear wide view.

Rear View whilst driving turns off under the following circumstances:

- The gear is shifted to P (Park)
- The Parking/View button is pressed
- The Home button is selected on the rear view menu
- The Infotainment system screen button is pressed

Precautions

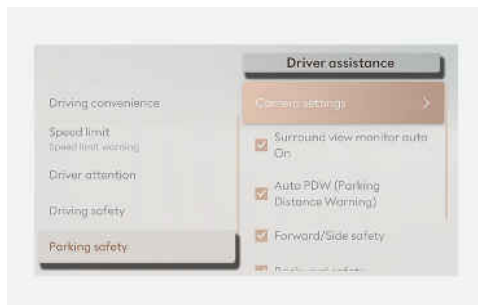
- When the gear is in R (Reverse), the rear view does not turn off.
- When the rear view is activated, the latest used view mode appears.
- The rear parking guidelines appear in rear view and rear top view mode. (When selected in **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Parking safety > Camera settings > Display contents > Rear view reference lines** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system).

However, rear parking guidelines do not appear in the rear view whilst driving.

- The rear view whilst driving does not turn off even when the vehicle speed is lower than 6 mph (10 km/h) once it is on.
- When the rear view whilst driving is on, the rear top view deactivates.

RVM settings

Camera settings



You can change RVM Display contents by touching the setup icon  on the screen whilst RVM is operating, or by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Parking safety > Camera settings** from the Settings menu in the infotainment system whilst the vehicle is on.

Display contents

- If **Extend rear camera use** is selected, the RVM keeps showing the rear view when shifting from R (Reverse) to N (Neutral) or D (Drive). When exceeding a certain speed, the rear view stops appearing.
- If **Rear view reference lines** is selected, the rear view parking guide lines and rear top view guide lines appears at the rear view area of the infotainment system screen.
 - The horizontal guideline of the rear top view guide lines shows the tailgate opening distance and the distance of about 60 in. (1.5 m) from the vehicle based on the empty vehicle condition.
 - The horizontal guideline of the rear view parking guide lines shows the distance of about 20 in. (0.5 m), 40 in. (1 m) and 91 in. (2.3 m) from the vehicle based on the empty vehicle condition.

Display settings

- You can set the brightness (day/night) and contrast of the camera image in **Display settings**.
 - The **Display settings** menu may not exist based on vehicle specification.

Warning methods

You can set the following Warning methods for RVM:

- Parking safety priority

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system settings**.

RVM malfunction and limitations

RVM malfunction

When RVM malfunctions, the image on the screen may appear green, blue, or black.

When RVM is not working properly, or the screen flickers, or the camera image does not appear properly, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

RVM limitations

- When your vehicle is stopped for a long time in winter or your vehicle is parked in an indoor parking lot, the exhaust fumes may temporarily blur the image.
- The screen may appear abnormally under the following circumstances:
 - When the tailgate is open

Detecting sensors

RVM uses the following sensor:

- Wide-rear view camera

For more information, refer to the **Sensor information**.



WARNING

- The wide-rear view camera does not cover the complete area behind the vehicle. The driver should always check the rear area directly through the inside and outside rearview mirror before parking or backing up.
 - Always keep the camera lens clean. If the lens is blocked or covered, RVM may not operate normally. Do not clean with strong chemicals containing high alkaline or volatile organic solvents (for example, petrol, acetone).
 - The distance to the object shown on the screen may differ from the actual distance. This is because the image shown on the RVM appears by calibrating the image from the wide-rear view camera. When the vehicle is tilted by cargo weight or position, rear parking guidelines may differ from the actual distance. Make sure to directly check the vehicle's surroundings for safety.
 - Driving with the tailgate open is abnormal. For your safety, be aware and drive safely.
-

Surround View Monitor (SVM)

 if equipped

SVM uses the wide view cameras and images appear around your vehicle through the infotainment system to help with safe parking or driving.

SVM operation

Turning SVM on/off



1. Home button
2. View Mode button
3. Infotainment system screen button

SVM turns on under the following circumstances:

- Front view: The gear is shifted to N (Neutral) or D (Drive) from R (Reverse)
Rear view: The gear is shifted to R (Reverse)
- The Parking/View button is pressed, whilst the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and vehicle speed is 6 mph (10 km/h) or less
- Forward Parking Distance Warning (PDW) warns you whilst **Surround view monitor auto On** is selected

SVM function turns off under the following circumstances:

- The gear is shifted from R (Reverse), N (Neutral) or D (Drive) to P (Park)
- The gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral) or D (Drive)
- Vehicle speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h)

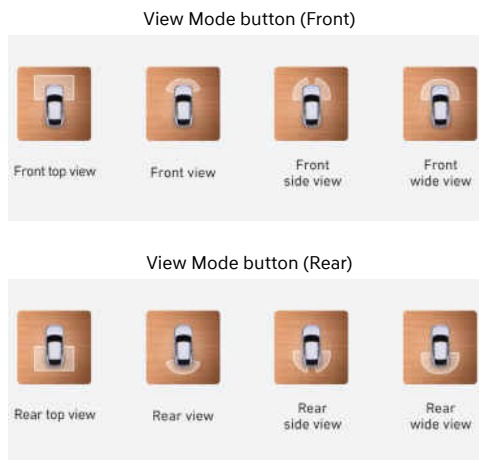
- The Parking/View button is pressed
- The Home button is selected on the surround view menu
- The Infotainment system button is pressed

Selecting Front view/Rear view

Front view/Rear view can be changed by shifting the gear.

You may select the view using the View Mode button.

- When the gear shifted to R (Reverse), you can select rear top view, rear view, rear side view, or rear wide view.
- When the gear shifted to P (Park), N (Neutral) or D (Drive), you can select front/rear top view, front/rear view, front/rear side view, or front/rear wide view.



Precautions

- When the front view/rear view is activated, the latest used view mode appears.
- When the gear is in R (Reverse), the rear view always appears.
- When the gear is in R (Reverse), the rear view does not turn off even if the infotainment system button is pressed.

SVM whilst driving

The SVM turns on when the Parking/View button is pressed, whilst the gear is in N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and vehicle speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h).

The front/rear view or front/rear wide view can be selected by pressing the View Mode button.

SVM whilst driving turns off under the following circumstances:

- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse)
- The gear is shifted to P (Park)
- The Parking/View button is pressed
- The Home button is selected on the surround view menu

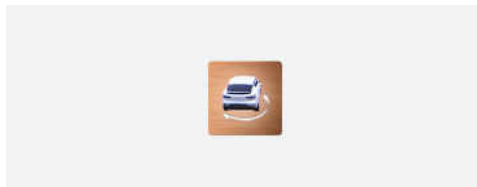
- The Infotainment system button is pressed

Precautions

- When the SVM whilst driving is activated, the latest used view mode appears.
- The Rear View Parking Lines does not operate on the rear view whilst driving.
- With the SVM whilst driving on, the front/rear view does not turn off even when the vehicle speed is lower than 6 mph (10 km/h) once it is on.
- When the SVM whilst driving is on, the front/rear top view and front/rear side view are deactivated in all speed.

3D view

View Mode button (3D view)



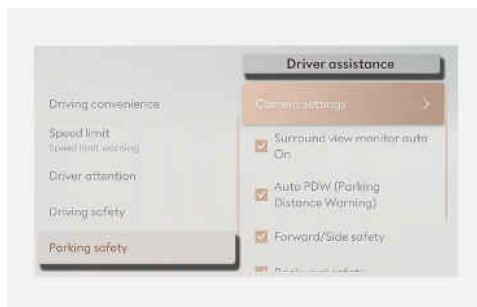
When the 3D view is selected by pressing the View Mode button, the gear is in R (Reverse), P (Park), N (Neutral) or D (Drive) when vehicle speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).

Precautions

- 3D view does not show guidelines.
- The top view screen appearing with front/rear view or 3D view converts the original image input from the four wide-angle cameras to provide a 360-degree image of the surroundings of the vehicle looking down.
- The top view does not appear with the front/rear wide view.
- The top view zoom-in can be set to pinch-in/out adjustment within the top view area.

SVM settings

Camera settings



You can change SVM **Display contents** by touching the setup ⚙ icon on the screen whilst SVM is operating, or by selecting **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Parking safety >**

Camera settings from the Settings menu in the infotainment system whilst the vehicle is on.

Display contents

- When the **Parking distance warning** is selected, parking distance warning appears on the top view area on right side of the SVM screen.
- When the **Top view reference lines** is selected, the parking guideline appears on the top view area of the SVM screen when the front top view and rear top view appears.
 - The horizontal guideline of the rear top view reference lines shows the tailgate opening distance and the distance of about 79 in. (2 m) from the vehicle based on the empty vehicle condition.
- When the **Rear view reference lines** is selected, parking guidance appears in the rear view.
 - The horizontal guideline of the rear view reference lines shows the distance of about 20 in. (0.5 m), 40 in. (1 m) and 91 in. (2.3 m) from the vehicle based on the empty vehicle condition.

Display settings

- You can set the brightness (day/night) and contrast of the camera image in **Display settings**.
 - The **Display settings** menu may not exist based on vehicle specification.

Surround view monitor auto On

With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Parking safety > Surround view monitor auto On** in the infotainment system to use the function.

When **Surround view monitor auto On** is selected, SVM turns on automatically if the Forward Parking Distance Warning operates. However, when SVM is turned off by pressing the Parking/View button or the infotainment system button, the system does not activate.

Warning methods

You can set the following Warning methods for SVM:

- Parking safety priority

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system settings**.

SVM malfunction and limitations

SVM malfunction

When SVM malfunctions, the image on the screen may appear green, blue, or black.

When SVM is not working properly, or the screen flickers, or the camera image does not appear properly, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

SVM limitations

- When the vehicle is stopped for a long time in winter or when the vehicle is parked in an indoor parking lot, the exhaust fumes may temporarily blur the image.
- The screen may appear abnormally, and an icon may appear at the top view area of the screen under the following circumstances:

- The tailgate is opened
- The driver or front passenger door is opened
- The outside rearview mirror is folded

Detecting sensors

SVM uses the following sensors:

- Wide-front view camera
- Wide-side view cameras
- Wide-rear view camera

For more information, refer to the **Sensor information**.



WARNING

- The distance to the object shown on the screen may differ from the actual distance. This is because the image shown on the SVM appears by calibrating the images from the wide view cameras. When the vehicle is tilted by cargo weight or position, rear parking guidelines may differ from the actual distance. Make sure to directly check the vehicle's surroundings for safety.
 - SVM is designed to be used on a flat surface. Therefore, if used on roads with different heights such as kerbs and speed bumps, the image in the screen may not look correct.
 - Always keep the camera lens clean. If the lens is blocked or covered, RVM may not operate normally. Do not clean with strong chemicals containing high alkaline or volatile organic solvents (for example, petrol, acetone).
 - Driving with the tailgate open is abnormal. For your safety, be aware and drive safely.
-

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA)

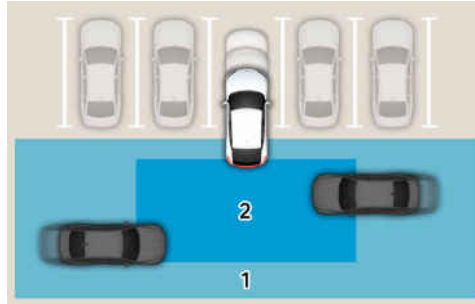
RCCA detects vehicles approaching from the rear left or right whilst your vehicle is reversing and warns you of a possible collision with a warning message and a warning sound. Also, RCCA may assist with braking your vehicle to help avoid a collision.



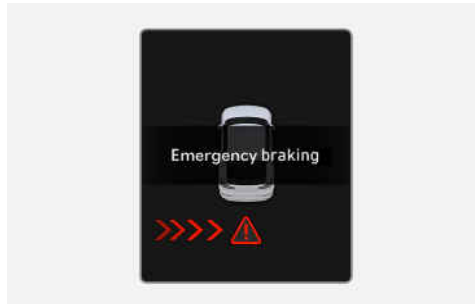
CAUTION

Warning timing may differ depending on the speed of the approaching vehicle.

RCCA operation



1. Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning operating range
2. Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operating range



To warn the driver of an approaching vehicle from the rear left/right side of your vehicle, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror or digital side mirror (if equipped) blinks and a warning appears on the instrument cluster. At the same time, an audible warning sounds. If Rear View Monitor (RVM) is operating, a warning also appears on the infotainment system (if equipped).

RCCA operates when all the following conditions are satisfied:

- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse) and the vehicle speed is below 5 mph (8 km/h)
- The approaching vehicle is within about 5 ft. (1.5 m) from the left and right side of your vehicle
- The speed of the vehicle approaching from the left and right is above 3 mph (5 km/h)

Collision warning operates when the approaching vehicle is within about 82 ft. (25 m) from the left and right side of your vehicle.

Braking control ends about 2 seconds after your vehicle is stopped following an emergency braking event. For your safety, the driver should depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.

- During emergency braking, braking control by RCCA automatically cancels when the driver excessively depresses the brake pedal.
- After shifting the gear to R (Reverse), braking control operates once for left and right vehicle approach.

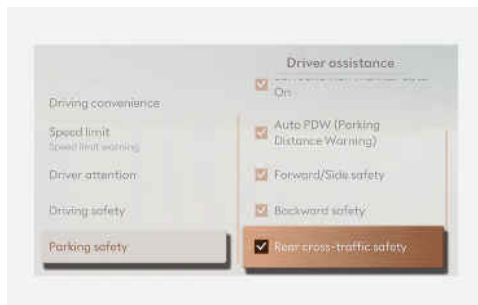


WARNING

- Brake control ends when:
 - The approaching vehicle is out of the detecting range
 - The approaching vehicle passes behind your vehicle
 - The approaching vehicle does not drive toward your vehicle
 - The approaching vehicle speed slows down
 - The driver depresses the brake pedal with sufficient power
 - If RCCA is operated, Brake control ends when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal with sufficient power.
 - RCCA does not operate in all situations or cannot avoid all collisions.
 - RCCA may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver depending on the road and driving conditions.
 - The driver has the responsibility to control the vehicle. Do not solely depend on RCCA. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce driving speed or to stop the vehicle.
 - Never deliberately operate RCCA on people, animal, objects, etc. It may cause serious injury or death.
 - Depending on the status of Electronic Stability Control (ESC), brake control may not operate properly and only a warning is provided when:
 - The ESC warning light is on
 - ESC is engaged in a different function
 - If any other system's warning message appears or audible warning is generated, RCCA warning message may not appear and audible warning may not be generated.
 - You may not hear the warning sound of RCCA if the surrounding is noisy.
 - During RCCA operation, the vehicle may stop suddenly injuring passengers and shifting loose objects. Always have the seat belt on and keep loose objects secured.
 - RCCA may not operate if the driver applies the brake pedal to avoid collision.
 - Even if there is a problem with RCCA, the vehicle's basic braking performance operates properly.
-

RCCA settings

Rear cross-traffic safety



With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Parking safety > Rear cross-traffic safety** from the settings menu in the infotainment system to turn on RCCA and deselect to turn off the function.



WARNING

When the vehicle is restarted, RCCA always turn on. However, if **Rear cross-traffic safety** is deselected after the vehicle is restarted, the driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.

Warning methods

You can set the following Warning methods for RCCA:

- Warning volume
- Haptic warning

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system settings**.

RCCA malfunction and limitations

RCCA malfunction

When RCCA or related component malfunctions, a warning message and the Master  warning light appears on the instrument cluster. Also, when the outside rearview mirror is not working properly, a warning message and the Master  warning light appears on the instrument cluster. When the detecting sensors are obscured, the system may be temporarily limited or disabled. The system operates properly when foreign material is removed from the sensors. If the system does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system warnings and indicators**.



CAUTION

Turn off RCCA to install or remove a trailer, carrier, or another attachment. Turn on RCCA when finished.

Detecting sensors

RCCA uses the following sensor:

- Rear corner radars

For more information, refer to the **Sensor information** and **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)**.

RCCA limitations

RCCA may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- Departing from where trees or grass are overgrown
- Departing from where roads are wet
- Speed of the approaching vehicle is fast or slow

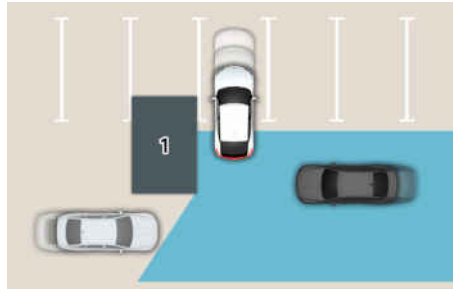
Braking control may not work, driver's attention is required in the following circumstances:

- The vehicle severely vibrates whilst driving over a bumpy road, uneven road or concrete patch
- Driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
- The tyre pressure is low or a tyre is damaged
- The braking system has been modified
- Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating (if equipped)



WARNING

- In the following cases, the vehicle approaching from the rear left or right may not be detected. RCCA may be limited and may not warn or assist in braking. Always check your surroundings and drive carefully.
 - When your vehicle is backing up and there is a driving vehicle or structure nearby



1. Structure

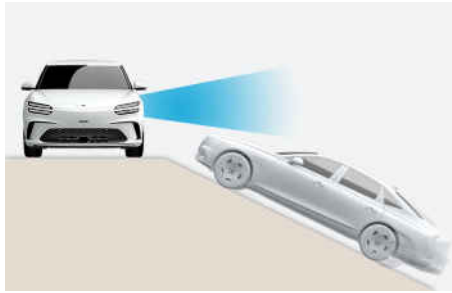
- When the vehicle is in a complex parking environment (for example, a vehicle leaving beside your vehicle, a vehicle parking or pulling out in the rear area, a vehicle approaching your vehicle making a turn, etc.)



- When your vehicle backing up diagonally



- When your vehicle backing up on or near a slope

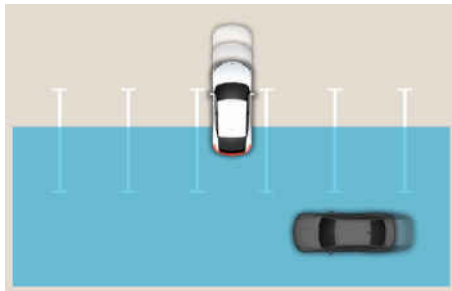


- Pulling into the parking space where there is a structure that can reflect electric waves



1. Structure
2. Wall

- When the vehicle is parked rearward



- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off RCCA for safety reasons.
- RCCA may not operate properly if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.
- RCCA may not operate for 3 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the rear corner radars are initialized.
- If the vehicle is turned off and restarted whilst the radar is blocked or malfunctioned, the condition is maintained. Therefore, RCCA may not operate properly.

Parking Distance Warning (PDW)

PDW uses the front, side (if equipped), and rear ultrasonic sensors to detect and warn you if a person, animal, or object is within a certain distance when your vehicle is stopped or driving at low speed.

PDW Operation

Turning PDW on/off



Press the Parking Safety **P** button to turn on PDW. Press the button again to turn off the function.

- When the gear is shift to R (Reverse), PDW automatically turns on (Parking Safety button indicator on).
- For your safety, when the gear is in R (Reverse), PDW does not turn off even if you press the Parking Safety **P** button.

Parking Distance Warning

Distance from object	Cluster warning indicator			Warning sound
	Forward	Side (if equipped)	Reverse	
24-48 in. (60-120 cm)				Buzzer beeps intermittently (not generated for front outer and side area)
12-24 in. (30-60 cm)				Buzzer beeps more frequently (not generated for side area)
within 12 in. (30 cm)				Buzzer beeps continuously

- The corresponding indicator illuminates whenever each ultrasonic sensor detects a person or object in its sensing range. Also an audible warning sounds.

- When more than two objects are detected at the same time, the closest one is warned with an audible warning.
- When Rear View Monitor (RVM) or Surround View Monitor (SVM) is on (with PDW turned on), PDW appears on the infotainment system.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

Forward Parking Distance Warning activates under the following conditions.

- The gear is shifted from R (Reverse) to D (Drive)
- The gear is in D (Drive) and the Parking Safety P[Ⓜ] button indicator light is on
- The gear is shifted to D (Drive) when the function is off (Only when **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Parking safety > Auto PDW (Parking Distance Warning)** is selected in the infotainment system.)
- Forward Parking Distance Warning activates only when the vehicle's forward speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- If **Auto PDW (Parking Distance Warning)** is not selected, Forward Parking Distance Warning turns off (Parking Safety button indicator off) when the vehicle speed reaches above 18 mph (30 km/h). It does not automatically turn back on although the vehicle speed drops below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- Whilst the gear is in R (Reverse) and turning, if an object located within 12 in. (30 cm) from the front outer side of the vehicle's path is detected, an audible warning sounds.

Side Parking Distance Warning activates under the following conditions.

- Side Parking Distance Warning activates only when Forward or Reverse Parking Distance Warning is on.
- Side Parking Distance Warning activates when the vehicle's forward speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- If an object located within 12 in. (30 cm) from the side of the vehicle's path is detected, an audible warning sounds.
- If an object outside the side of the vehicle's path is detected, the warning indicator appears.
- When the gear is in D (Drive) and an object is only detected on the side, which is not located within 12 in. (30 cm), the warning does not appear on the cluster.

Reverse Parking Distance Warning activates under the following conditions.

- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse)

PDW settings

Parking Distance Warning Auto On

Whilst driving at low speed, you can set Parking Distance Warning always turns on. With the vehicle on, select **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Parking safety > Auto PDW (Parking Distance Warning)** in the infotainment system.

- When Auto PDW (Parking Distance Warning) is selected, the Parking Safety P[Ⓜ] button indicator stays on.

Warning methods

You can set the following Warning methods for PDW:

- Warning volume

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system settings**.

PDW malfunction and limitations

PDW malfunction and sensor obscured

When PDW or related component malfunctions, a warning message or warning light appears on the instrument cluster. When the detecting sensors are obscured, the system may be temporarily limited or disabled. The system operates properly when foreign material is removed from the sensors. If the system does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system warnings and indicators**.

- You can check the warning message in the Normal view mode on the cluster display.

Detecting sensors

PDW uses the following sensors:

- Front ultrasonic sensors
- Front side ultrasonic sensors (if equipped)
- Rear ultrasonic sensors
- Rear side ultrasonic sensors (if equipped)

For more information, refer to the **Sensor information**.

PDW limitations

When the detecting sensors cannot detect the surrounding situations, PDW may not operate properly.

PDW may malfunction when:

- Heavy rain or water spray is present
- Affected by another vehicle's sensors
- Driving on uneven road, gravel roads or bushes
- License plate is installed in a different spot from the original location
- An unofficial license plate is installed
- The vehicle bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified
- Attaching equipment or accessories next to the ultrasonic sensors

The following objects may not be detected:

- Sharp or slim objects, such as ropes, chains or small poles
- Narrow objects, such as corners of a square column
- Objects smaller than 40 in. (100 cm) in length and narrower than 6 in. (14 cm) in diameter
- Objects, which tend to absorb sensor frequency, such as clothes, spongy material or snow
- Pedestrians, animals or objects that are very close to the ultrasonic sensors
- An object in the Side space between the front corner ultrasonic sensor and the rear corner ultrasonic sensor or an object approaching the Side space



WARNING

- PDW is a supplemental function. The operation of PDW can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the front and rear views before and whilst parking.
 - Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle due to the malfunction of PDW.
 - Pay close attention when driving near objects, pedestrians, and especially children. Some objects may not be detected by the ultrasonic sensors, due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor.
 - PDW may not warn you in the order of detection. It varies depending on the speed of the vehicle or the shape of a person, animal, or object.
 - If the PDW does not operate properly, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
 - Driving with the tailgate open is abnormal. For your safety, be aware and drive safely.
-

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist (PCA)

 if equipped

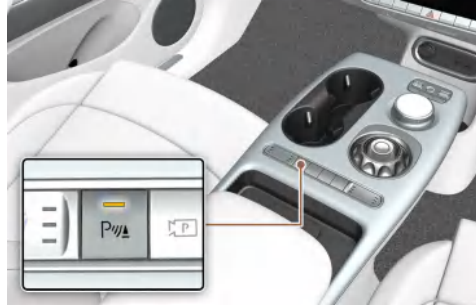
PCA can warn the driver and assist with braking to help reduce the possibility of collision with a pedestrian or an object whilst driving at low speed.

PCA can detect a pedestrian or an object when:

- A pedestrian is standing behind the vehicle
- A large obstacle, such as a vehicle, is parked in the rear centre of your vehicle

PCA operation

Turning PCA on/off



Press and hold the Parking Safety  button to turn the PCA on or off.

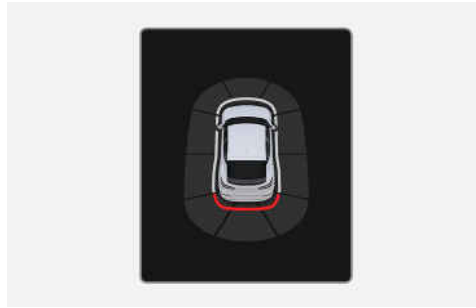
When PCA detects a risk of collision around the vehicle with a pedestrian or an object, if collision is imminent, PCA assists with braking and warns the driver with an audible warning, a warning message on the instrument cluster, and steering wheel vibration.

- PCA activates only once after a shift. It is reactivated if you shift to another gear.
- When PCA is activated whilst reversing, braking control is released after 5 minutes and the EPB is engaged.
- When PCA activates, a line appears behind the vehicle image in the instrument cluster.
- If Surround View Monitor (SVM) is operating, a warning appears on the infotainment screen.



WARNING

If PCA turns off, you cannot get help from PCA. Always pay attention when driving your vehicle.



Front/Side Safety

 if equipped

Front/Side Safety of PCA activates when the following conditions are satisfied:

- Rear Safety and Front/Side Safety is selected from the Parking Safety settings menu in the infotainment system
- The tailgate and door are closed
- The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) is released
- Vehicle speed is below 2 mph (4 km/h) (for pedestrians, objects)

Braking assist is deactivated after 2 seconds when the gear is in D (Drive). Immediately depress the brake pedal and check vehicle surroundings. Braking assist is also released in the following conditions when:

- The gear is shifted
- The brake pedal is depressed with sufficient power

Rear Safety

Rear Safety of PCA activates when the following conditions are satisfied:

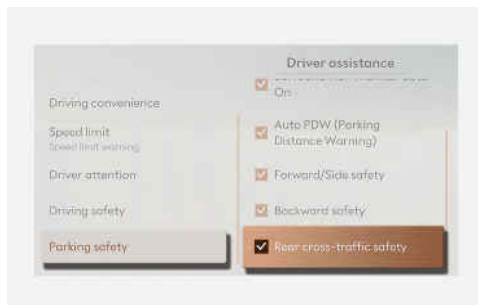
- The tailgate and door are closed
- The EPB is released
- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse)
- Vehicle speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h) (detecting pedestrians)
- Vehicle speed is below 2.4 mph (4 km/h) (detecting objects)

Braking assist is deactivated after 5 minutes when the gear is in R (Reverse). Immediately depress the brake pedal and check vehicle surroundings. Braking assist is also released in the following conditions when:

- The gear is shifted
- The brake pedal is depressed with sufficient power

PCA settings

Parking safety



With the vehicle on, select or deselect **Setup > Vehicle > Driver assistance > Parking safety** from the Settings menu to set whether to use each function.

- If **Forward/Side safety** is selected, PCA warns the driver and assist with braking when a collision with a pedestrian or an object is imminent from the front or the side.
- If **Backward safety** is selected, PCA warns the driver and assist with braking when a collision with a pedestrian or an object is imminent from behind.
- **Forward/Side Safety** can be selected only when **Backward safety** is selected.
- If the vehicle is restarted, **Backward safety** is selected as default and **Forward/Side Safety** maintains the last setting.

Warning methods

You can set the following Warning methods for PCA:

- Warning volume
- Haptic warning

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system settings**.

PCA malfunction and limitations

PCA malfunction

When PCA or related component malfunctions, a warning message appears on the instrument cluster. When PCA is activated, the direction of the malfunction appears. When the detecting sensors are obscured, the system may be temporarily limited or disabled. The system operates properly when foreign material is removed from the sensors. If the system does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system warnings and indicators**.

Detecting sensors

PCA uses the following sensors:

- Wide-front view camera
- Wide-side view camera (below the outside rearview mirror)
- Wide-rear view camera

- Front ultrasonic sensors
- Front corner ultrasonic sensors
- Rear ultrasonic sensors
- Rear corner ultrasonic sensors

For more information, refer to the **Sensor information**.

PCA limitations

When the detecting sensors cannot detect the surrounding, PCA may not operate properly.

PCA may not assist braking or warn the driver under the following circumstances:

- Problems with vehicle
 - Any non-factory equipment or accessory is installed
 - Modified braking system components such as brake discs, calipers, etc.
 - Wheel alignment have problems or suspension components have been modified
 - Accessories are attached to the steering wheel, or steering components have been modified
 - Your vehicle is unstable due to an accident or other causes
 - Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.
 - The vehicle is installed with a snow chain, or different size wheel
- Problems with the surroundings
 - There is a pattern on the road
 - There is shadow or light reflecting on the ground
 - Pedestrians or objects are around the path of the vehicle
 - Your vehicle is backing towards a narrow passage or parking space
 - Your vehicle is backing towards an uneven road surface, such as an unpaved road, gravel, bump, gradient, etc.
 - A trailer or carrier is installed on the rear of your vehicle
 - Wide view camera(s) is obscured by a light source or by inclement weather, such as heavy rain, fog, snow, etc
 - The surrounding is very bright or very dark
 - Outside temperature is very high or very low
 - The wind is either strong (above 12 mph (20 km/h)) or blowing perpendicular to the rear bumper
 - Objects generating ultrasonic waves, such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines or truck air brakes, are near your vehicle
 - An ultrasonic sensor with similar frequency is near your vehicle
 - The road is slippery or inclined
- Problems with pedestrian or object
 - The pedestrians are difficult to detect
 - There is ground height difference between the vehicle and the pedestrian
 - The image of the pedestrian in the front view camera is indistinguishable from the background

- The pedestrian is near the rear edge of the vehicle
- The pedestrian is not standing upright
- The pedestrian is either very short or very tall to detect
- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing that easily blends into the background, making it difficult to detect
- The pedestrian is wearing clothing that does not reflect ultrasonic waves well
- Size, thickness, height, or shape of the object does not reflect ultrasonic waves well (for example, low object, narrow object, circular pillar, small pillar, corners of a square pillar, bush, kerbs, carts, edge of a wall, etc.)
- The pedestrian or the object is moving
- The pedestrian or the object is very close to the rear of the vehicle
- There is a large object such as a wall is behind the pedestrian or the object
- The object is not located at the front or rear centre of your vehicle
- The object is not parallel to the rear bumper
- Problems with driving condition
 - The driver drives the vehicle immediately after shifting to R (Reverse) or D (Drive)
 - The driver accelerates or circles the vehicle



WARNING

- Always exercise extreme caution whilst driving. The driver is responsible for braking and safe driving
 - Always look around your vehicle to make sure there are no pedestrians or objects before moving the vehicle.
 - The performance of PCA may vary under certain conditions. If vehicle speed is above 2 mph (4 km/h), PCA provides collision avoidance assist only when pedestrians are detected. Always look around and pay attention when driving your vehicle.
 - Some objects may not be detected by the rear ultrasonic sensors due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor.
 - PCA may not operate properly or may operate unnecessarily depending on the road conditions and the surroundings. Always pay attention when driving your vehicle.
 - Do not solely rely on PCA. Doing so may lead to vehicle damage or injuries.
 - Always keep the wide-rear view cameras and ultrasonic sensors clean.
 - Noise may be heard when sudden braking occurs to avoid a collision.
 - If any other warning sound such as the seat belt warning chime is already generated, PCA warning may not sound.
 - PCA may not work properly if the bumper has been damaged, replaced or repaired.
 - PCA may not operate properly if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.
 - Playing the vehicle audio system at high volume may prevent passengers from hearing PCA warning sounds.
 - The brake control may not operate properly depending on the status of Electronic Stability Control (ESC).
 - The ESC warning light is on
 - ESC is engaged in a different function
 - Check the brake fluid and brake pad condition periodically. Depending on the condition, brake operation performance may reduce.
-

Remote Smart Parking Assist 2 (RSPA 2)

 if equipped

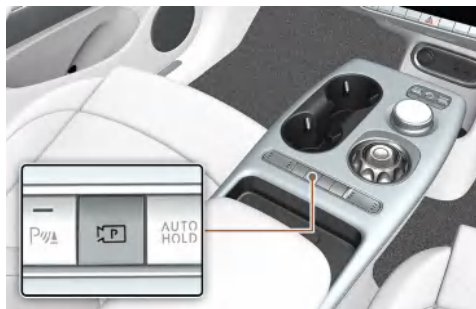
RSPA uses vehicle sensors to help the driver park and exit parking spaces remotely from outside the vehicle by controlling the steering wheel, vehicle speed, and gearshifts.

RSPA helps the driver remotely move the vehicle forward or backward from the outside and also helps with perpendicular reverse parking or parallel reverse parking from the outside and inside the vehicle.

RSPA operation

RSPA button

Parking/View button



Press and hold the Parking/View  button to turn on RSPA. Also, Parking Distance Warning (PDW) and Surround View Monitor (SVM) automatically turns on.

System operation may differ depending on the situations. For more information, refer to each system description.

Forward/Backward button (Smart key)



When using Remote Parking function, parking is supported whilst the  or  button is pressed, regardless of the button direction. When using the Remote Operation function, the vehicle moves in the direction of the  or  button whilst the button is pressed.

System operation may differ depending on the situations. For more information, refer to each system description.

Remote Operation

The function can be operated from outside the vehicle using the smart key.

Following is an example of using Remote Operation.

Using the function with vehicle off.

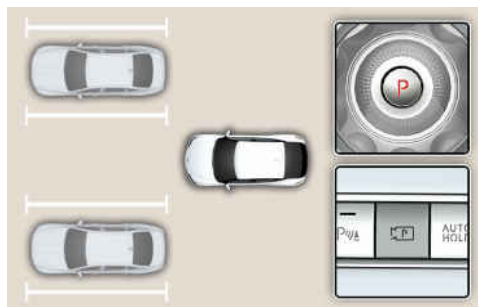


- 1 Within a certain range from the vehicle press the door lock  button on the smart key and lock all doors.
- 2 Press and hold the Remote Start  button within 4 seconds until the vehicle starts.
- 3 Hold down the Forward  or Backward  button until the vehicle reaches the target location.
 - When remotely moving forward with the vehicle off, it is recognised as a departure scenario. After the vehicle moves about 13 ft. (4 m) forward, the steering wheel is controlled according to the surroundings, checking for pedestrians, animals or objects around the vehicle.
 - For moving remotely backward, the steering wheel is aligned first, and then the vehicle only moves straight.
- 4 When the vehicle reaches the target location and the door is opened, the vehicle automatically shifts to P (Park), Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) engages, but the vehicle remains on. You can drive the vehicle when you get on the vehicle with the smart key.
 - When the vehicle reaches the target location and the Remote Start  button is pressed, the vehicle automatically shifts to P (Park), EPB engages, and the vehicle turns off.

Information

For more information on remotely starting the vehicle, refer to the **Start/Stop button**.

Using the function with vehicle on



- 1 Park the vehicle in front of the space where you want to use Remote Operation function, and shift the gear to P (Park).
- 2 Press and hold the Parking/View  button to turn on RSPA. A message '**Under remote control**' appears on the infotainment system.
 - When operating the function with the vehicle on, it can be used after the vehicle has been driven above 3 mph (5 km/h).
 - When remotely moving forward with the vehicle on, it is recognised as a parking scenario. The steering wheel is controlled according to the surroundings, and your vehicle aligns and enters the parking space.
- 3 Get out of the vehicle with the smart key and close all doors and tailgate.
- 4 Hold down the Forward  or Backward  button until the vehicle reaches the target location.
 - The function performance may be reduced depending on the pedestrians, animals, and objects near your vehicle or other factors.
 - Whilst the infotainment system guides you through remote operation, press the Parking/View  button, shift the gear to another gear from P (Park), press the Parking Safety  button or select **Cancel** on the infotainment system to turn off Remote Operation.
- 5 When the vehicle reaches the target location and the door is opened, the vehicle automatically shifts to P (Park), Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) engages, but the vehicle remains on. You can drive the vehicle when you get on the vehicle with the smart key.
 - When the vehicle reaches the target location and the Remote Start  button is pressed, the vehicle automatically shifts to P (Park), EPB engages, and the vehicle turns off.



WARNING

- Before starting moving the vehicle with the Remote Operation function from the outside of the vehicle, make sure that all passengers have gotten out of the vehicle.
- If the vehicle's battery is discharged or RSPA malfunctions when parked in a narrow parking space, Remote Operation function does not operate. Always park your vehicle in a space wide enough for you to get in or out of your vehicle.
- After parking, the surrounding may change due to the movement of surrounding vehicles. If this occurs, Remote Operation function may not operate. If you need to change the vehicle's position or location, manually complete parking your vehicle.
- Before leaving the vehicle, close windows and vision roofs, and make sure the vehicle is off before locking the doors.

Remote Operation precautions

- If you use the Remote Operation function with vehicle on, **Agree** must be selected on the infotainment system screen and the infotainment system has to operate properly.
- Check that all smart keys are outside the vehicle when using Remote Operation function.
- Remote Operation function operates only when the smart key is within 13 ft. (4 m) from the vehicle. If there is no vehicle movement even when the Forward or Backward button is pressed on the smart key, check the distance to the vehicle and press the button again.
- The detection range of the smart key may differ depending on radio waves in the area such as transmission towers or broadcast stations.
- The function performance may be reduced depending on the pedestrians, animals, and objects near your vehicle or other factors.

Smart Parking, Remote Parking

To use perpendicular reverse parking, diagonal reverse parking, and parallel reverse parking function, press and hold the Parking/View button from inside the vehicle or use the smart key from outside the vehicle.

Following is an example of Smart Parking and Remote Parking.

Available functions

Perpendicular reverse parking

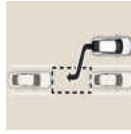


Diagonal reverse parking



Available functions

parallel reverse parking



1 Turning RSPA on

With the vehicle on, depress the brake pedal and shift the gear to D (Drive) or N (Neutral). Press and hold the Parking/View  button to turn on RSPA.

2 Searching for parking space



Slowly drive forward maintaining the distance of about 40 in. (100 cm) from the parked vehicles. RSPA searches for parking lines or parking spaces that are next to parked vehicles, or parking spaces with parked vehicles in front or rear.

When searching for a parking space is complete, a message appears on the infotainment system with an audible sound to notify the search is complete. '**Parking space detected**' appears on the infotainment system and the selected parking space appears on Top View screen of SVM.

3 Selecting parking type



- Parking type: Perpendicular reverse (Left/Right), Parallel reverse (Left/Right), Diagonal reverse (Left/Right)

With the vehicle stopped by depressing the brake pedal, touch the infotainment system to select the desired parking type.

4 Selecting operating mode



- Operating mode: Remote Parking, Smart Parking

After selecting a parking type, the infotainment system guides you with Remote Parking function and Parking function. Follow the instructions to operate RSPA.

• Remote Parking



- 1 Depress the brake pedal and shift the gear to P (Park).
- 2 Get out of the vehicle with the smart key, and close all doors.
- 3 Press one of the Forward  or Backward  button on the smart key.
 - Whilst pressing the button, RSPA automatically controls the steering wheel, vehicle speed and gearshift.
 - Whilst Remote Parking function is operating, if you do not hold down the button, the vehicle stops and function control pauses. The function starts operating again when the button is pressed and held again.
- 4 Press and hold the Forward  or Backward  button on the smart key until parking is completed.
 - When the vehicle reaches the target parking location, a message appears on the infotainment system to inform you that parking is complete. The vehicle automatically shifts to P (Park), EPB engages, and the vehicle turns off.
- 5 If you need to change the vehicle's position or location, manually complete parking your vehicle.

• Smart Parking

- 1 Press the Parking/View  button when the vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal.
- 2 Release the brake pedal whilst pressing the Parking/View  button.
 - RSPA automatically controls the steering wheel, vehicle speed and gearshift
 - Whilst Smart Parking function is operating, if you do not hold down the Parking/View  button, the function stops and function control pauses. The function starts operating again when the Parking/View  button is pressed and held again.
- 3 Press and hold the Parking/View  button until parking is completed.
 - When the vehicle reaches the target parking location, a message appears on the infotainment system to inform you that parking is complete. The vehicle automatically shifts to P (Park) and EPB engages.
- 4 If you need to change the vehicle's position or location, manually complete parking your vehicle.

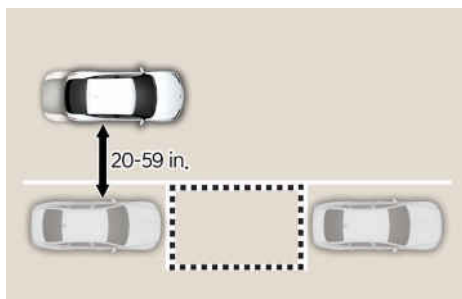
How to turn off Parking function whilst operating

- Press the Parking Safety  button or select **Cancel** on the infotainment system to turn off Parking function.
- Press the Parking/View  button in the following stage:
 - Searching for parking space
 - Selecting parking type
- Shift the gear to R (Reverse) in the following stage:
 - Searching for parking space
 - Selecting parking type
 - Selecting operating mode
- Whilst Smart Parking function is operating, if the vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal, and the gear is shifted, Parking function turns off. At this time, EPB is not engaged.
- When the Remote Parking function is operating, press the Remote Start  button on the smart key.

Smart Parking, Remote Parking precautions

- **Agree** must be selected on the infotainment system screen and the infotainment system has to operate properly to use Parking function.
- If the vehicle has been driven above 3 mph (5 km/h), the function judges the situation as parking.
- RSPA can only search for parking spaces when parking lines are visible or when there are parked vehicles.
- The empty spaces created after driving or the empty spaces in front of a vehicle that has not yet been driven cannot be searched as the a parking space.
- If there is enough space to park the vehicle, RSPA also recognise it as a parking space.
- Whilst searching for a parking space, when vehicle speed is above 12 mph (20 km/h), a message appears on the infotainment system informing you to slow down. When vehicle speed is above 18 mph (30 km/h), Parking function turns off.
- Even though searching for a parking space is completed, if you keep driving, RSPA searches for another parking space again.

- If the distance is below 20 in. (0.5 m) or over 59 in. (1.5 m), RSPA may not be able to search for a parking space.



- If you do not maintain a certain distance from the parked vehicle, the performance to search for a parking space may reduce.
- Due to abnormal performance of the ultrasonic sensor or the influence of the surroundings, Parking function may not be able to search for a parking space even if there is a parking space, or may search for a space that is not suitable for parking.
- If the parking space is on an incline or is diagonal, the parking type may appear different from the actual parking type which should be selected. If this occurs, do not select the parking type, and search for another parking space.
- If you continue to drive without stopping after the parking type selection screen appears, RSPA returns to the previous stage and search for a parking space.
- If Parking function is cancelled unintentionally by pressing the Parking/View  button before the parking type is selected, you can return to the parking type selection stage by pressing and holding the button again whilst the vehicle is stopped.
- Do not take your foot off the brake pedal during the Parking function guide. When the vehicle moves, RSPA turns off.
- Operating instructions appears on the screen for each desired function you select.



If RSPA cannot activate Remote Parking function, only the Smart Parking guide appears on the infotainment system.

- When operating Remote Parking function, make sure all smart keys are outside of the vehicle.
- Remote Parking function operates only when the smart key is within 13 ft. (4 m) from the vehicle. If there is no vehicle movement even when the Remote Forward or

Backward button is pressed on the smart key, check the distance to the vehicle and press the button again.

- The detecting range of the smart key may vary depending on the surroundings that are affected by radio waves such as transmission tower, broadcast station, etc.
- The parking location indicator appears on SVM screen and appears until the vehicle enters the parking space for the first time by Remote Parking function.
- Depending on parking environments, if the vehicle is stopped by a stopper, parking may be completed.
- Vehicle speed can be adjusted by depressing the brake pedal whilst Smart Parking function is operating. The vehicle does not accelerate even when the accelerator pedal is depressed.
- Make sure that no smart key remain in the vehicle before you start moving the vehicle with the remote parking function outside the vehicle. Remote parking does not work if there is an extra smart key in the vehicle.



WARNING

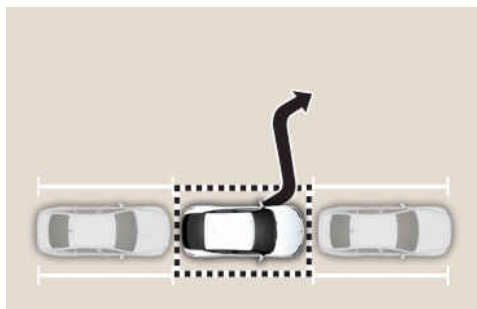
Before selecting the Parking type, the driver should check whether the parking space is suitable. If the searched parking space by RSPA is narrow or unsuitable for parking, do not select the Parking type and move the vehicle to search for another parking space.

- Before starting moving the vehicle with the remote parking function from the outside of the vehicle, make sure that all passengers have gotten out of the vehicle.
- Before leaving the vehicle, close windows and vision roofs, and make sure the vehicle is off before locking the doors.

Smart Exit

Press and hold the Parking/View  button to use parallel forward exit function from inside the vehicle.

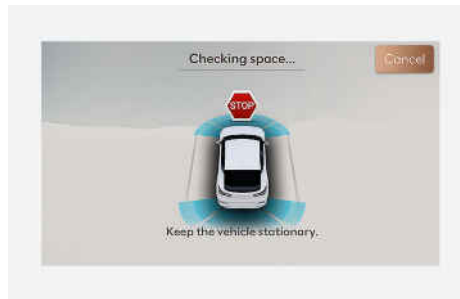
Following is an example of Smart Exit.



1 Turning RSPA on

With the vehicle on, depress the brake pedal and shift the gear to P (Park) or N (Neutral). Press and hold the Parking/View  button to turn on RSPA.

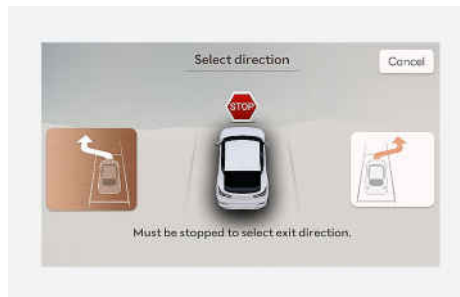
2 Checking space



When the vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal, the vehicle sensors detect the distance from nearby objects and check for space to exit.

When checking for space is complete, a message appears on the infotainment system with an audible sound to notify the search is complete.

3 Selecting exit direction



With the vehicle stopped by depressing the brake pedal, touch the infotainment system to select the desired exit direction.

4 Smart Exit



- 1 Press the Parking/View  button when the vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal.
- 2 When the Parking/View  button is pressed, release the brake pedal according to the instructions.

- RSPA automatically controls the steering wheel, vehicle speed and gearshift.
 - Whilst Smart Exit function is operating, if you do not hold down the Parking/View  button, the vehicle stops and function control pauses. The function starts operating again when the Parking/View  button is pressed and held again.
- 3 Press and hold the Parking/View  button until exiting is completed.
- When the vehicle reaches the target exit location, a message appears on the infotainment system to inform you that exit is completed.
 - If there is no vehicle operation such as depressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal within 4 seconds after exit is complete, the vehicle automatically shifts to P (Park) and EPB engages.

How to turn off Smart Exit function whilst operating

- Press the Parking Safety  button or select **Cancel** on the infotainment system to turn off Parking function.
- Press the Parking/View  button or Shift the gear to R (Reverse) in the following stage:
 - Checking space
 - Selecting exit direction
- Whilst Smart Exit function is operating, if the vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal, and the gear is shifted, Exiting function turns off. At this time, EPB is not engaged.



WARNING

- The function pauses in the following conditions when there is a pedestrian, animal or object in the direction the vehicle is moving.
- Even if check for space is completed, objects in the blind spot area cannot be detected by the sensors. The driver must directly check the blind spot area and continue using the function.
- Before selecting the exit direction, the driver should check whether the parking space is suitable. If the searched parking space by RSPA is narrow or unsuitable for parking, do not select the Parking type and move the vehicle to search for another parking space.

Smart Exit precautions

- The vehicle should not have been driven above 3 mph (5 km/h) for the function to judge the situation as exiting.
- **Agree** must be selected on the infotainment system screen and the infotainment system has to operate properly to use Smart Exit function.
- If the function is turned on again after parallel parking is completed by RSPA, Smart Exit function can be used.
- Due to abnormal performance of the ultrasonic sensor or the influence of the surroundings, Smart Exit function may not search for a exit space even if there is a exit space, or may search for a space that is not suitable for exiting. For more information, refer to the **RSPA malfunction and limitations**.

- Vehicle speed can be adjusted by depressing the brake pedal whilst Smart Exit function is operating. The vehicle does not accelerate even when the accelerator pedal is depressed.
- If exit is completed whilst the driver is depressing the brake pedal, RSPA maintains the gear in D (Drive).
- If exit is completed whilst depressing the accelerator pedal, you must take your foot off the accelerator pedal once for the accelerator pedal to operate.
- After Smart Exit function is complete, always check the surroundings before driving.

Function operation status

- The Remote Operation function shows the operating status with the Smart key LED and hazard warning light.
- The Remote Parking function shows the operating status with the Smart key LED and hazard warning light. During the first reverse, the turn signal light blinks in the parking direction.

Operation status	Smart key LED
Under control	Green LED continuously blinks
Pause	Red LED continuously blinks
Off	Red LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off
Complete	Green LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off

- When Smart Parking is operating, the turn signal of the parking direction blinks until the first reverse is complete.
- When Smart Exit is operating, the turn signal of the exit direction blinks until the exit is complete or cancelled.

Temporarily pausing RSPA

RSPA pauses in the following conditions when:

- There is a pedestrian, animal or object in the direction the vehicle is moving
- The door or tailgate is open
- During Remote Operation, Remote Parking operation
 - The Forward  or Backward  button is not continuously pressed
 - Simultaneously pressing multiple buttons on a smart key
 - The smart key is not operated within 13 ft. (4 m) from the vehicle
 - Button of another key is pressed in addition to the operating smart key (except Remote Start button)
 - Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA), Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist (PCA) or Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA) operates
- During Smart Parking, Smart Exit operation
 - The driver's seat belt is not fastened

- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA), Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist (PCA) or Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA) operates
- The Parking/View  button is not continuously pressed
- The vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal

RSPA cancelled

RSPA is cancelled in the following conditions when:

- The steering wheel is turned
- The gear is shifted whilst the vehicle is moving
- EPB is operated whilst your vehicle is moving
- The bonnet is open
- Rapid acceleration occurs
- Vehicle skid occurs
- The wheel is stuck by an obstacle and cannot move
- The slope of the road exceeds the operational range
- About 3 minutes and 50 seconds have past after Smart Parking function has started to operate
- The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working properly
- ABS, TCS, or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions
- The charging door is open
- During Remote Operation, Remote Parking operation
 - The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is depressed
 - The smart key is outside your vehicle when the brake pedal is depressed whilst the driver's door is open
 - The total travel distance of your vehicle has exceeded about 45 ft. (14 m) after Remote Operation function is operated
 - There is a problem with the smart key, or the smart key battery is low
 - Theft Alarm System sounds
 - There are pedestrians, animals or objects at the front and rear of the vehicle at the same time
- During Smart Parking, Smart Exit operation
 - The driver opens the door with the seatbelt unfastened
 - Pedestrians, animals, or objects that are very close to the vehicle

RSPA settings

Warning methods

You can set the following Warning methods for RSPA:

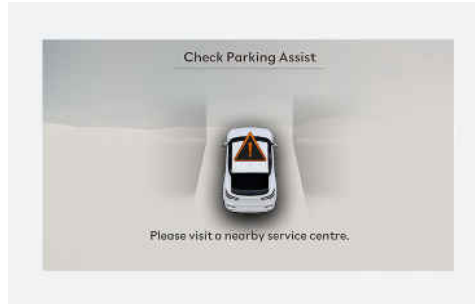
- Warning volume

For more information, refer to the **Driver assistance system settings**.

RSPA malfunction and limitations

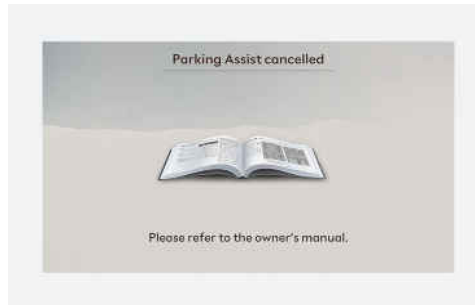
RSPA malfunction

RSPA check

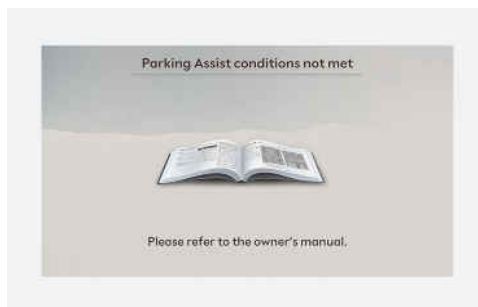


When RSPA is not working properly, the '**Check Parking Assist**' warning message appears on the infotainment system. If the message appears, stop using RSPA, and we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

RSPA cancelled



When RSPA is operating, the function can be cancelled, and the '**Parking Assist cancelled**' warning message may appear regardless of the parking order. Other messages may appear depending on the situations. Follow the instructions provided on the infotainment system whilst parking your vehicle with Remote Parking Assist. Always look around and pay attention when using RSPA.



The '**Parking Assist conditions not met**' message appears in the following circumstances:

- When Parking/View  button has been pressed and held whilst RSPA is in standby. After a whilst, press and hold the Parking/View  button again to see if RSPA works.
- The smart key's battery is low. Check the battery and replace it if needed.
- When the vehicle is not in **READY** mode.

Detecting sensors

RSPA uses the following sensors:

- Wide-front view camera
- Wide-side view camera (below the outside mirror)
- Wide-rear view camera
- Front ultrasonic sensors
- Front corner ultrasonic sensors
- Rear ultrasonic sensors
- Rear corner ultrasonic sensors

For more information, refer to the **Sensor information**.

RSPA limitations

When the detecting sensors cannot detect the surrounding, RSPA may not operate properly.

In the following circumstances, RSPA performance to park or exit the vehicle may be limited, there may be a risk of collision, or RSPA may turn off. Park or exit the vehicle manually if necessary.

- An object is attached to the steering wheel
- The vehicle is installed with a snow chain, or different size wheel
- Tyre pressure is lower or higher than the standard tyre pressure
- Your vehicle is loaded with cargo longer or wider than your vehicle or a trailer is connected to your vehicle
- There is a problem with the wheel alignment
- Your vehicle is leaned severely to one side
- Your vehicle is equipped with a trailer towbar

- The license plate is installed differently from the original location
- Your vehicle is overloaded or cargo is loaded to one side
- RSPA is operated when SNOW mode is set
- There is a person, animal or object above or below the ultrasonic sensor when RSPA is activated
- The parking space is curved or diagonal
- There is an obstacle such as a person, animal or object (trash can, bicycle, motorcycle, shopping cart, narrow pillar, etc.) near the parking space
- There is a circular pillar or narrow pillar, or a pillar surrounded by objects such as fire extinguisher, etc., near the parking space
- The road surface is bumpy (kerbstone, speed bump, etc.)
- The road is slippery
- The parking space is near a vehicle with higher ground clearance or big, such as a truck, etc.
- The parking space is Inclined
- The road surface of parking space with lines is wet due to snow, puddles, or there is a road marker inside the parking space
- The road surface of the parking space with lines is bumpy due to road cracks
- The parking line is too thin or thick
- The parking line is partially erased or blurred
- The parking line is obscured by people, animals, or objects such as snow, boxes, etc.
- There is heavy wind
- Operating RSPA on uneven roads, gravel roads, bushes, etc.

RSPA may not operate properly under the following circumstances:

- Parking on inclines



Park or exit your vehicle manually on inclines.

- Parking on uneven road



RSPA may cancel when the vehicle slips, or the vehicle cannot move due to road conditions such as pebbles or fragmented stones.

- Parking near a truck



Do not use RSPA around vehicles with higher ground clearance, such as a bus, truck, etc. It may lead to an accident. Park or exit your vehicle manually.

- Parking near a pillar



RSPA performance may be reduced or collision with an obstacle may occur when there is a narrow object, circular pillar, square pillar, or a pillar surrounded by objects such as a fire extinguisher, etc., near the parking space. Park or exit your vehicle manually.

- Parking next to a misaligned vehicle



If RSPA is used when parking in a space next to misaligned vehicles, your vehicle may not be parked side by side.

However, if there is a parking line and it is detected properly, your vehicle parks side by side with the parking line.

- Parking in a narrow space



For your safety, RSPA does not search for parking spaces at areas with narrow parking spaces that are narrower than the minimum space required for parking.

RSPA may not operate properly when parking in a narrow space. Always check for pedestrians, animals, objects whilst parking.

- Leaving a parking space near a wall



RSPA performance may reduce or collision with an obstacle may occur when there is a narrow object, circular pillar, square pillar, or a pillar surrounded by objects such

as a fire extinguisher, etc., near the parking space. The driver should park the vehicle manually.

- Parking in abnormal spaces



RSPA does not work properly when the parking lines are not parallel. Do not park even though the parking space is recognised by the sensor.

- Parking on inclines



RSPA does not work properly on a inclined or curved road surface. Do not park even though the parking space is recognised by the sensor.

- Parking in angled spaces



Remote Operation function may not operate properly in a diagonal parking space.

- Parking in snow



Snow may interfere with the operation of the ultrasonic sensor and wide view camera, or RSPA may cancel if the road is slippery whilst parking.



WARNING

- The driver is responsible for safe parking and exit when using RSPA. Always check surroundings when using RSPA. You may collide with pedestrians, animals, or objects if they are near the sensor or are in the sensor's blind spot area.
 - When using RSPA, stay out of the path of your vehicle.
 - A collision may occur if a pedestrian, animal, or object are in the blind spot area of the sensors or are very close to the sensors.
 - A collision may occur if a pedestrian, animal, or object suddenly enters the path of your vehicle whilst RSPA is operating.
 - Do not use RSPA when under the influence of alcohol.
 - Do not let children or other people to use the smart key.
 - If RSPA is used continuously for a long period, it may adversely affect RSPA performance.
 - RSPA may not operate properly if the vehicle needs wheel alignment adjustment such as when the vehicle tilts to one side. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
 - Noise may be heard when braking occurs by RSPA or when the brake pedal is depressed by the driver.
 - RSPA may suddenly apply the brake to avoid collision with pedestrian, animal, or object.
 - Use RSPA only in a parking space that is large enough for the vehicle to move safely.
 - If RSPA does not operate properly, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
-

Precautions

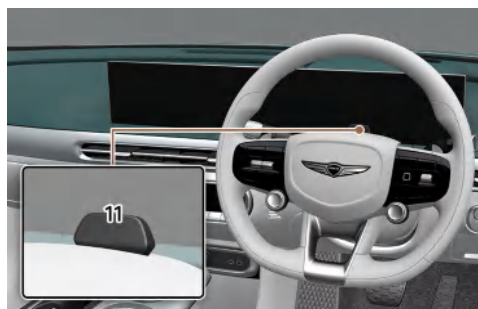
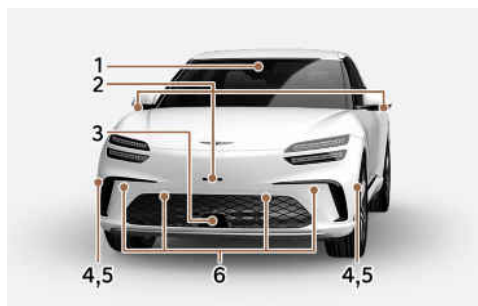
- If the continuous beeping warning of PDW sounds whilst RSPA is operating, it means the obstacle detected is close to your vehicle. At this time, RSPA temporarily stops operating. Make sure there are no pedestrians, animals, or objects around your vehicle.
- Depending on brake operation, the stop lights may come on whilst the vehicle is moving.

- If the vehicle is remotely started that has been parked in cold weather for a long time, the operation of Remote Parking function may be delayed or cancelled depending on vehicle condition.

Sensor information

Driver assistance system sensors

The driver assistance systems on your vehicle uses cameras and sensors to detect potential hazards in the vicinity of your vehicle.



1. Front view camera
2. Wide-front/side view camera
3. Front radar
4. Front corner radar
5. Front side ultrasonic sensors
6. Front ultrasonic sensors
7. Wide-rear view camera

8. Rear corner radar
9. Rear side ultrasonic sensors
10. Rear ultrasonic sensors
11. In-cabin camera



CAUTION

- Never disassemble the sensor or sensor assembly, and never apply any impact on it.
 - If the sensors have been replaced or repaired, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
 - If there is impact on or near the sensors, driver assistance system may not operate properly even though a warning message does not appear on the instrument cluster. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
 - If the sensors or the surroundings are contaminated or damaged, driver assistance system may not work properly.
 - Always keep the sensors in good condition to maintain optimal performance of driver assistance system.
-

Sensor limitations

Front view camera

The front view camera detects a subject in front with the camera image. Take proper care of the front view camera as follows:

- Never install any accessories or stickers on the front windscreen, or tint the front windscreen.
- Always keep the camera dry.
- Never place any reflective objects (for example, white paper, mirror) on the dashboard.
- Do not place objects or install structures near the front windscreen. Windscreen defrosting and defogging performance of the climate control system may decrease, which may cause driver assistance systems to not operate properly.

Front view camera detection performance may decrease or driver assistance system may not operate properly when:

- The temperature around the front view camera is high or low due to surrounding environment.
- The camera lens is contaminated due to tinted, filmed or coated windscreen, damaged glass, or sticky foreign material (sticker, bug, etc.) on the glass.
- Moisture is not removed or frozen on the windscreen.
- Washer fluid is sprayed continuously, or the wiper is on.
- You are driving in heavy rain or snow, or thick fog.
- The front view camera's field of view is obstructed by glare from the sun.
- Sunlight, streetlight or light from an oncoming vehicle is reflected on the wet road surface such as a puddle on the road.
- An object is placed on the dashboard.
- Your vehicle is being towed.

- The surrounding is very bright or very dark (nighttime, tunnel, etc.).
- The brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- The brightness outside is low, and the headlights are not on or are not bright.
- A front vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist is partially visible.
- The vehicle or motorcyclist in front has no tail lights, tail lights are located unusually, etc.
- In low light conditions, the tail lights of the front vehicle are turned off or not bright.
- The rear of the front vehicle is small or the vehicle does not look normal, such as when the vehicle is tilted, overturned, or the side of the vehicle is visible, etc.
- The front vehicle's ground clearance is low or high.
- A vehicle, motorcyclist, pedestrian, or cyclist suddenly cuts in front.

Radars

The radar uses electric waves to detect the surroundings. Take proper care of the radars as follows:

- Do not install a license plate frame or other objects such as bumper sticker, film, bumper guard, or bumper wrap near the radar.
- Always keep the radars and radar covers clean. Do not spray the radar or the surrounding area directly with high pressure water.
- The genuine bumper parts with radars have proven their performance. Replacing or painting may result in poor performance of driver assistance systems. When the parts need to be replaced or modified, make sure to use qualified products.
- Do not attach accessories, moldings, stickers, films, wrapping, etc., to the sensors and surrounding areas, or paint the bumper.
- Driver assistance system may not work properly if the bumper has been replaced, or the surroundings of the radar has been damaged or painted.
- If a trailer or towbar mounted carrier is attached, it may adversely affect the performance of the rear corner radar or driver assistance system may not operate.
- If there is impact on or near the radar, the sensors may be damaged or not be properly aligned near the radar. Even though a warning message does not appear on the instrument cluster, driver assistance system may not operate properly. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- If the radar have been replaced or repaired, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Radar detection performance may decrease or driver assistance system may not operate properly when:

- The bumper around the radar is impacted, damaged or the radar is out of position.
- The temperature around the radar is high or low.
- Driving through a tunnel or iron bridge.
- Driving in vast areas where there are few vehicles or structures (for example, desert, meadow, suburb, etc.).
- Driving near areas containing metal substances, such as a construction zone, railroad, etc.
- The radar is covered with snow, rain, dirt, etc.

- The bumper around the radar is covered with objects, such as a bumper sticker, bumper guard, bike rack, etc.
- The radar is blocked by other vehicles, walls or pillars.
- A trailer or carrier is installed around the radar.
- A material is near that reflects very well on the radar, such as guardrail, nearby vehicle, etc.
- The vehicle in front is made of material that does not reflect on the front radar well.
- Driving on a highway (or motorway) ramp, interchanges, or driving through a tollgate.

Ultrasonic sensors

The Ultrasonic sensor uses ultrasonic waves to detect the surroundings. Take proper care of the ultrasonic sensors as follows:

- Never disassemble or strike the ultrasonic sensors components.
- Ultrasonic sensor malfunction may be due to foreign substance, such as snow or water on the sensor. Always keep the sensors clean and clean it with a soft cloth when contaminated.
- Do not press the surface of the ultrasonic sensor with strength, strike with a hard object, or scratch with a sharp object. The sensor may be damaged.
- Do not spray the ultrasonic sensors or their surrounding area directly with high pressure washer.
- If the bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified, or objects are attached in the ultrasonic sensor detection area, Parking Safety function may not operate properly.
- Do not apply objects, such as a bumper sticker or a bumper guard, near the ultrasonic sensors or apply paint to the bumper.

Ultrasonic sensor detection performance may decrease or driver assistance system may not operate properly when:

- Sensor is covered with foreign substance, such as snow or water (the function operates properly when such substance is removed).
- The weather is extremely hot or cold.
- The ultrasonic sensors or sensor assembly is disassembled.
- The surface of the sensor is pressed hard or hit with a hard object.
- The surface of the sensor is scratched with a sharp object.
- The sensors or its surrounding area is directly sprayed with high pressure washer.
- Objects generating ultrasonic waves are near your vehicle.
- A wireless transmission device operates near the ultrasonic sensors.

Wide view cameras

The wide view camera detects or shows the surroundings with the camera image. Take proper care of the front view camera as follows:

- Always keep the camera lens clean. If the lens is covered with foreign material, it may adversely affect camera performance and Rear View Monitor or Surround View Monitor may not operate properly.

- When cleaning the wide view cameras, do not use chemical solvents such as strong detergents containing high alkaline or volatile organic solvents (petrol, acetone, etc.). This may damage the camera lens.
- Do not spray the wide view cameras or their surrounding area directly with high pressure washer.
- Do not apply objects, such as a bumper sticker or a bumper guard, near the wide view cameras or apply paint to the bumper.
- Do not disassemble the wide view cameras or sensor assembly.
- Do not impact the wide view cameras. If the camera is out of position due to impact, it may not operate properly. If the wide view camera is damaged, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

In-cabin camera

The in-cabin camera is mounted to the steering wheel. Take proper care of the in-cabin camera as follows:

- Do not impact the surface of the camera or around the camera. Driver assistance system may not operate properly.
- Do not place anything on the camera or in front of the camera whilst driving. The in-cabin camera may not operate properly.
- When cleaning the camera, wipe with a soft and clean cloth to prevent damages on the surface of the camera lens. In addition, you should not use sharp tools near the camera, or use chemicals to clean the camera.
- Always keep the camera and around the area of the in-cabin camera clean and dry.
- Do not apply foreign objects, such as a sticker, around the infrared LED located near the camera.

Declaration of conformity

Front radar

The radio frequency components (Front Radar) complies:

- For United Kingdom



Front corner radar/Rear corner radar

 if equipped

The radio frequency components (Front corner radar/Rear corner radar) complies:

- For United Kingdom



8. Emergency situations

This chapter explains how to safely deal with emergency situations whilst driving.

Information

- The illustrations are shown as a guide. The actual shape may differ from the illustration.
 - The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.
 - The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.
-

Hazard warning flasher



The hazard warning flasher warns other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle. It should be used whenever making emergency repairs or when stopped near the edge of a roadway.

To turn on or off the hazard warning flasher, press the hazard warning flasher button with the Start/Stop button in any position. All turn signal lights flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates regardless of whether your vehicle is running or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.

In case of vehicle malfunction

If the vehicle stalls whilst driving

- Reduce the vehicle speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
- Turn on your hazard warning flasher.
- Try to start the vehicle again. If your vehicle does not start, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

If the vehicle stalls at a crossroad or crossing

If the vehicle stalls at a crossroads or crossing, if safe to do so, shift the gear to N (Neutral) and then push the vehicle to a safe location.

If the vehicle does not start

Confirm the EV battery is not low on the charge gauge

- Be sure the gear is in P (Park). The vehicle starts only when the gear is in P (Park).
- Check the 12 V battery connections to be sure they are clean and tight.
- Turn on the interior light. If the light dims or goes out when you operate the starter, the 12 V battery is drained.

NOTICE

Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. This could cause damage to your vehicle.

Jump Starting (12 V Battery)

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Follow the jump starting procedure in this section to avoid serious injury or damage to your vehicle. If in doubt about how to properly jump start your vehicle, have a service technician or towing service do it for you.



WARNING

To prevent **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH** to you or bystanders, always follow these precautions when working near or handling the battery:

- Always read and follow instructions carefully when handling a battery.



- Wear eye protection designed to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



- Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.



- Hydrogen is always present in battery cells, is highly combustible, and may explode if ignited.



- Keep batteries out of reach of children.



- Batteries contain sulfuric acid that is highly corrosive. Do not allow acid to contact your eyes, skin, or clothing. If acid gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If acid gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the area. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.



- When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.
- Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle if your battery is frozen.

- NEVER attempt to recharge the battery when the vehicle's battery cables are connected to the battery.
 - The electrical ignition system works with high voltage.
NEVER touch these components with the vehicle running or when the Start/Stop button is in the DRIVE READY position.
 - Do not allow the positive + and negative - jumper cables to touch. It may cause sparks.
 - The battery may rupture or explode when you jump start with a low or frozen battery.
 - Do not directly connect the (-) to the jump cable. Connect the (-) to the one of the metallic parts located far from the jump cable in the vehicle. The direct (-) connection to the jump cable may cause an explosion.
 - Only use a 12 V power supply (battery or jumper system) to jump start your vehicle.
-

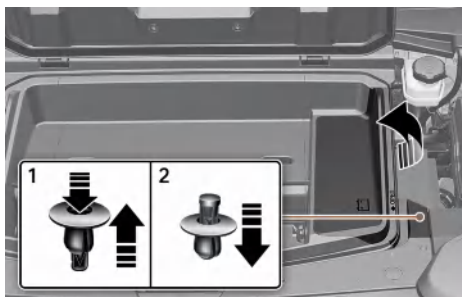
NOTICE

To prevent damage to your vehicle:

- Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle by push-starting.
 - Always be sure that the battery cover and cable are tightened after finishing jump start your vehicle. Otherwise it may cause damage to the relevant parts, noise trouble, or entrance of foreign substances.
-

Jump starting procedure

- 1 Position the vehicles close enough that the jumper cables can reach. Do not allow the vehicles to touch.
- 2 Turn off all electrical devices such as radios, lights, air conditioning, etc. Put the vehicles in P (Park) and apply the parking brake. Turn both vehicles OFF.
- 3 Open the bonnet.
- 4 Open the front boot and use a + screwdriver to remove the screw securing the battery cover, then pull the battery cover to the side to remove it.



1. Screw removal
2. Screw installation

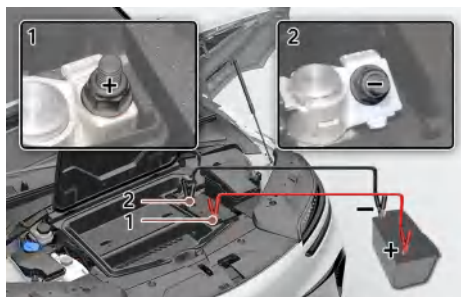
CAUTION

Before jump starting, make sure to correctly identify the positive + and negative – terminals to avoid reverse polarity connections.

NOTICE

Avoid fans or any moving parts in the motor compartment at all times, even when the vehicles are turned off.

- 5 First connect one jumper cable to the red, positive + jumper terminal of your vehicle. Connect the other end of the jumper cable to the red, positive + battery/jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle.



1. Positive + terminal
2. Negative – terminal

- 6 Connect the second jumper cable to the black, negative – battery/jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the chassis ground of your vehicle.

WARNING

- Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery or jumper terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.
- Do not connect the jumper cable to the negative – jumper terminal of the discharged battery. A spark could cause the battery to explode and lead to a personal injury or vehicle damage.

- 7 Start the assisting vehicle and let it run at about for a few minutes. Then start your vehicle. Keep your vehicle operating for at least 30 minutes at driving to make sure your battery receives enough charge to be able to start on its own after the vehicle is shut off.

Information

- A completely discharged battery may require as long as 60 minutes runtime to fully recharge it. If the vehicle has run for less, the vehicle may not restart.
 - If your vehicle does not start after a few attempts, it probably requires service. In this event please seek qualified assistance. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
-

- 8 When the vehicle starts, first disconnect the jumper cable from the chassis ground of your vehicle and the black, negative — battery/jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle. Then, disconnect the second jumper cable from the red, positive + battery/jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle and the red, positive + battery terminal of your vehicle.



WARNING

Whilst jump starting your vehicle, avoid the positive + and negative — cables to come in contact. A spark could cause personal injury.

NOTICE



An inappropriately disposed battery may be harmful to the environment and human health. Always dispose of a used battery according to your local law(s) or regulations.

If you have a flat tyre whilst driving

If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle slow down whilst driving straight ahead. When the vehicle has slowed to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road. Drive off the road as far as possible and park on a firm, level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.

- When the vehicle is stopped, press the hazard warning flasher button, shift the gear to P (Park), apply the parking brake, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position.
- Have all passengers get out of the vehicle. Make sure they all get out on the side of the vehicle that is away from traffic.
- When changing a flat tyre, follow the instructions provided later in this chapter.



WARNING

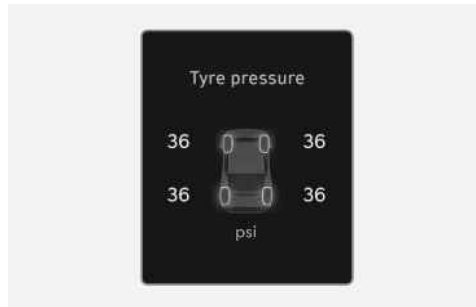
Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road because this may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)



1. Low Tyre Pressure Position Telltale and Tyre Pressure Telltale (Shown on the cluster display)
2. Low Tyre Pressure Telltale/TPMS Malfunction Indicator

Check tyre pressure



- You can check the tyre pressure in the Normal view mode on the cluster display. For more information, refer to the **Cluster display view modes**.
- Tyre pressure appears after a few minutes of driving. If the tyre pressure does not appear when the vehicle is stopped, the message, '**Drive to display**' appears.
- The displayed tyre pressure values may differ from those measured with a tyre pressure gauge.
- You can change the tyre pressure unit from the Settings menu in the infotainment system. Select **Setup > General > Unit > Tyre Air Pressure Unit > psi/kPa/bar**

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Tyre pressure monitoring system



WARNING

- Over-inflation or under-inflation can reduce tyre life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tyre failure that may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an collision.

Under-inflation also reduces energy efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

- Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.)
- As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a TPMS that illuminates a Low Tyre Pressure Telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the Low Tyre Pressure Telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the Low Tyre Pressure Telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale flashes for approximately one minute and then remains continuously illuminated. This sequence continues upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

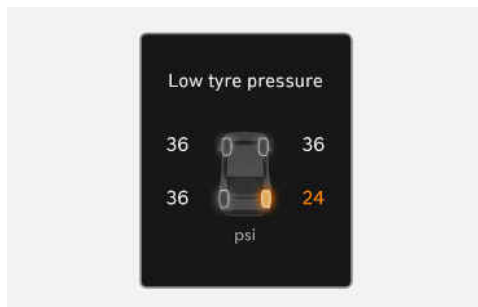
- Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.
 - Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS Low Tyre Pressure Telltale.
-

NOTICE

We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products if:

- The Low Tyre Pressure Telltale/TPMS Malfunction Indicator does not illuminate for 3 seconds when the Start/Stop button is pressed to the POWER ON position or when the vehicle is running.
 - The TPMS Malfunction Indicator remains illuminated after blinking for about 1 minute.
 - The Low Tyre Pressure Position Telltale remains illuminated.
-

Low tyre pressure position and tyre pressure telltale



TPMS is not a substitute for manually checking the tyre pressure with a tyre gauge. Changes in temperature affect tyre pressure. For proper tyre inflation and tyre pressure measurement procedure, refer to the **Check tyre inflation pressure**.

When the TPMS warning (⚠) indicator illuminates and a warning message appears on the cluster display, one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. The Low Tyre Pressure Position Telltale indicates which tyre is significantly under inflated by illuminating the corresponding position light.

If either telltale illuminates, immediately reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and anticipate increased stopping distances. You should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible. Inflate the tyres to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's placard or tyre inflation pressure label located on the driver's side centre pillar outer panel.

The Low Tyre Pressure position indicator remains on and the TPMS Malfunction Indicator may blink for one minute and then remain illuminated until you have the low pressure tyre repaired and replaced on the vehicle.



WARNING

- In winter or cold weather, the Low Tyre Pressure Telltale may be illuminated if the tyre pressure was adjusted to the recommended tyre inflation pressure in warm weather. It does not mean your TPMS is malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a proportional lowering of tyre pressure.
- When you drive your vehicle from a warm area to a cold area or from a cold area to a warm area, or the outside temperature is greatly higher or lower, check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust the tyres to the recommended tyre inflation pressure.
- Significantly low tyre pressure makes the vehicle unstable and may contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.
- Continued driving on low pressure tyres may cause the tyres to overheat and fail.

Low Tyre Pressure Warning Light/TPMS Malfunction Indicator



The TPMS Malfunction (⚠) Indicator illuminates after it blinks for about one minute when there is a problem with the TPMS. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

NOTICE

- If there is a malfunction with the TPMS, the individual tyre pressures on the cluster display are not available. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.
 - The TPMS Malfunction Indicator may illuminate after blinking for one minute if the vehicle is near electric power supply cables or radio transmitters such as police stations, government and public offices, broadcasting stations, military installations, airports, transmitting towers, etc.
 - Additionally, the TPMS Malfunction Indicator may illuminate if snow chains are used or if electronic devices such as computers, chargers, remote starters, navigation, etc. are near the vehicle. This may interfere with normal operation of the TPMS.
-

Changing a tyre with TPMS

If you have a flat tyre, the Low Tyre Pressure and Position Telltales come on. We recommend that the flat tyre be repaired by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

WARNING

- The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors such as nails or road debris.
- If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator pedal, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.
- Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the TPMS components may interfere with the system's ability to warn the driver of low tyre pressure conditions and/or TPMS malfunctions and may void the warranty.

For Europe

- Do not modify the vehicle; it may interfere with the TPMS function.
 - The wheels on the market do not have a TPMS sensor. For your safety, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
 - If you use the wheels on the market, use a TPMS sensor approved by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products or the equivalent approved for your vehicle. If your vehicle is not equipped with a TPMS sensor or TPMS does not work properly, you may fail the periodic vehicle inspection conducted in your country.
-

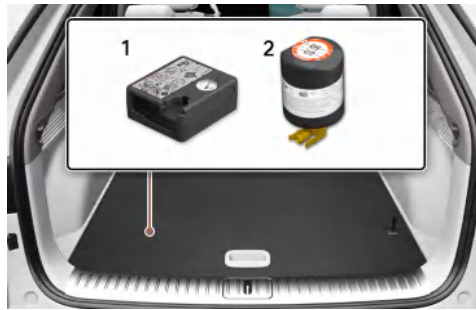
NOTICE

- It is recommended that you do not use a puncture-repairing agent not approved by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products or the equivalent specified for your vehicle to repair and/or inflate a low pressure tyre. Tyre sealant not approved by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products or the equivalent specified for your vehicle may damage the tyre pressure sensor.
- Once the original wheel equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring sensor is reinflated to the recommended pressure and reinstalled on the vehicle, the Low Tyre Pressure Telltale and TPMS Malfunction Indicator goes off within a few minutes of driving.
If the indicators do not turn off after a few minutes, we recommend that you visit an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- Each wheel is equipped with a tyre pressure sensor mounted inside the tyre behind the valve stem. You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you always have your tyres serviced by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- You may not be able to identify a tyre with low pressure by simply looking at it. Always use a good quality tyre pressure gauge to measure. Please note that a tyre that is hot (from being driven) has a higher pressure measurement than a tyre that is cold.

Allow the tyre to cool before measuring the inflation pressure. Always make sure the tyre is cold before inflating to the recommended pressure.

A cold tyre means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours and driven for less than 1 mile (1.6 km) in that 3 hour period.

If you have a flat tyre (with Tyre Mobility Kit)



1. Compressor
2. Sealant bottle

With the Tyre Mobility Kit you can stay mobile even after experiencing a tyre puncture. The compressor and sealing compound system effectively and comfortably seals most punctures in a passenger vehicle tyre caused by nails or similar objects and reinflates the tyre.

After you are ensure that the tyre is properly sealed you can drive cautiously on the tyre (distance up to 120 mi. (200 km)) at a maximum speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) in order to reach a service station or tyre dealer for tyre replacement.

It is possible that some tyres, especially with larger punctures or damage to the sidewall, cannot be sealed completely.

Air pressure loss in the tyre may adversely affect tyre performance.

For this reason, you should avoid abrupt steering or other driving manoeuvres, especially if the vehicle is heavily loaded or if a trailer is being used.

The Tyre Mobility Kit is not designed or intended as a permanent tyre repair method and is to be used for one tyre only.

For safe operation, carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual before use.

The Tyre Mobility Kit is a temporary fix to the tyre, we recommend that the tyre be replaced by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.



WARNING

- Do not use the Tyre Mobility Kit to repair punctures in the tyre walls. This can result in an accident due to tyre failure.
- Have your tyre repaired as soon as possible. The tyre may lose air pressure at any time after inflating with the Tyre Mobility Kit.
- Do not use the Tyre Mobility Kit if a tyre is severely damaged by driving run flat or with insufficient air pressure.

Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tyre can be sealed using the Tyre Mobility Kit.

CAUTION

When two or more tyres are flat, do not use the Tyre Mobility Kit because the sealant provided with the Tyre Mobility Kit must be used for only one flat tyre.

Notes on the safe use of the Tyre Mobility Kit

- Park your vehicle at the side of the road so that you can work with the Tyre Mobility Kit away from moving traffic.
- To be sure your vehicle does not move, even when you are on level ground, always apply your parking brake.
- Only use the Tyre Mobility Kit for sealing/inflation passenger vehicle tyres. Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tyre can be sealed using the tyre mobility kit.
- Do not use on motorcycles, bicycles or any other type of tyres.
- When the tyre and wheel are damaged, do not use Tyre Mobility Kit.
- Use of the Tyre Mobility Kit may not be effective for tyre damage larger than about 0.16 in. (4 mm).
- We recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products if the tyre cannot be made roadworthy with the Tyre Mobility Kit for your safety.
- Do not use the Tyre Mobility Kit if a tyre is severely damaged by driving run flat or with insufficient air pressure.
- Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tyre can be sealed using the Tyre Mobility Kit.
- Do not remove any foreign objects such as nails or screws that have penetrated the tyre.
- Provided the vehicle is outdoors, leave the vehicle running. Otherwise operating the compressor may eventually drain the vehicle battery.
- Never leave the Tyre Mobility Kit unattended whilst it is being used.
- Do not leave the compressor running for more than 10 minutes at a time or it may overheat.
- Do not use the Tyre Mobility Kit if the ambient temperature is below -30 °C (-22 °F).
- In case of skin contact with the sealant, wash the area thoroughly with plenty of water. If the irritation persists, seek medical attention.
- In case of eye contact with the sealant, flush your eyes for at least 15 minutes. If the irritation persists, seek medical attention.
- In case of swallowing the sealant, rinse the mouth and drink plenty of water. However, never give anything to an unconscious person and seek medical attention immediately.
- Long time exposure to the sealant may cause damage to bodily tissue such as kidney, etc.

Components of the Tyre Mobility Kit



1. Speed restriction label
2. Sealant bottle and label with speed restriction
3. Filling hose
4. Holder for the sealant bottle
5. Connectors and cable for power outlet direct connection
6. ON/OFF switch
7. Compressor
8. Pressure gauge for displaying the tyre inflation pressure
9. Tyre inflation pressure control button

WARNING

- Do not use the tyre sealant after the sealant has expired (the expiration date is pasted on the sealant container). This can increase the risk of tyre failure.
- Sealant
 - Keep out of reach of children.
 - Avoid contact with eyes.
 - Do not swallow.

Using the Tyre Mobility Kit when a tyre is flat

CAUTION

- Detach the speed restriction label from the sealant bottle, and place it in a highly visible place inside the vehicle such as on the steering wheel to remind the driver not to drive too fast.



- If only the tyre pressure needs to be adjusted, refer to the **How to adjust tyre pressure**.
- Before using the Tyre Mobility Kit, be fully aware of the explanation on the sealant.

Strictly follow the specified sequence, otherwise the sealant may escape under high pressure.

- 1 Shake the sealant bottle.
- 2 Connect the filling hose on the compressor to the sealant bottle. Keep the sealant bottle upright so the filling hose is heading upwards.



- 3 Unscrew the valve cap from the valve of the defective wheel and screw the filling hose of the sealant bottle onto the tyre valve.



CAUTION

Securely install the sealant filling hose to the valve. If not, sealant may flow backward, possibly clogging the filling hose.

- 4 Plug the compressor power cord into the vehicle power outlet.



NOTICE

Only use the front passenger side power outlet when connecting the power cord.

- 5 With the vehicle ON (READY indicator ON), switch on the compressor and let it run for about 5-7 minutes to fill the sealant up to proper inflation pressure. The inflation pressure of the tyre after filling is unimportant and can be checked/corrected later. Be careful not to overinflate the tyre and stay away from the tyre when filling it.



WARNING

Do not attempt to drive your vehicle if the tyre pressure is below 220 kPa (32 psi). This could result in an accident due to sudden tyre failure.

- 6 Switch off the compressor.
- 7 Detach the hoses from the sealant bottle connector and from the tyre valve.

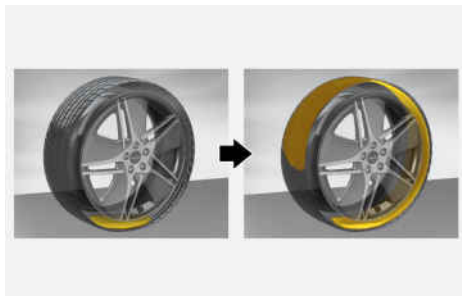
Return the Tyre Mobility Kit to its storage location in the vehicle.



WARNING

Do not leave your vehicle running in a poorly ventilated area for extended periods of time. Carbon monoxide poisoning and suffocation can occur.

- 8 Immediately drive about 4-6 mi. (7-10 km or about 10 minutes) to evenly distribute the sealant in the tyre.



Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h). If possible, do not fall below a speed of 12 mph (20 km/h).

Whilst driving, if you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise, reduce your speed and drive with caution until you can safely pull off of the side of the road.

Call for road side service or towing.

- 9 After driving about 4-6 mi. (7-10 km or about 10 minutes), stop at a safety location.
- 10 Check the tyre pressure and adjust it to proper pressure.



CAUTION

- If the tyre inflation pressure is not maintained, drive the vehicle a second time, refer to step 8. Then repeat steps 9 to 10.
 - Use of the Tyre Mobility Kit may not be effective for tyre damage larger than about 0.16 in. (4 mm).
 - We recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products if the tyre cannot be made roadworthy with the Tyre Mobility Kit.
 - The sealant on the tyre pressure sensor and wheel should be removed when you replace the tyre with a new one and inspect the tyre pressure sensors. We recommend that you get this done at an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
-

How to adjust tyre pressure

- 1 Park your vehicle in a safe location.
- 2 Connect the filling hose of the compressor directly to the tyre valve.



CAUTION

Do not use the sealant when the tyre pressure only needs to be adjusted.

- 3 Plug the compressor power cord into the vehicle power outlet.
- 4 Adjust the tyre inflation pressure to the recommended tyre inflation.

With the vehicle running, proceed as follows:

- To increase the inflation pressure: Switch on the compressor. To check the current inflation pressure setting, briefly switch off the compressor.
- To reduce the inflation pressure: Press the tyre inflation pressure control button on the compressor.

WARNING

The tyre inflation pressure must be inflated to the proper pressure. For more information, refer to the **Tyres and wheels**. If it is not inflated, do not continue to drive.

Call for road side service or towing.

NOTICE

Do not let the compressor run for more than 10 minutes, otherwise the device may overheat and may be damaged.

Information

- The pressure gauge may show higher than actual reading when the compressor is running. To get an accurate tyre reading, the compressor needs to be turned off.
 - When reinstalling the repaired or replaced tyre and wheel on the vehicle, tighten the wheel nut to 101-116 lbf·ft (14-16 kgf·m).
-

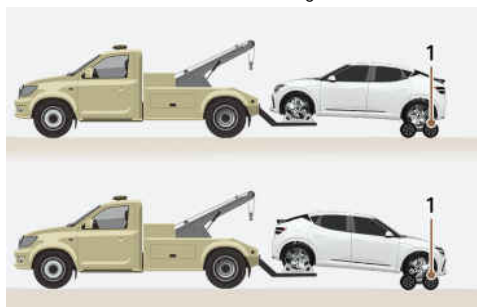
Towing

Towing service

Flatbed Towing



Wheel lift Towing



1. Dollies

If towing is necessary, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products or a commercial tow-truck service.

AWD vehicles must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed with all the wheels off the ground.

When towing 2WD vehicles

2WD vehicles are acceptable to tow the vehicle with the front wheels on the ground (without dollies) and the rear wheels off the ground.



- 1 Release the parking brake before turning off the vehicle.
- 2 Press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position.

- 3 Change the gear to N (Neutral) whilst depressing the brake pedal.
- 4 Press the Start/Stop button to the POWER ON position.



CAUTION

If your vehicle is equipped with a rollover sensor, press the Start/Stop button in the OFF or POWER ON position when the vehicle is being towed. The side impact and curtain airbag may deploy if the sensor detects the situation as a rollover.

NOTICE

To prevent damage when towing:

- Do not lift using the trailer towbar or body and chassis parts.
- Do not tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground.



- Do not tow vehicles with sling-type equipment. Only use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.



- Always shift the gear to N (Neutral) to prevent damage to the reducer before towing.
-

Precautions when moving a short distance using towing hook and so on before towing a vehicle

Move short distances within 33 ft. (10 m) at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less only when loading on a tow truck or if the vehicle needs to be repositioned.

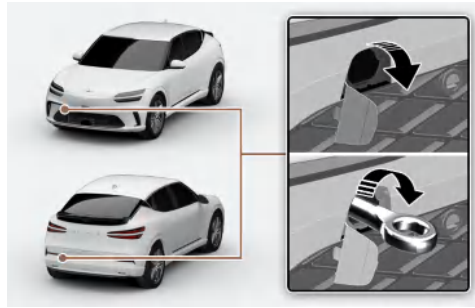
At this time, the gear must be in the N (Neutral) position and the parking brake must be released. If it is impossible to operate the reducer and parking brake, move the vehicle by using dollies, tyre skate, etc with all wheel lifted.



CAUTION

Do not tow the vehicle with the rear and front wheels on the ground as this may cause damage to the propulsion system of vehicle.

Removable towing hook



- 1 Open the tailgate and remove the towing hook from the tool case.
- 2 Remove the hole cover pressing the lower part of the cover on the bumper.
- 3 Install the towing hook by turning it clockwise into the hole until it is fully secured.
- 4 Remove the towing hook and install the cover after use.



CAUTION

Make sure the towing hook is tightened properly. If not, during towing the towing hook may be thrown off the vehicle resulting in serious injury or accident.

NOTICE

Failure to properly tighten the towing hook may result in vehicle damage and deformation of related parts.

If the electric vehicle needs towing

If towing is required, lift all wheels to tow. Towing with the wheels on the ground may damage the vehicle's propulsion system.



CAUTION

When a vehicle fire occurs due to the battery, there is a risk of a second fire. Contact the fire department when towing the vehicle.

Countermeasures for accidents or fire

When an accident occurs whilst driving the vehicle, turn on the hazard warning flasher, move the vehicle to a safe place, and do not let other people approach the site.



WARNING

When an accident occurs, and the high voltage battery is damaged, harmful gas and electrolytes may leak.

- Be careful not to touch the leaked liquid.
 - When you suspect leakage of inflammable gas and other harmful gases, open the windows and immediately evacuate to a safe location.
 - If any leaked fluid comes in contact with your eyes or skin, immediately clean the affected area thoroughly with tap water or saline solution and have doctors inspect it as soon as possible.
-

If the electric vehicle catches fire

If a fire occurs, evacuate to a safe place and do not let other people approach the site.

- Contact the fire department, report an electric vehicle fire, and then follow its instructions.



WARNING

If the lower part of the vehicle where the high voltage battery is located catches fire, large amount of water must be supplied continuously for a long time to completely extinguish the fire. It is hard to extinguish the fire without sufficient water and appropriate fire extinguishers. If you approach the vehicle carelessly, it may cause accidents, such as electric shock, and result in serious injury.



CAUTION

If a fire occurs, evacuate to a safe place and wait until the firefighters arrive.

If the electric vehicle is submerged

If the electric vehicle is submerged whilst driving, immediately turn off the vehicle and evacuate to a safe place with your key. Contact the emergency rescue service such as a fire department, or an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.



WARNING

Never touch the submerged electric vehicle. This may lead to an accident such as an electric shock or fire.

Other precautions for electric vehicle accidents



CAUTION

- Be extremely cautious for electricity safety. An electric shock accident may occur due to a short circuit in high voltage power.
 - When you paint or apply heat treatment to the vehicle as a result of an accident, the performance of the high voltage battery can be reduced. If heat treatment is required, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
 - Use or install only genuine parts. Third-party parts or modified parts may damage the electric power system.
-

When the door handle is hidden inside the door panel

In case of emergency, when the door handle is hidden inside the door panel:



- 1 Push the front part (to the front side of the vehicle) of the outside door handle inwards.
- 2 Manually pop the door handle and pull the handle to open the door.

Emergency commodity

 if equipped

Your vehicle is equipped with emergency commodities to help you respond to emergency situation.

First aid kit

Supplies for use in giving first aid such as scissors, bandage, and adhesive tape, etc. are provided.

Triangle reflector

Place the triangle reflector on the road to warn oncoming vehicles during emergencies, such as when the vehicle is parked by the roadside due to problems.

Tyre pressure gauge

 if equipped

Always check tyre pressure when the tyres are cold because tyre pressure increases with temperature.

To check the tyre pressure, take the following steps:

- 1 Unscrew the inflation valve cap that is located on the rim of the tyre.
- 2 Press and hold the gauge against the tyre valve. Some air will leak as you begin and more will leak if you don't press the gauge in firmly. A firm non-leaking push will activate the gauge.
- 3 Read the tyre pressure on the gauge to see whether the tyre pressure is low or high.
- 4 Adjust the tyre pressure to the specified pressure. For more information, refer to the **Tyres and wheels**.
- 5 Reinstall the inflation valve cap.



WARNING

- When an accident occur, park the vehicle to a safe place. To avoid the leak of electricity in high voltage battery, turn the vehicle off and pull the yellow label in the high voltage battery switch to shut down the high voltage battery.

Also, disconnect the auxiliary battery (12 V) cable to shut down. Be sure to disconnect both positive (+) cable and negative (-) cable.

- Do not touch the exposed electric wires. Do not touch high voltage wires (orange), connectors and other electric components.
- When an accident occur, the lethal gas and fluid from damaged high voltage battery can be leaked. Be aware not to touch or exposed to the gas and fluid.

When flammable or poison gas leak inside the vehicle, open windows and evacuate to a safe place. When leaked fluid comes in contact with your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water. When the fluid contacts with your skin, wash it with salt water. Get immediate medical attention afterward.

- When the vehicle is flooded, immediately turn the vehicle off and evacuate to a safe place. For your safety we recommend to call the fire station and or contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- When the fire spread to the high voltage battery, the additional fire may occur.

In this situation, be sure to accompany a fire truck when the vehicle is being towed.

Pan-European eCall System

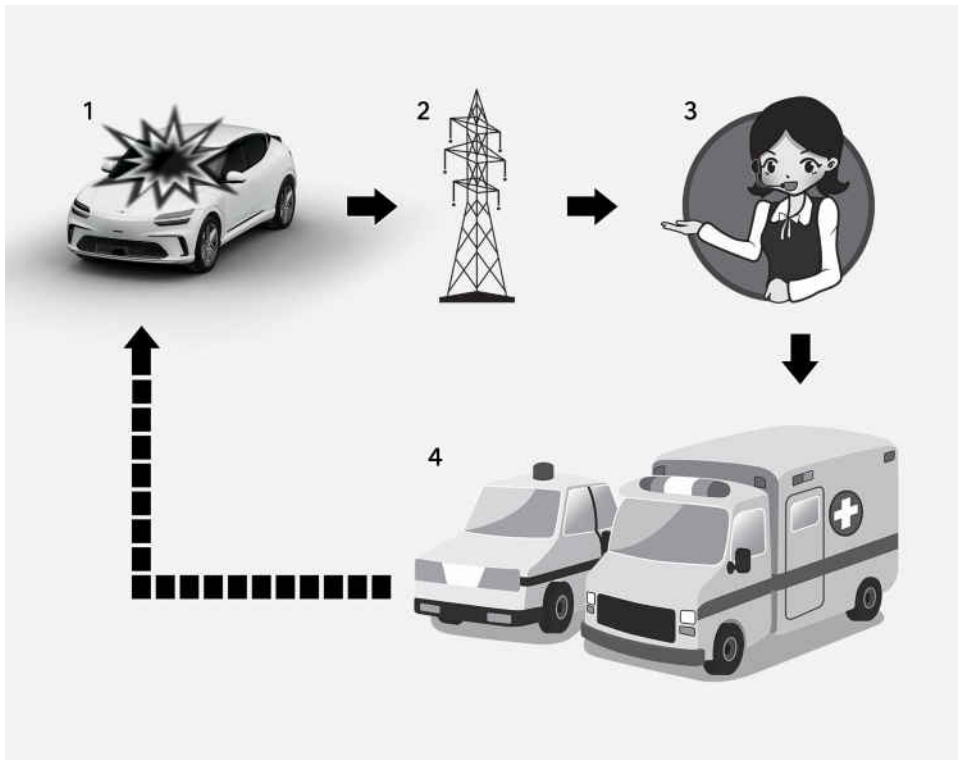
 if equipped

The Pan-European eCall system is an automatic emergency call service made in event of a traffic accident or other accidents on the roads of Europe. The system allows contacting with an officer of the single duty dispatch service in case of accidents on the roads of Europe. (only in countries with regulation on this system)

In case of manual registration of any accident, it is necessary to stop the vehicle and press the SOS button.

The Pan-European eCall system given conditions, stated in the Owner's Manual as well as Warranty and Service book transmits data to the public safety answering point including such information as vehicle location, vehicle type, vehicle identification number of the vehicle.

Once the data which is stored in the Pan-European eCall system is delivered to the rescue centre to assist the driver and passengers with proper rescue operations, the data will be deleted after rescue operation is completed.



1. Road accident
2. Wireless network
3. Public safety answering point
4. Rescue

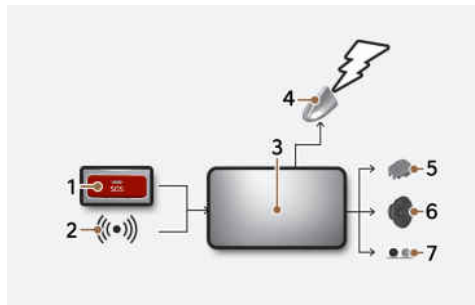
Elements of the Pan-European eCall System



1. SOS button: The driver/passenger makes an emergency call to the single duty dispatch service by pressing the button.
2. LED: The LED illuminates for 3 seconds when the Start/Stop button is in the DRIVE READY position. After that they will switch off at normal operation of the system.

If there are some problems in the system, the SOS indicator light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Description of the eCall in-vehicle system



1. SOS button
2. Crash signal
3. Emergency Call System
4. Antenna
5. Mic
6. Speaker
7. LEDs

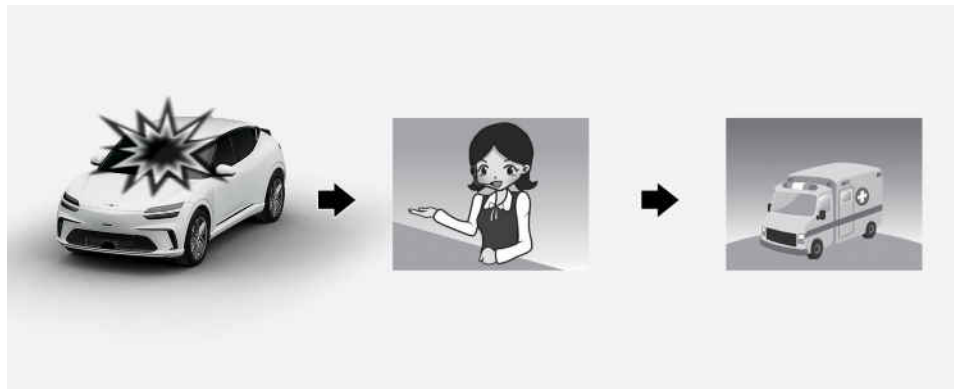
The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated by default. It is activated automatically by means of in-vehicle sensors in the event of a severe accident. It will also be triggered automatically when the vehicle is equipped with a TPS system which does not function in the event of a severe accident.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed.

In the event of a critical system failure that would disable the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle: refer to this section.

Automatic accident reporting



- 1 System operation in the event of a traffic accident
- 2 Connection with the public safety answering point
- 3 Emergency services

The Pan-European eCall device automatically makes an emergency call to the public safety answering point for proper rescuing operations in event of vehicle accident.

For proper emergency services and support the Pan-European eCall system automatically transmits the accident data to the public safety answering point when a traffic accident is detected.

In this case, the emergency call cannot be hung up by pressing the SOS button and the Pan-European eCall system remains connected until the emergency service officer, receiving the call, disconnects the emergency call.

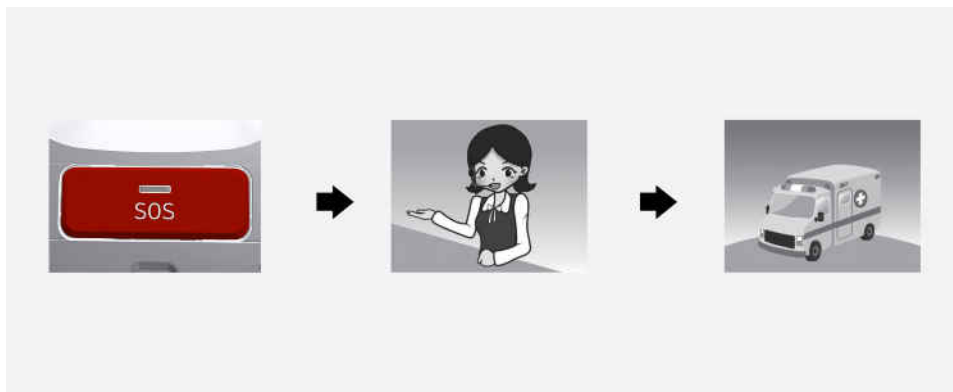
In minor traffic accidents the Pan-European eCall system may not execute an emergency call. However, an emergency call may be made manually by pressing the SOS button.



CAUTION

Operation of the system is impossible in case of absence of mobile transmission and GPS and Galileo signals.

Manual accident reporting



The driver or passenger manually can make an emergency call in the public safety answering point, by pressing SOS button to call the necessary emergency services.

A call to the emergency services through the Pan-European eCall system can be cancelled by pressing the SOS button again only before the call connection.

After activation of emergency call in the manual mode (for proper emergency services and support), the Pan-European eCall system automatically transmits the road accident data / or data on other accident to the officer of the public safety answering point (during emergency call) by pressing the SOS button.

If the driver or passenger accidentally presses the SOS button, it can be cancelled by pressing the button again. (For Russia)

It can be cancelled by pressing the button again in 3 seconds. It can't be cancelled after that. (Except Russia)

In case of road accident or other accident for activation of emergency call in manual mode it is necessary:

- 1 Stop the vehicle in accordance with traffic rules to ensure safety to yourself and other participants of road traffic.
- 2 Press the SOS button, when pressing the button SOS registration of the device in the wireless telephonic communication networks is carried out, minimum data set about vehicle and its location is collected in accordance with of the technical requirements of the device. After that connection with the officer of the Pan-European eCall system is made for clearing up reasons (conditions) of the emergency call.
- 3 After clearing up reasons of the emergency call, the officer of the public safety answering point sends emergency services and completes the emergency call.

If the emergency call is not carried out in accordance with the procedure, mentioned above, the emergency call will be considered as erroneous.



WARNING

- Emergency power supply of the Pan-European eCall system from the battery
 - The Pan-European eCall system battery supplies power during 1 hour in case main power source of the vehicle is cut off due to the collision during the emergency situations.
 - The Pan-European eCall system battery should be replaced every 4 years.
- If red LED illuminates in normal driving conditions, this can indicate malfunction of the Pan-European eCall system. We recommend to have the Pan-European eCall system checked at an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Otherwise correct operation of the Pan-European eCall system device, installed in your vehicle is not guaranteed. Owner of the vehicle incurs liability for consequences, occurred as a result of nonobservance of conditions, mentioned above.

- The Pan-European eCall system calls emergency services for assistance. Thus, any arbitrary removal or changes to the Pan-European eCall system settings may affect your driving safety. Also, it may even make an erroneous emergency call to the public safety answering point. Thereby, we kindly ask you not to make any changes by yourself or by the third parties in the settings of the equipment of the Pan-European eCall system, installed in your vehicle.
-

NOTICE

The mobile network operators will phase out the 2G and 3G in many countries around the world. The decision to phase out 2G and/or 3G network technology was solely at the discretion of mobile network operators and therefore beyond the control of Genesis Branded Vehicle. Due to decision of the network operators to discontinue their 2G and/or 3G, the automatic/manual eCall will no longer be available in the event of an accident or a situation requiring an emergency service.

Manufacturer Information

- Mobis: MPE UK Ansley Hall Drive, Birch Coppice Business Park, Tamworth, Warwickshire, B78 1SQ, UK
- Continental: Continental Engineering Services Ltd. Lancaster Road, Fradley Business Park, Fradley, Lichfield, WS 13 8RY

Information on data processing

Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC^{*1} and 2002/58/EC^{*2} of the European Parliament and of the Council, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC^{*3}.

Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency eCall to the single European emergency number 112.

*1: Directive 95/46/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 October 1995 on the protection of individuals with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (OJ L 281, 23.11.1995, p. 31).

*2: Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 July 2002 concerning the processing of personal data and the protection of privacy in the electronic

communications sector (Directive on privacy and electronic communications) (OJ L 201, 31.7.2002, p. 37).

*3: Directive 95/46/EC is repealed by Regulation (EU) 2016/679 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 27 April 2016 on the protection of natural persons with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (General Data Protection Regulation) (OJ L 119, 4.5.2016, p. 1). The Regulation applies from 25 May 2018.

Types of data and its recipients

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system may collect and process only the following data:

- Vehicle Identification Number
- Vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle)
- Vehicle propulsion storage type (petrol/diesel/CNG/LPG/electric/hydrogen)
- Vehicle recent locations and direction of travel
- Log file of the automatic activation of the system and its time stamp
- Any additional data (if applicable): Not applicable

Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country on which territory they are located, to first receive and handle eCalls to the single European emergency number 112. Additional information (if available): Not applicable

Arrangements for data processing

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that the data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered. Additional remarks (if any): Not applicable

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that it is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status. Additional remarks (if any): Not applicable

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that data in the system internal memory is automatically and continuously removed.

The vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so as always to keep maximum of the last three up-to-date locations of the vehicle necessary for the normal functioning of the system.

The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated. Additional remarks (if any): Not applicable

Modalities for exercising data subject's rights

The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

Contact service responsible for handling access requests (if any): Not applicable

9. Maintenance

This chapter explains how to inspect and maintain your vehicle, to ensure safe driving.

Information

- The illustrations are shown as a guide. The actual shape may differ from the illustration.
 - The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.
-

Important safety precautions

Cooling fan operation precaution



WARNING



The electric motor for the cooling fan may continue to operate or start up when the vehicle is not running and can cause serious injury. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the rotating fan blades of the cooling fan.

The electric motor for the cooling fan is controlled by vehicle coolant temperature, refrigerant pressure and vehicle speed. As the vehicle coolant temperature decreases, the electric motor will automatically shut off. This is a normal condition.

Safety precaution



WARNING

Performing maintenance on the vehicle can be dangerous. If you lack sufficient knowledge, experience, or proper tools and equipment to do the work, we recommend that it is done by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products. Before performing maintenance:

- Park your vehicle on level ground. Shift the vehicle to P (Park), apply the parking brake, and move the Start/Stop button to the OFF position.
 - Block the tyres (front and back) to prevent the vehicle from moving. Remove loose clothing or jewellery that can become entangled in moving parts.
 - Keep flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery parts.
-

Maintenance services

You should exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

We recommend that you have the vehicle maintained and repaired by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products. An authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products meets Genesis Branded Vehicle's high service quality standards and receives technical support from Genesis Branded Vehicle in order to provide you with a high level of service satisfaction.

Owner's responsibility

Maintenance service and record retention are the owner's responsibility.

You should retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service charts shown on the following pages. You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties.

Detailed warranty information is provided in your Service passport.

Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered.

Owner maintenance precautions

Inadequate, incomplete or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury. This chapter provides instructions only for the maintenance items that are easy to perform. Several maintenance procedures can only be done with special tools, therefore we recommend to contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Your vehicle must not be modified in any way. Such modifications may adversely affect the performance, safety or durability of your vehicle and may, in addition, violate conditions of the limited warranties covering the vehicle.

NOTICE

Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For information, read the separate Service passport provided with the vehicle. If You're unsure about any service or maintenance procedure, we recommend to contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Owner maintenance

The following lists are vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed by the owner or an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products at the frequencies indicated to help ensure safe and dependable operation of your vehicle.

Any adverse conditions should be brought to the attention of your authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products as soon as possible.

These Owner Maintenance vehicle checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labour, parts and lubricants used.

The electric control system in the vehicle may cause malfunction or other negative impact on the artificial heart and the artificial internal organs. Be sure to inquire the impact of the electric control system on the artificial organs from the medical product corporation.

Owner maintenance schedule

When you stop for charging:

- Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir.
- Check the windscreen washer fluid level.
- Check for low or under-inflated tyres.



WARNING

Be careful when checking your coolant level when the motor compartment is hot. This may result in coolant being blown out of the opening and cause serious burns and other injuries.

Whilst operating your vehicle:

- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice if there is any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or pulls to one side when travelling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel or hard-to-push brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your gear shift occurs, check the reducer fluid level.
- Check the shift gear P (Park) function.
- Check the parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

At least monthly:

- Check coolant level in the coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the stoplights, turn signals and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tyres including the spare for tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.

- Check for loose wheel bolts.

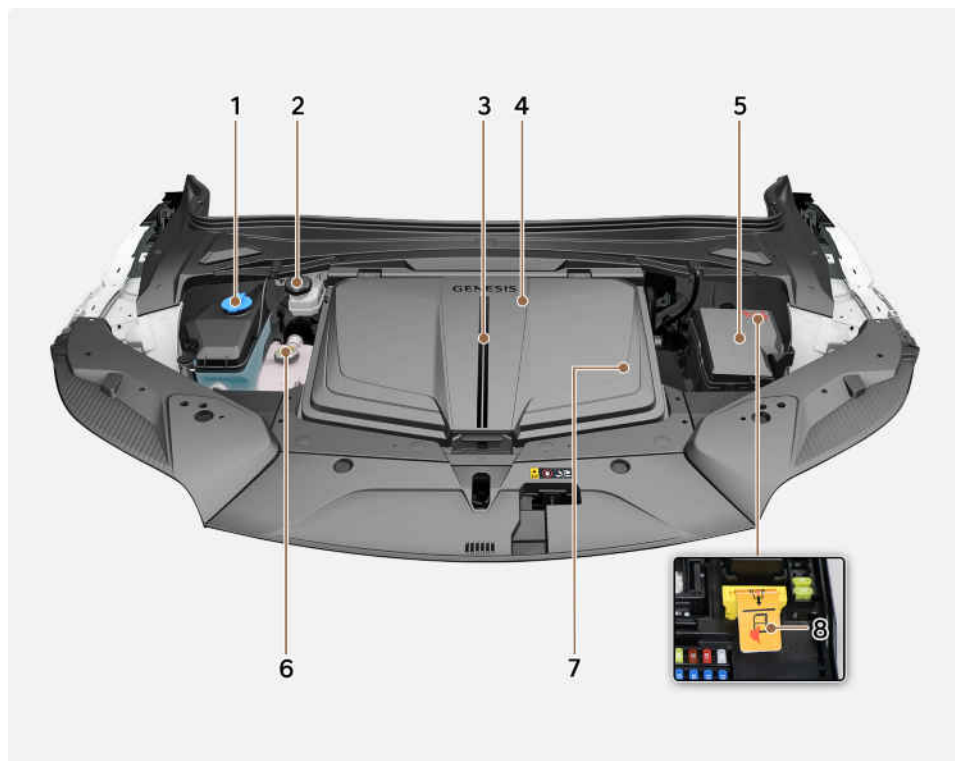
At least twice a year: (for example, every Spring and Autumn)

- Check radiator, heater and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check windscreen washer spray and wiper operation. Clean wiper blades with a clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check headlight alignment.
- Check the seat belts for wear and function.

At least once a year:

- Clean body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate door hinges and bonnet hinges.
- Lubricate door and bonnet locks and latches.
- Lubricate door rubber weather strips.
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Inspect and lubricate the shift gear linkage and controls.
- Clean the battery (12 V) and terminals.
- Check the brake fluid level.

Motor compartment



1. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir
2. Brake fluid reservoir
3. Front boot
4. Cabin air filter
5. Fuse box
6. Coolant reservoir
7. 12 V battery
8. High voltage cut-off switch

Vehicle inspection and maintenance

Coolant

Checking the coolant level

Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.

The coolant level is influenced by the temperature. Before checking or refilling the coolant, turn the vehicle off.

The coolant level should be filled between the MAX and the MIN marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the motor is cool.

If frequent additions are required, we recommend that you see an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products for a cooling system inspection.

WARNING



- Check the coolant level when the motor compartment is cooled. Coolant level is influenced by temperature, and if the coolant reservoir cap is removed when coolant temperature is high, hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure causing serious injury.
- Make sure the coolant cap is properly closed after refilling coolant. Otherwise the motor could be overheated whilst driving.

Check if the coolant cap label is straight in front and the tiny protrusions inside the coolant cap is securely interlocked.



Recommended coolant

- When adding coolant, use only deionized water, distilled water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory.
- An incorrect coolant mixture can result in severe malfunction or motor damage.
- Do not use alcohol or methanol coolant or mix them with the specified coolant.

- Do not use a solution that contains more than 60 % antifreeze or less than 35 % antifreeze, which would reduce the effectiveness of the solution.

For mixing percentage, refer to the following table:

Ambient Temperature	Mixture Percentage (volume)	
	Antifreeze	Water
-15 °C (5 °F)	35	65
-25 °C (-13 °F)	40	60
-35 °C (-31 °F)* ¹	50	50
-45 °C (-49 °F)	60	40

*1: If in doubt about the mix ratio, a 50 % water and 50 % antifreeze mix is the easiest to mix together as it will be the same quantity of each. It is suitable to use for most temperature ranges of -35 °C (-31 °F) and higher.

Changing coolant

We recommend that you have the coolant changed by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products according to the maintenance schedule at the beginning of this chapter.



WARNING

Do not use coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.

Coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Coolant may also cause damage to paint and body trim.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to motor parts, put a thick towel around the coolant cap before refilling the coolant to prevent the coolant from overflowing into motor parts.

Brake fluid

Checking the brake fluid level



Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level should be between MAX and MIN marks on the side of the reservoir.

Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake fluid contamination.

If the level is low, add fluid to the MAX level. The level will fall with accumulated mileage. This is a normal condition associated with the wear of the brake linings.

If the fluid level is excessively low, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.



WARNING

- If the brake system requires frequent additions of fluid this could indicate a leak in the brake system. We recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
 - Do not let brake fluid into your eyes. If brake fluid gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention.
-

NOTICE

- Do not allow brake fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, as it will result in paint damage.
- NEVER use brake fluid which has been exposed to open air for an extended time, as its quality cannot be guaranteed.
- Do not use the wrong type of brake fluid. A few drops of mineral based oil in your brake system can damage brake system parts.

Use only the specified brake fluid specified in the **Recommended lubricants and capacities**.

Reducer fluid

There is no reducer fluid level gauge in the vehicle. Check the reducer fluid every 40,000 mi. (60,000 km) regularly. If the vehicle is driven under severe condition, check the maintenance under severe usage condition and we recommend that have you to consult an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Washer fluid

Checking the washer fluid level



Check the fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir and add fluid if necessary. Plain water may be used if washer fluid is not available. However, use washer solvent with antifreeze characteristics in cold climates to prevent freezing.



WARNING

To prevent serious injury or death, take the following safety precautions when using washer fluid:

- Do not use coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir. Coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident or damage to paint and body trim.
 - Do not allow sparks or flame to contact the washer fluid or the washer fluid reservoir. Washer fluid may contain alcohol and can be flammable.
 - Do not drink washer fluid and avoid contact with skin. Washer fluid is harmful to humans and animals.
 - Keep washer fluid away from children and animals.
-

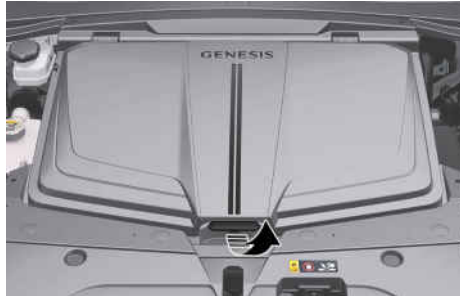
Cabin air filter

Filter inspection

The cabin air filter should be replaced according to the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is operated in severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long period, it should be inspected more frequently and replaced sooner. Replace the cabin air filter by following the procedure below and be careful to avoid damaging other components.

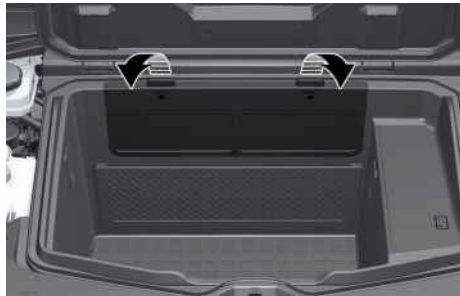
Filter replacement

- 1 Lift up the front boot cover whilst depressing the front boot lever.

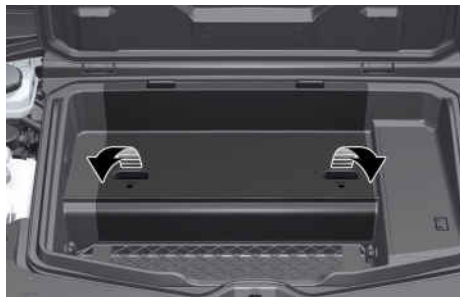


- 2 Remove the cover by pulling the front boot handle.

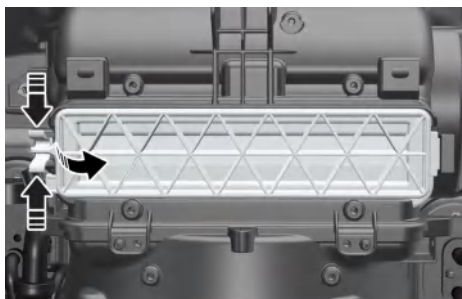
2WD



AWD

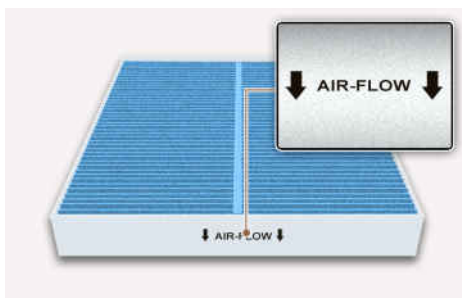


- 3 Press and hold the lock on the left side of the cover.



- 4 Pull out the cover and replace the cabin air filter.

NOTICE



Install a new cabin air filter in the correct direction with the arrow symbol (↓) facing downwards, to prevent noise and reduce effectiveness.

- 5 Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

Wiper blades

Contamination of the windscreen or wiper blades with foreign substances may reduce the effectiveness of the windscreen wipers.

If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with glass cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked. Replace the wipers with new ones.

NOTICE

- To prevent damage to the wiper blades, arms, or other components, do not:
 - Use petrol, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.
 - Attempt to move the wipers manually.
 - To prevent damage:
 - Never use non-specified wiper blades.
 - Lift the wiper arms when in the top wiping position.
 - Always return the wiper arms to the windscreen before driving.
-

Front windscreen wiper blade replacement

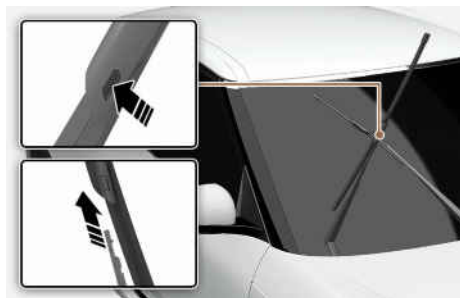


This vehicle has a "hidden" wiper design that cannot be lifted when in their bottom resting position.

Within 20 seconds of turning off the vehicle, push and hold the wiper lever down to the MIST (or 1x) position for about 2 seconds until the wipers move to the top wipe position.

- At this time you can lift the wipers off the windscreen.

- 1 Lift the wipers off the windscreen.
- 2 Disassemble it by pulling upward whilst pressing the groove located on the side of the wiper blade.



- 3 Install a new wiper blade by placing it in the wiper arm and pressing it inwards until you hear a "click" sound.



- 4 Gently put the wipers back down onto the windscreen.
- 5 With the Start/Stop button in the POWER ON position, turn the wiper switch to any ON position to return the wipers to the bottom resting position.

NOTICE

- Avoid the wipers from touching the windscreen when the wiper blade is disassembled to prevent windscreen damage.
 - The wiper may not operate for about 10 seconds if the wiper is operated without washer fluid or the blades are frozen to prevent damage to the motor.
-

Battery (12 V)



WARNING

To prevent **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH** to you or bystanders, always follow these precautions when working near or handling the battery:

- Always read and follow instructions carefully when handling a battery.



- Wear eye protection designed to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



- Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.



- Hydrogen is always present in battery cells, is highly combustible, and may explode if ignited.



- Keep batteries out of reach of children.



- Batteries contain sulfuric acid which is highly corrosive. Do not allow acid to contact your eyes, skin or clothing. If acid gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If acid gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the area. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.



- Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners. When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak.

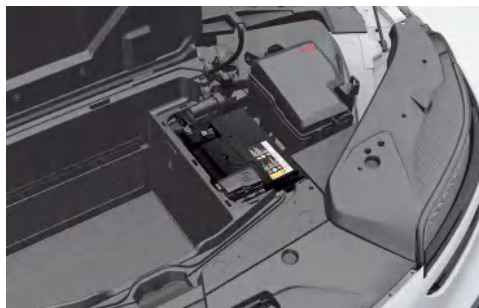
- Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle if your battery is frozen.
 - NEVER attempt to recharge the battery when the vehicle's battery cables are connected to the battery.
 - The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. NEVER touch these components with the READY indicator ON or when the Start/Stop button is in the DRIVE READY position.
-

NOTICE

Always follow these instructions when handling your vehicle's battery to prevent damage to your battery:

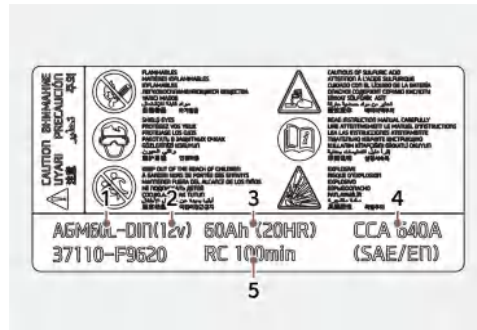
- When you do not use the vehicle for a long time in a low temperature area, disconnect the battery and keep it indoors.
 - Always charge the battery fully to prevent battery case damage in low temperature areas.
 - Prevent liquid from wetting the battery terminals. The performance of the battery may be degraded, and may cause injury. Be cautious when loading liquid in the motor compartment.
 - Do not tilt the battery.
 - If you connect unauthorised electronic devices to the battery, the battery may be discharged. Never use unauthorised devices.
-

For best battery service



- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled acid from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery cables.

Battery capacity label



1. The Genesis Branded Vehicle model name of battery
2. The normal voltage
3. The nominal capacity (in Ampere hours)
4. The cold-test current in amperes by SAE/EN
5. The nominal reserve capacity (in min.)

Battery recharging

By battery charger

Should your vehicle's battery become discharged either run the motor for at least 60 minutes driving. Alternatively you may connect a fully automatic regulated charger to the battery in the motor compartment.

WARNING

Always follow these instructions when recharging your vehicle's battery to avoid the risk of **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH** from explosions or acid burns:

- Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and move the Start/Stop button to the OFF position.
 - Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.
 - Always work outdoors or in an area with plenty of ventilation.
 - Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging.
 - The battery must be removed from the vehicle and placed in a well ventilated area.
 - Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate if the battery cells begin boiling violently.
 - The negative battery cable must be removed first and installed last when the battery is disconnected. Disconnect the battery charger in the following order:
 - 1 Turn off the battery charger main switch.
 - 2 Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.
 - 3 Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.
 - We recommend that you use a genuine Genesis approved battery or the equivalent specified for your vehicle when you replace the battery.
 - Absorbent Glass Matt (AGM) batteries are maintenance-free and we recommend that the AGM battery be serviced by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products. For charging your AGM battery, use only fully automatic battery chargers that are specially developed for AGM batteries.
 - When replacing the AGM battery, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
 - Do not open or remove the cap on top of the battery. This may cause leaks of internal electrolyte that could result in severe injury.
-

By jump starting

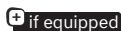
After a jump start from a good battery, drive the vehicle for 20-30 minutes before it is shutoff. The vehicle may not restart if you shut it off before the battery had a chance to adequately recharge. For more information on jump starting procedures, refer to the **Jump Starting (12 V Battery)**.

NOTICE



An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose of the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

12 V lithium auxiliary battery



The 12 V lithium auxiliary battery, which is integrated with the high voltage battery, is installed in the vehicle to supply power to lamps, wipers, and audio system.

12 V lithium auxiliary battery maintenance

If an abnormality such as high temperature or overcharging is detected in the 12 V lithium auxiliary battery, the warning message '**Check battery**' appears on the instrument cluster.



CAUTION

If the warning message appears, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Reset items

The following items may need to be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been removed:

- Current trip/After charging/Since last reset (refer to chapter 4)
- Integrated Memory System (refer to chapter 5)
- Power window (refer to chapter 5)
- Vision roof (refer to chapter 5)
- Climate control system (refer to chapter 5)
- Power tailgate (refer to chapter 5)
- Clock (refer to Infotainment system manual)
- Infotainment system (refer to Infotainment system manual)

Tyres and wheels



WARNING

Tyre failure may cause loss of vehicle control and result in a collision. To reduce risk of serious injury or death:

- Inspect your tyres monthly for proper inflation as well as wear and damage.
 - The recommended cold tyre pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar. Always use a tyre pressure gauge to measure tyre pressure. Tyres with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly causing poor handling.
 - Check the pressure of the spare every time you check the pressure of the other tyres on your vehicle.
 - Replace tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged. Worn tyres can cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control, or traction.
 - Always replace tyres with the same size, type, construction, and tread pattern as each tyre that was originally supplied with this vehicle. Using tyres and wheels other than the recommended sizes may cause unusual handling characteristics, poor vehicle control, or negatively affect your vehicle's Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) resulting in a serious accident.
-

Tyre care

For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum electric energy economy, always maintain recommended tyre inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.



All specifications (sizes and pressures) can be found on a label attached to the driver's side centre pillar.

Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures

Check all tyre pressures when the tyres are cold. Cold tyres mean the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than 1 mi. (1.6 km).



WARNING

- Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, vehicle handling, and minimum tyre wear.
 - Over-inflation or under-inflation can reduce tyre life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tyre failure that may result in loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision.
 - Severe under-inflation may lead to severe heat build-up, causing blowouts, tread separation, and other tyre failures that may result in loss of vehicle control resulting in a collision. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for a long time at high speeds.
 - Under-inflation may cause excessive wear, poor handling, and reduced electric energy economy. Wheel deformation is also possible. Keep your tyre pressures at the proper levels. If a tyre frequently needs refilling, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
 - Over-inflation produces a harsh ride, excessive wear at the centre of the tyre tread, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.
-



CAUTION

Warm tyres normally exceed the recommended cold tyre pressures by 28 to 41 kPa (4 to 6 psi). Do not release air from warm tyres to adjust the pressure. The tyres are under-inflated. For recommended inflation pressure, refer to the **Tyres and wheels**.

Tyre sidewall labelling

This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tyre and also provides the Tyre Identification Number (TIN) for safety standard certification. The TIN can be used to identify the tyre in case of a recall.



1. Manufacturer or brand name
2. Tyre size designation
3. Checking tyre life (TIN)
4. Genesis exclusive tyre
5. Tyre ply composition and material
6. Maximum permissible inflation pressure
7. Maximum load rating
8. Uniform tyre quality grading

Manufacturer or brand name

Manufacturer or brand name is shown.

Tyre size designation

A tyre's sidewall is marked with a tyre size designation. You need this information when selecting replacement tyres for your vehicle.

Example tyre size designation:

(These numbers are provided as an example only. Your tyre size designator may differ depending on your vehicle.)

- 235/55 R19 105W
 - 235: Tyre width in millimeters.
 - 55: Aspect ratio. The tyre's section height as a percentage of its width.
 - R: Tyre construction code (Radial).
 - 19: Rim diameter in inches.
 - 105: Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tyre can carry.
 - W: Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

Wheel size designation

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one.

Example wheel size designation:

- 8.0J X 19
 - 8.0: Rim width in inches.
 - J: Rim contour designation.
 - 19: Rim diameter in inches.

Tyre speed ratings

The speed rating is part of the tyre size designation on the sidewall of the tyre. This symbol corresponds to that tyre's designed maximum safe operating speed.

Speed Rating Symbol	Maximum Speed
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (300 km/h)

Checking tyre life (TIN)

Any tyres that are over six years old, based on the manufacturing date, must be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tyre sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT Code.

The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code. The front part of the DOT shows a plant code number, tyre size and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

Example DOT:

DOT XXXX XXXX 1525

- 15: the week of manufacture
- 25: the year of manufacture

Genesis exclusive tyre

Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends that tyres designed specifically for Genesis vehicles be used. You may find the marking 'GOE' (Genesis Original Equipment) embossed on the tyre sidewall.

Tyre ply composition and material

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric in the tyre. Tyre manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tyre, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

The letter 'R' means radial ply construction. The letter 'D' means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter 'B' means belted-bias ply construction.

Maximum permissible inflation pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tyre. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure. Refer to the Tyre and Loading Information label for recommended inflation pressure.

Maximum load rating

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tyre. When replacing the tyres on the vehicle, always use a tyre that has the same load rating as the factory installed tyre.

Uniform tyre quality grading

 If equipped

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tyre sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

Example tyre quality grading:

TREADWEAR 200

TRACTION AA

TEMPERATURE A

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tyre when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tyre graded 150 would wear one-and-a-half times (1½) as well on the government course as a tyre graded 100.

The relative performance of tyres depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

These grades are molded on the sidewalls of passenger vehicle tyres. The tyres available as standard or optional equipment on your vehicle may differ depending on the grade.

Traction - AA, A, B & C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tyre's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tyre marked C may have poor traction performance.



WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tyre is based on straight ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature - A, B & C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C representing the tyre's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature may cause the material of the tyre to degenerate and reduce tyre life, and excessive temperature may lead to sudden tyre failure. Grades A and B represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.



WARNING

The temperature grade for this tyre is established for a tyre that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, over-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, may cause heat build-up and possible sudden tyre failure.

Check tyre inflation pressure

Check your tyres, at least once a month.

Use a good quality tyre pressure gauge to check the tyre pressure. You cannot tell if your tyres are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tyres may look properly inflated when they are underinflated.

How to check

- 1 Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.
- 2 Press the tyre gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement.
 - If the cold tyre inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tyre and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary.
 - If the pressure is low, add air until it reaches the recommended pressure.
 - If you overfill the tyre, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the centre of the tyre valve. Recheck the tyre pressure with the tyre gauge.
- 3 Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture may get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

Wheel alignment and tyre balance

The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory, and you may not need to have your wheels aligned again. If you notice unusual tyre wear or your vehicle pulling to one side, the alignment may need to be adjusted.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

NOTICE

Only use approved wheel weights or your vehicle's aluminium wheels may be damaged.

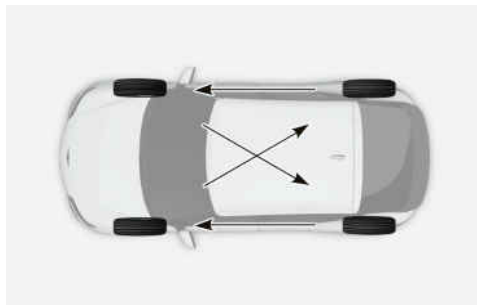
Tyre rotation

To equalize tread wear, Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends that the tyres be rotated every 20,000 mi. (30,000 km) or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tyres for correct balance.

When rotating tyres, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tyre pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking, or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of the

tyre. Replace the tyre if you find any of these conditions. Replace the tyre if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tyre pressures to specification and check nut torque (proper torque is 101-116 lbf·ft (14-16 kgf·m)).



Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tyres are rotated.



WARNING

- Do not use the compact spare tyre for tyre rotation.
 - Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tyres under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics that may cause loss of vehicle control and result in a collision.
-

Information

When installing an unsymmetrical tyre, install the side marked outside facing out.

Tyre maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps decrease the tyre wear. If you find a tyre is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment. When you have new tyres installed, make sure they are balanced. This may increase ride comfort and tyre life. Additionally, a tyre must always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.

Tyre replacement



1. Tread wear indicator

If the tyre is worn evenly, a tread wear indicator appears as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1/16 in. (1.6 mm) of tread left on the tyre. Replace the tyre when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tyre.

Tyre traction

Tyre traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tyres or the tyres that are improperly inflated, or on slippery road surfaces. Replace the tyres when tread wear indicators appear. To reduce the possibility of losing control, slow down whenever there is rain, snow, or ice on the road.



WARNING

To reduce the risk of death or serious injury:

- Replace tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged. Worn tyres may cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control, and traction.
 - Always replace tyres with the same size as each tyre that was originally supplied with this vehicle. Using tyres and wheels other than the recommended sizes may cause unusual handling characteristics, poor vehicle control, or negatively affect your vehicle's Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS).
 - When replacing tyres (or wheels), it is recommended to replace the two front or two rear tyres (or wheels) as a pair. Replacing just one tyre may seriously affect your vehicle's handling.
 - Tyres degrade over time, even when they are not being used. Regardless of the remaining tread, Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends that tyres be replaced after 6 years of normal service.
 - Driving in hot climates or excessive loading may accelerate the tyre aging process.
-

Wheel replacement

When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width, and offset.

Tyre maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps decrease tyre wear. If you find a tyre is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

When you have new tyres installed, make sure they are balanced. This may increase ride comfort and tyre life. Additionally, a tyre must always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.

Low aspect ratio tyres



If equipped

The aspect ratio is lower than 50 on low aspect ratio tyres.

Because low aspect ratio tyres are optimized for handling and braking, their sidewall is a little stiffer than a standard tyre. Also low aspect ratio tyres tend to be wider and consequently have a greater contact patch with the road surface. In some instances they may generate more road noise compared with standard tyres.

CAUTION

Low aspect wheels and tyres are easily damaged. To reduce the risk of damage:

- When driving on rough roads, passing over a pothole, speed bump, manhole, or kerb stone, drive the vehicle slowly not to damage the tyres and wheels. Damage is not covered by your vehicle warranty.
 - Inspect the tyre condition and pressure every 1,800 mi. (3,000 km).
 - It is difficult to visually inspect for tyre damage with your eyes. If any damage is found, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products to replace the tyre.
-

Summer tyres

Genesis Branded Vehicle specifies summer tyres on some models to provide superior performance on dry roads. Summer tyre performance is substantially reduced in snow and ice. Summer tyres do not have the tyre traction rating M+S (Mud and Snow) on the tyre side wall. If you plan to operate your vehicle in snowy or icy conditions, Genesis Branded Vehicle recommends the use of snow tyres or all season tyres on all four wheels.

Other maintenance items

Cooling system

Check cooling system components, such as radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

Coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

Reducer fluid

The reducer fluid should be inspected according to the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

Brake hoses and lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

Brake fluid

Check the brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. The level should be between the MIN and the MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 4 specification.

Brake discs, pads, calipers and rotors

Check the pads, the disc, and the rotor for any excessive wear-out. Inspect calipers for any fluid leakage.

For more information on checking the pads or lining wear limit, visit <http://service.hyundai-motor.com>

Suspension mounting bolts

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint

With the vehicle stopped and the vehicle off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel. Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage.

Replace any damaged parts.

Drive shafts and related

Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

Air conditioning refrigerant

Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.

Fuses

A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses. This vehicle has 2 fuse panels, one located in the driver's side panel bolster, the other in the motor compartment.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse is melted or broken.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel.



WARNING

Never replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.

- A higher capacity fuse may cause damage and possibly cause a fire.
 - Do not install a wire or aluminium foil instead of the proper fuse - even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and possibly a fire.
-



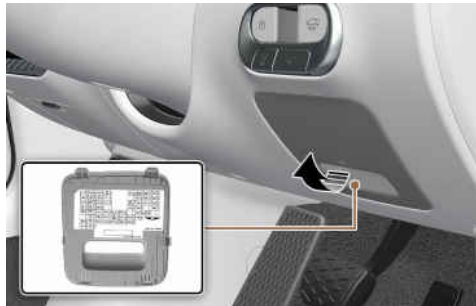
CAUTION

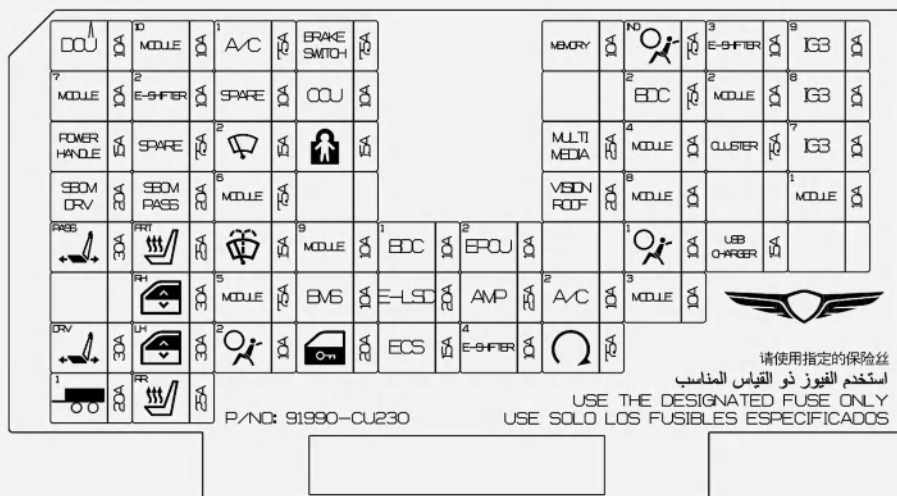
Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because it may cause a short circuit and damage the system.

Information

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. When you inspect the fuse panel on your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label in your vehicle. Inside the fuse panel cover, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay names and ratings.

Instrument panel fuse panel





Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
DCU	DCU	10 A	DCU
MODULE 10	10 MODULE	10 A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.1), UIP Sensor, Active Air Flap Unit LH/RH
A/C 1	¹ A/C	7.5 A	A/C Controller, A/C Control Module
BRAKE SWITCH	BRAKE SWITCH	7.5 A	BDC, Stop Lamp Switch
MEMORY	MEMORY	10 A	BDC, Head-Up Display, Security Indicator, Front Monitor, ADAS Unit (Parking), A/C Controller, Foot Mood Lamp LH/RH, Smart Ambient Light Control Unit, Smart Phone Wireless Charger (Mood Lamp), A/C Control Module,

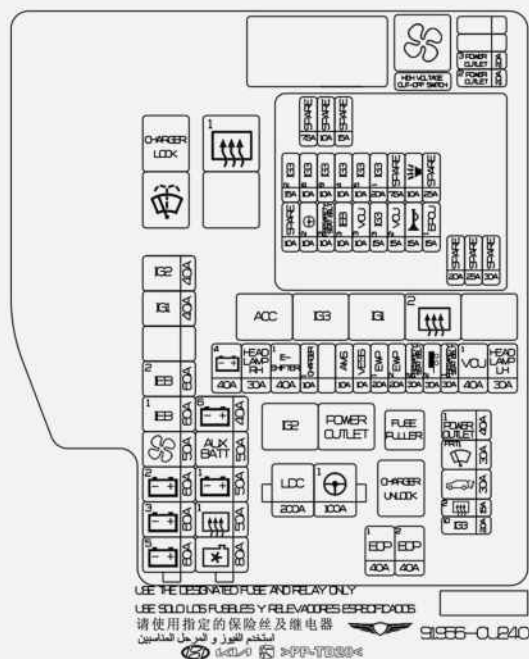
Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
			Rear Corner Radar LH/RH, Driver Door Mood Lamp #1/2/3 (Handle/Garnish/Pocket), Passenger Door Mood Lamp #1/2/3 (Handle/Garnish/Pocket), Rear Door Mood Lamp LH/RH #1/2 (Handle/Garnish)
AIRBAG IND	^{IND} 	7.5 A	Overhead Console
E-SHIFTER 3	³ E-SHIFTER	10 A	Electronic ATM Shift Dial, SCU
IG3 9	⁹ IG3	10 A	BMS, Rear Inverter
MODULE 7	⁷ MODULE	10 A	Steering Tilt & Telescopic Unit, ICCU Unit (In Cabin Cam), Driver/Passenger Door DSM Monitor
E-SHIFTER 2	² E-SHIFTER	10 A	Electronic ATM Shift Dial
CCU	CCU	10 A	CCU
BDC 2	² BDC	7.5 A	BDC
MODULE 2	² MODULE	10 A	Stop Lamp Switch, CCU, DCU
IG3 8	⁸ IG3	10 A	VCMS, CCU, SCU, ICCU, V2L Unit, Console Switch, Rear Electronic Oil Pump
POWER HANDLE	POWER HANDLE	15 A	Steering Tilt & Telescopic Unit
FRT WIPER 2	² 	15 A	Multifunction Switch
CHILD LOCK		15 A	Child Lock/Unlock Relay

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
MULTI MEDIA	MULTI MEDIA	25 A	CCIC Head Unit
MODULE 4	4 MODULE	10 A	CCIC Head Unit, ICCU Unit (In Cabin Cam), Dash Cam Unit, CCIC Keyboard, Electro Chromic Mirror, AMP, Driver/Passenger Power Seat Module, Face Recognition Unit, Smart Phone Wireless Charger
CLUSTER	CLUSTER	7.5 A	Head-Up Display, Front Monitor
IG3 7	7 IG3	10 A	A/C Controller, PM Sensor, Front Monitor, A/C Control Module, Incar Temperature Sensor, DCU, CCIC Head Unit, A/C PTC Heater
SBCM DRV	SBCM DRV	20 A	Driver SBCM
SBCM PASS	SBCM PASS	20 A	Passenger SBCM
MODULE 6	6 MODULE	7.5 A	Head Lamp LH/RH, 12V Lithium Auxiliary Battery
VISION ROOF	VISION ROOF	20 A	Vision Roof Unit
MODULE 8	8 MODULE	10 A	Driver/Passenger Door DSM Monitor, Multifunction Switch, Driver Power Window Switch
MODULE 1	1 MODULE	10 A	Face Recognition Unit, Center Control Panel, BDC, CCU, DCU, P/R Junction Block, CCIC Head Unit, P/R Junction Block (RLY.12), Front Monitor, ADAS Unit (Parking), Dash Cam Unit, AMP
POWER SEAT (PASS)	PASS 	30 A	Passenger Power Seat Switch, Passenger Power Seat Module
SEAT HEATER (FRT)	FRT 	25 A	Driver Power Seat Module, Passenger Power Seat Module, Front Seat Warmer Control Module, Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
WASHER		15 A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.5)
MODULE 9	⁹ MODULE	10 A	UIP Sensor, Driver Power Window Switch, Power Tailgate Unit, Driver Lumbar Support Motor, Driver/Passenger Power Seat Switch, Driver/Passenger Power Seat Module, Front Seat Warmer Control Module, Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module, Driver Power Outside Mirror Switch, Driver/Passenger Door Outside Handle, Driver/Passenger Outside Mirror Unit, Face Recognition Unit, Charging Door Module, Rain Sensor, CCIC Keyboard, Data Link Connector, Multifunction Switch
BDC 1	¹ BDC	10 A	Front UWB Unit LH/RH, Rear UWB Unit LH/RH, BDC, UWB Unit (Master/Slave)
EPCU 2	² EPCU	10 A	Rear Inverter
AIRBAG 1	¹ 	10 A	SRS Control Module
USB CHARGER	USB CHARGER	15 A	Console USB Charger Connector
POWER WINDOW (RH)	^{RH} 	30 A	Rear Safety Power Window Module RH [LHD] Passenger Safety Power Window Module [RHD] Driver Safety Power Window Module
MODULE 5	⁵ MODULE	7.5 A	BDC
BMS	BMS	10 A	Battery System Assembly (BMU)
E-LSD	E-LSD	20 A	E-LSD Unit
AMP	AMP	25 A	AMP

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
A/C 2	² A/C	10 A	A/C Control Module
MODULE 3	³ MODULE	10 A	E-LSD Unit, Rear Inverter (System), Rear Corner Radar LH/RH, ADAS Unit (Driving/Parking), Front Corner Radar LH/RH, Front Inverter (System), Steering Tilt & Telescopic Unit, Smart Cruise Control Radar, ECS Unit, Front View Camera, Crash Pad Switch
POWER SEAT (DRV)	DRV 	30 A	Driver Power Seat Switch, Driver Power Seat Module
POWER WINDOW (LH)	LH 	30 A	Rear Safety Power Window Module LH [LHD] Driver Safety Power Window Module [RHD] Passenger Safety Power Window Module
AIRBAG 2	² 	10 A	SRS Control Module
DOOR LOCK		20 A	Dead Lock Relay, Door Lock/Unlock Relay
ECS	ECS	15 A	ECS Unit
E-SHIFTER 4	⁴ E-SHIFTER	10 A	SCU
START		7.5 A	BDC, VPC
TRAILER 1	¹ 	20 A	CTM3
SEAT HEATER (RR)	RR 	25 A	Rear Seat Warmer Control Module

Motor compartment fuse panel



Motor compartment junction block

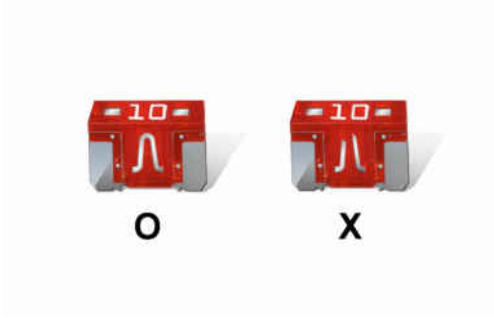
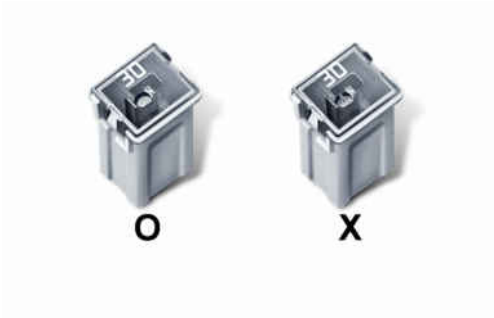
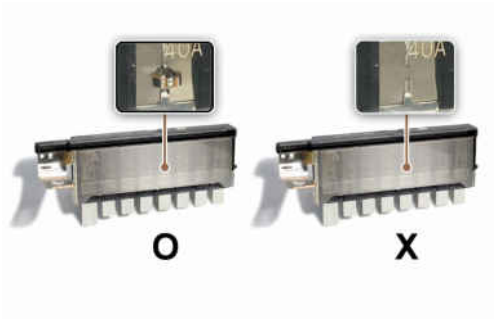
Type	Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
MULTI FUSE-1	LDC	LDC	200 A	P/R Junction Block (Fuse: F15, F16, F17, F18, F20, F21)
	MDPS 1	¹ 	100 A	MDPS Unit
MULTI FUSE-2	COOLING FAN		80 A	Cooling Fan Motor
	RR HTD 1	¹ 	50 A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.2)
	B+1	¹ 	50 A	PDC (Fuse: F29, F36, F38, F46, F48, F49, F53, F56)
	AUX BATT	AUX BATT	50 A	12V Lithium Auxiliary Battery
	B+6	⁶ 	40 A	PDC (IPS4, IPS5, IPS6, IPS7)
MULTI FUSE-3	B+5	⁵ 	60 A	PCB Block (IG3 Main Relay, Fuse - F02, F04)
	B+3	³ 	60 A	PDC (Fuse: F01, F02, F09, F10, F17, F18, F25, F26, F33, F34, F44, F51, F52, F58, F59)
	B+2	² 	60 A	PDC (Long Term Load Latch Relay, IPS13, Fuse - F04, F05, F12, F20, F21, F37, F47, F54, F55)
	BLOWER		50 A	Blower Relay
	IEB 1	¹ IEB	60 A	IEB Unit
	IEB 2	² IEB	60 A	IEB Unit

Type	Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
	IG1	IG1	40 A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.8, RLY.10)
	IG2	IG2	40 A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.13)
FUSE	EOP 1	¹ EOP	40 A	Rear Electronic Oil Pump
	EOP 2	² EOP	40 A	Front Electronic Oil Pump
	REAR HEATED 2	² 	15 A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.7)
	TAILGATE OPEN		30 A	Power Tailgate Unit
	FRT WIPER 1	FRT1 	30 A	Wiper Motor
	POWER OUTLET 1	¹ POWER OUTLET	40 A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.12)
	B+4	⁴ 	40 A	PDC (IPS2, IPS12)
	HEAD LAMP RH	HEAD LAMP RH	30 A	Head Lamp RH
	E-SHIFTER 1	¹ E-SHIFTER	40 A	SCU
	CHARGER 1	¹ CHARGER	10 A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.3, RLY.11), ICCU, VCMS
	AMS	AMS	10 A	12 V Battery Sensor

Type	Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
	VESS	VESS	10 A	VESS Unit
	EWP 1	¹ EWP	20 A	Electronic Water Pump #1 (HV Battery)
	EWP 2	² EWP	20 A	Electronic Water Pump #2 (HV Battery)
	PRESAFETY SEAT BELT 2	² PRESAFETY SEAT BELT	30 A	Preactive Seat Belt Unit
	TRAILER 2	² 	30 A	CTM (CAN Type Trailer Module)
	PRESAFETY SEAT BELT 1	¹ PRESAFETY SEAT BELT	30 A	Preactive Seat Belt Unit
	VCU 1	¹ VCU	40 A	VPC
	HEAD LAMP LH	HEAD LAMP LH	30 A	Head Lamp LH
	POWER OUTLET 2	² POWER OUTLET	20 A	Luggage Power Outlet
	POWER OUTLET 3	³ POWER OUTLET	20 A	Front Power Outlet
	IG3 2	² IG3	15 A	VPC
	IG3 6	⁶ IG3	10 A	Cooling Fan Motor, Front Electronic Oil Pump
	IG3 4	⁴ IG3	10 A	Electronic Water Pump #1, #2, A/C Coolant Valve, Front Inverter (System), Electronic A/C Compressor

Type	Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
	IG3 5	⁵ IG3	10 A	BMS Coolant 3Way Valve
	IG3 1	¹ IG3	20 A	PDC
	B/ALARM		10 A	PCB Block (Burglar Alarm Horn Relay)
	MDPS 2	² 	10 A	MDPS Unit
	PRESAFETY SEAT BELT 3	³ PRESAFETY SEAT BELT	10 A	Preactive Seat Belt Unit
	IEB 3	³ IEB	10 A	IEB Unit
	VCU 3	³ vcu	10 A	VPC
	IG3 3	³ IG3	15 A	Electronic Water Pump (Rear PE)
	VCU 2	² VCU	15 A	VPC
	HORN		15 A	PCB Block (Horn Relay)
	EPCU 1	¹ EPCU	15 A	Front Inverter (System)

How to check fuses by type

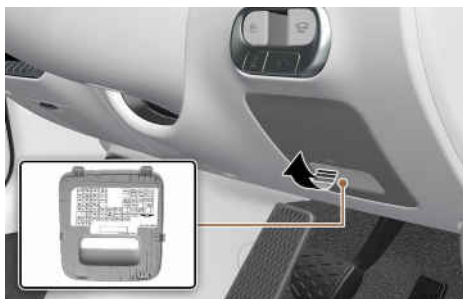
Type	O: Normal/X: Disconnection
Blade	
Cartridge	
Multi	

Replacing fuses

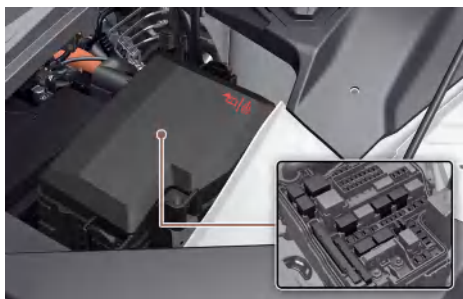
Instrument panel fuse replacement

- 1 Turn off the vehicle and all other switches.

- 2 Open the fuse panel cover. Refer to the label on the inside of the fuse panel cover to locate the suspected fuse location.



- 3 Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided in the motor compartment fuses panel.



- 4 Check the removed fuse and replace it if it is blown. Spare fuses are provided in the instrument panel fuse panels (or in the motor compartment fuse panel).
- 5 Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it is not tight, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

In an emergency, if you do not have a spare fuse, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle.

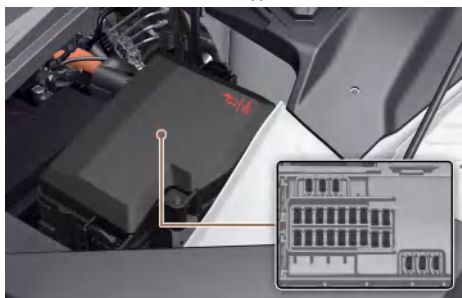
Motor compartment panel fuse replacement

Blade fuse/Cartridge fuse

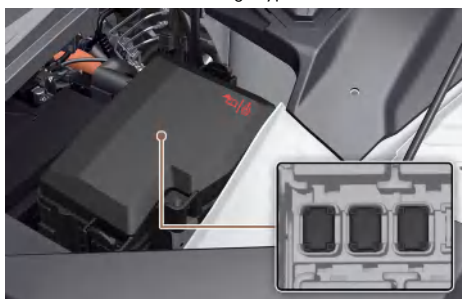
- 1 Turn off the vehicle and all other switches.
- 2 Remove the fuse panel cover by pressing the tap and pulling up. Refer to the label on the inside of the fuse panel cover to locate the suspected fuse location.

- 3 Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided in the motor compartment fuses panel.

Blade type



Cartridge type



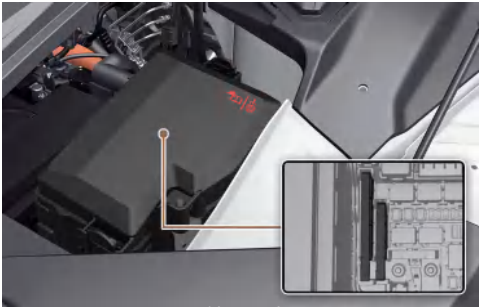
- 4 Check the removed fuse and replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the fuse puller in the motor compartment fuse panel.
- 5 Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it is not tight, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.



CAUTION

Always securely install the fuse panel cover. Water may contact the fuse and cause an electrical failure.

Multi fuse



If the multi fuse is blown, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

LED Lights

We recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products to replace most vehicle LED lamps. It is difficult to replace vehicle LED lamps because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the lamp. This is especially true for removing the headlight assembly to get to the lamp(s). Removing/installing the headlight assembly may result in damage to the vehicle.



WARNING

- Prior to working on a LED lamp, depress the foot brake, shift to P (Park), apply the parking brake, press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position and take the smart key with you when leaving the vehicle to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle and to prevent possible electric shock.
 - Be aware the LEDs may be hot and may burn your fingers.
-

NOTICE

- Be sure to replace the burned-out LED with one of the same wattage to prevent damage to the fuse or electrical wiring system.
 - To prevent damage, do not clean the headlight lens with chemical solvents or strong detergents.
-

Information

- The headlight and tail light lenses could appear to have condensation inside if the vehicle is washed after driving or if the vehicle is driven in wet weather. This condition is caused by a higher temperature inside the light and a cooler outside temperature. Moisture that condenses in the light is removed after driving with the light on. If the moisture is not removed, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- A normally functioning light may flicker momentarily to stabilize the vehicle's electrical control system. If the light goes out, or continues to flicker, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- The position light may not turn on when the position light switch is turned on, but the position light and headlight switch may turn on when the headlight switch is turned on. This may be caused by network failure or vehicle electrical control system malfunction. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- Adjust the headlight aim after an accident or the headlight is replaced.
- Traffic Change (for Europe)

The low beam light distribution is asymmetric. If you go abroad to a country with opposite traffic direction, this asymmetric part will dazzle oncoming car driver. To prevent dazzle, ECE regulation demand several technical solutions (for example, automatic change system, adhesive sheet, down aiming). This headlights are designed not to dazzle opposite drivers. So, you need not change your headlights in a country with opposite traffic direction.

Light desiccant

 if equipped

This vehicle is equipped with desiccant to reduce fogging inside the headlight, Daytime Running Light, parking light, tail light, and rear turn signal light due to moisture. The desiccant is consumable and its performance may change based on the used period or environment. If fogging inside the headlight, Daytime Running Light, parking light, tail light, and rear turn signal light due to moisture continues for a long time, we recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Replacing the LED light

If the LED does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

The LED light cannot be replaced as a single unit. A skilled technician should check or repair the LED light, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Headlight, Position light, Turn signal light, Daytime running light (DRL) replacement



1. Position light/Daytime Running Light (DRL)
2. Headlight (Low)
3. Headlight (High)
4. Turn signal light

Side repeater light replacement

Type A



Type B



Puddle light replacement

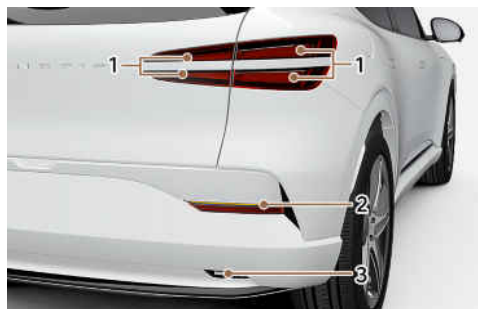
Type A



Type B



Rear combination light replacement



1. Tail/Stop light
2. Turn signal light
3. Reverse guide light

Rear fog light replacement

 if equipped



High mounted stop light replacement



License plate light replacement



Interior light replacement

Map lamp, room lamp, personal lamp, vanity mirror lamp, glove box lamp, mood lamp, foot lamp, front boot lamp, cargo area lamp, tailgate emergency lamp

Map lamp



Room lamp (without vision roof)



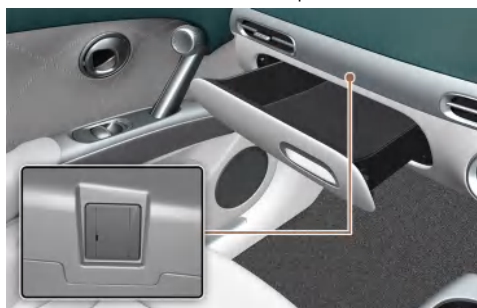
Personal lamp (with vision roof)



Vanity mirror lamp



Glove box lamp



Mood lamp/Foot lamp (if equipped)



front boot lamp



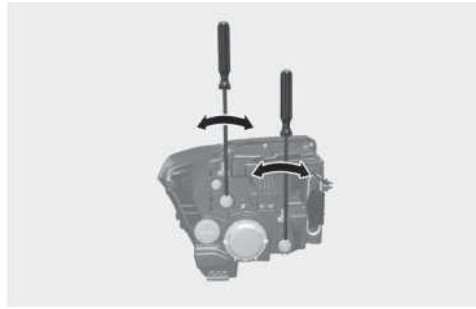
Cargo area lamp



Tailgate emergency lamp

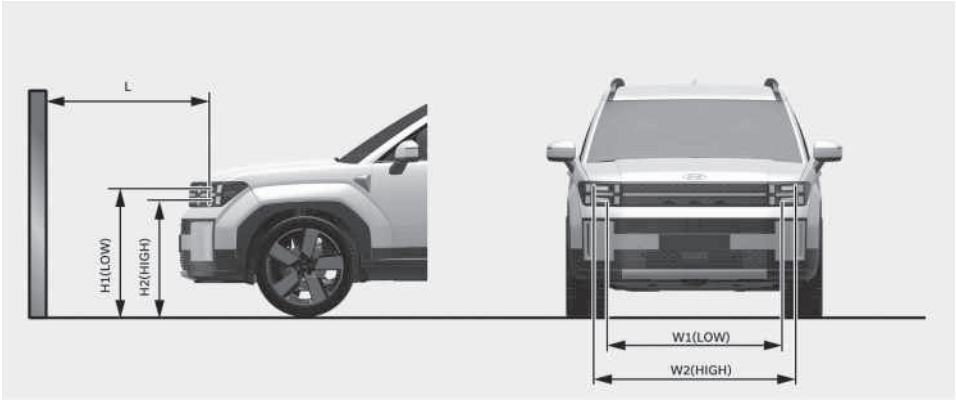


Headlight aiming



- 1 Inflate the tyres to the specified pressure and remove any loads from the vehicle except the driver and tools.
 - The vehicle should be placed on a flat floor.
- 2 Draw vertical lines (Vertical lines passing through respective headlight centres) and a horizontal line (Horizontal line passing through centre of headlights) on the screen.
- 3 With the headlight and battery in normal condition, aim the headlights so the brightest portion falls on the horizontal and vertical lines.
- 4 To aim the low beam left or right, turn the driver clockwise or counterclockwise.
To aim the low beam and high beam up or down, turn the driver clockwise or counterclockwise.

Aiming point



H1: Height between the headlight centre and ground (Low beam)

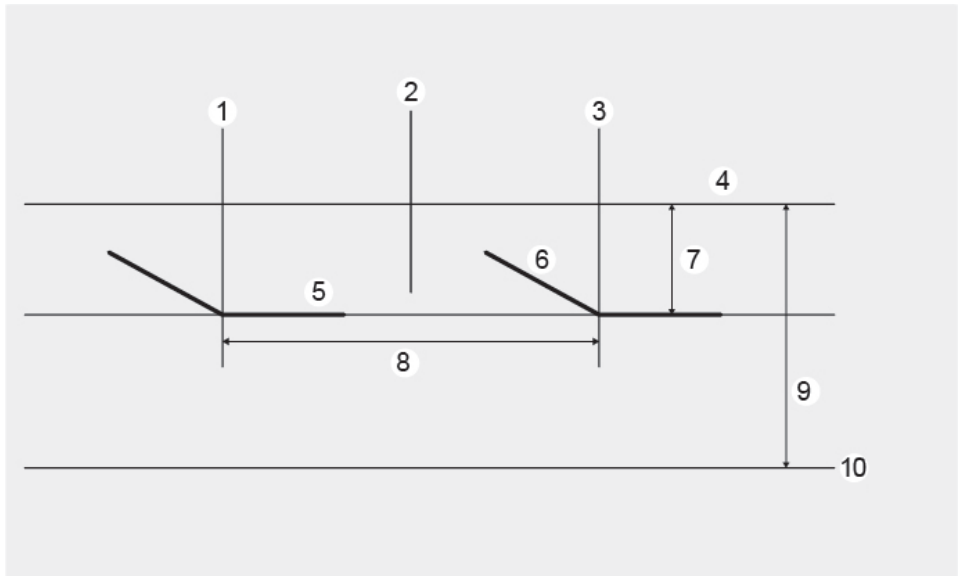
H2: Height between the headlight centre and ground (High beam)

W1: Distance between the two headlights centres (Low beam)

W2: Distance between the two headlights centres (High beam)

VEHICLE CONDITION	H1	H2	W1	W2
Without driver in. (mm)	32.60 (828)	29.17 (741)	53.15 (1,350)	52.79 (1,341)
With driver in. (mm)	32.28 (820)	28.86 (733)	53.15 (1,350)	52.79 (1,341)

Headlight low beam



1. Vertical line of the left headlight centre
2. Car axis
3. Vertical line of the right headlight centre
4. Horizontal line of headlight centre
5. Cut-off line of left headlight
6. Cut-off line of right headlight
7. 100 mm (Based on 10 m)
8. W1 (Low beam)
9. H1 (High beam)
10. Ground

- 1 Turn the low beam on without driver aboard.
- 2 The cut-off line should be projected in the cut-off line shown in the picture.
- 3 When aiming the low beam, vertical aiming should be adjusted after adjusting the horizontal aiming.
- 4 If headlight levelling device is equipped, adjust the headlight levelling device switch to '0'.

Information

The high beam is aimed simultaneously when aiming the low beam.

Appearance care

Exterior care

NOTICE

If you park your vehicle near a stainless steel sign or glass facade building, the vehicle's exterior plastic parts such as a bumper, spoiler, garnish, lamp or outside rearview mirror might be damaged due to sunlight reflected from the sign or building. To prevent damage of the exterior plastic parts, you should avoid parking in areas where light may be reflected or use a car cover. (The exterior plastic parts applied to your vehicle may vary.)

Exterior general caution

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

Finish maintenance

Washing

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.

If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clear and clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution, and similar deposits may damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately.

Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits. Use a mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.



WARNING

After washing the vehicle, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.

CAUTION



Water washing in the motor compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the motor compartment.

NOTICE

- High pressure water may damage front and rear cameras, sensors, vehicle trim, and boots (rubber or plastic covers) or connectors.
- Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents, or hot water, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body of the vehicle is warm.
- To prevent damage to the plastic parts, do not clean with chemical solvents or strong detergents.
- Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle to prevent damage.
- Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)

Automatic car wash which uses rotating brushes must not be used as this can damage the surface of your vehicle. A steam cleaner which washes the vehicle surface at high temperature may result the oil to adhere and leave stains that is difficult to remove.

Use a soft cloth (for example, microfiber towel or sponge) when washing your vehicle and dry with a microfiber towel. When you hand wash your vehicle, you must not use a cleaner that finishes with wax. If the vehicle surface is too dirty (sand, dirt, dust, contaminant, etc.), clean the surface with water before washing the vehicle.

Waxing

A good coat of wax helps protect your paint from contaminants. Wax the vehicle when water no longer beads on the paint.

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.

Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover usually strips the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.

NOTICE

- Do not wipe dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth to prevent scratching the finish.
 - Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminium parts to prevent discolouration or paint deterioration.
 - Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)
Do not use any polish protector such as detergent, abrasive, or polish. If wax is applied, remove the wax immediately using a silicone remover. If any tar or tar contaminant is on the surface, use a tar remover to clean.
Be careful not to apply too much pressure on the painted area.
-

Finish damage repair

Deep scratches or stone chips on the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal quickly rusts and may develop into a major repair expense.

NOTICE

- If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, make sure the body shop applies anticorrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.
 - Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)
It is impossible to modify only repaint the damaged area. The whole part must be repainted as necessary. If the vehicle is damaged and painting is required, we recommend that your vehicle be maintained and repaired by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products. Take extreme care, as it is difficult to restore the quality after the repair.
-

Bright-metal maintenance

- To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.
- To protect the surfaces of bright metal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative and rub to a high luster.
- During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

Underbody maintenance

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control may collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting may occur on underbody parts such as the frame and floor pan, even though they have been treated with rust protection.

Thoroughly flush the vehicle underbody and wheel openings with lukewarm or cold water once a month, after off-road driving and at the end of each winter. Pay special attention to these areas because it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It does more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it. The lower edges of doors, rocker panels, and frame members have drain holes that must not be allowed to clog with dirt. Trapped water in these areas may cause rusting.

Aluminium wheel maintenance

The aluminium wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

- Do not use abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminium wheels.
- Clean the wheel when it has cooled.
- Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, clean the wheels after driving on salted roads.
- Do not wash the wheels with high speed car wash brushes.
- Do not use any cleaners containing acid or alkaline detergents.

Corrosion protection

Protecting your vehicle from corrosion

By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, Genesis Branded Vehicle produces vehicles of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the longterm corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance are also required.

Common causes of corrosion

- Road salt, dirt and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the vehicle.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion or minor scrapes and dents which leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

High-corrosion areas

If you live in an area where your vehicle is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air and industrial pollution.

Moisture breeds corrosion

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the vehicle surfaces by moisture that is slow to evaporate.

Mud is particularly corrosive because it is slow to dry and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain moisture and promote corrosion.

High temperatures can also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed. For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your vehicle clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials.

To help prevent corrosion

- Keep your vehicle clean
 - The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your vehicle clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the vehicle is particularly important.
 - If you live in a high-corrosion area - where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, etc.-, you should take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your vehicle at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.
 - When cleaning underneath the vehicle, pay particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough

job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away will accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.

- When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels and frame members, be sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.
- Keep your garage dry
 - Don't park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your vehicle in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice or mud. Even a heated garage can contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.
- Keep paint and trim in good condition
 - Scratches or chips in the finish should be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.
 - Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

Interior care

Interior general precautions

Prevent caustic solutions such as perfume and cosmetic oil, from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discolouration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately.

NOTICE

- Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle because this may damage them.
 - When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats, etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/alkaline detergents, the colour of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.
 - During window tinting, make sure window tinting solution does not flow into electronic devices inside the vehicle. It may cause breakdown and malfunction of devices.
-

Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim

Vehicle interior surfaces

 if equipped

Remove dust and loose dirt from interior surfaces with a whisk broom or a vacuum cleaner. If necessary, clean interior surfaces with a mixture of warm water and mild non-detergent cleaner (test all cleaners on a concealed area before use).

Fabric

 if equipped

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots

immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If you do not pay attention to fresh spots immediately, the fabric may be stained and its colour may be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties may be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

NOTICE

Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.

Leather

 if equipped

NOTICE

- Wrinkles or abrasions which appear naturally from usage are not covered by warranty.
 - Belts with metallic accessories, zippers or keys inside the back pocket may damage the seat fabric.
 - Make sure not to wet the seat. It may change the nature of natural leather.
 - Jeans or clothes which could bleach may contaminate the surface of the seat covering fabric.
-

Leather is made from the outer skin of an animal, which goes through a special process to be available for use. Since it is a natural product, each part differs in thickness or density.

Wrinkles may appear as a natural result of stretching and shrinking depending on the temperature and humidity. Wrinkles may appear naturally from usage. It is not a fault of the products.

The seat is made of stretchable fabric to improve comfort. The parts contacting the body are curved and the side supporting area is high which provides driving comfort and stability.

- Caring for the leather seats
 - Vacuum the seat periodically to remove dust and sand on the seat. It will prevent abrasion or damage of the leather and maintain its quality.
 - Wipe the natural leather seat cover often with dry or soft cloth.
 - Use of proper leather protector may prevent abrasion of the cover and helps maintain the colour. Be sure to read the instructions and consult a specialist when using leather coating or protective agent.
 - Light coloured (beige, cream beige) leather is easily contaminated and the stain is noticeable. Clean the seats frequently.
 - Avoid wiping with wet cloth. It may cause the surface to crack.
- Cleaning the leather seats
 - Remove all contaminations instantly. Refer to instructions below for removal of each contaminant.
 - Cosmetic products (sunscreen, foundation, etc.)
Apply cleansing cream on a cloth and wipe the contaminated spot. Wipe off the cream with a wet cloth and remove water with a dry cloth.
 - Beverages (coffee, soft drink, etc.)

Apply a small amount of neutral detergent and wipe until contaminations do not smear.

- Oil

Remove oil instantly with absorbable cloth and wipe with stain remover used only for natural leather.

- Chewing gum

Harden the gum with ice and remove gradually.

- Handling prime napa leather (if equipped)

- Try to avoid excessive sunlight and heat exposure. Excessive sunlight and heat exposure naturally fades and dries out napa leather, causing wrinkles and discolouration. If the napa leather is wet with liquid, immediately clean it with lint-free cloth to minimise damage. Do not scratch the napa leather surface with a sharp object. If your napa leather seat is bright coloured, it may be contaminated or stained from dyed materials such as jeans.

Interior wooden trim

Use a wooden furniture protector (for example, wax, coating compound) to clean the interior wooden trim.

- Often wipe the interior wooden trim with a lint-free, clean cloth to maintain the unique wooden textures for a longer period of time.
- If you spill beverage (for example, water, coffee) over the interior wooden trim, immediately wipe it with clean, dry cloth.
- Sharp objects (for example, driver, knife), adhesive materials, tapes, or any strong impacts may damage the interior wooden trim.
- Forged wood is an eco-friendly wooden trim made from recycled wood chips. Due to these material characteristics, the grain direction is not constant and small dots or natural cracks may occur. These are natural appearance characteristics of real wood from the manufacturing method and are not appearance defects.



CAUTION

- If the coating finish over the interior wooden trim is removed, moisture may damage or change wood traits.
 - If the interior wooden trim is damaged, you may get a splinter from the wood surface. We recommend that you have the damaged interior wooden trim replaced by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
-

Cleaning the seat belt webbing

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap.



WARNING

Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken the seat belt.

Cleaning the interior window glass

If the interior glass surfaces need to be cleaned, use a glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.



CAUTION

Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage to the rear window defroster grid.

10. Vehicle information

This chapter provides additional information on the vehicle, such as the vehicle dimensions and vehicle identification information.

Information

- The illustrations are shown as a guide. The actual shape may differ from the illustration.
- The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

Vehicle specifications

Dimensions

Items		in. (mm)	
Overall length		178.9 (4,545)	
Overall width		74.4 (1,890)	
Overall height		62.2 (1,580) / 62.6 (1,590) ^{*1} / 62.8 (1,595) ^{*2}	
Tread	Tyre size	Front	Rear
	235/55 R19	64.3 (1,633)	64.6 (1,642)
	255/45 R20	64.1 (1,628)	64.4 (1,637)
	255/40 R21		
Wheelbase		114.2 (2,900)	

^{*1}: with roof rack
^{*2}: with shark fin antenna

Electric vehicle specifications

Items		Standard type		Performance type
		2WD	AWD	AWD
Motor (Front/ Rear)	Max. output (kW)	168	234	320/360 ^{*1}
	Max. torque (Nm)	350	605	700 ^{*1}

Items		Standard type		Performance type
		2WD	AWD	AWD
Battery (Lithium-ion)	Capacity (kWh)	84	84	84
	Voltage (V)	697	697	697
Charger (OBC)	Max. output (kW)	5p: 10.9 7p: 10.5		

*1: with boost mode

OBC: On-Board Battery Chargers

Tyres and wheels

Items	Tyre size	Wheel size	Inflation pressure kPa (psi)				Wheel bolt torque
			Normal load		Maximum load		Normal load
			Front	Rear	Front	Rear	[lb·ft (kgf·m, N·m)]
Full size tyre	235/55 R19	8.0J X 19	250 (36)	250 (36)	260 (38)	290 (42)	101-116 (14-16, 137-157)
	255/45 R20	8.5J X 20					
	255/40 R21	8.5J x 21					



CAUTION

When replacing tyres, ALWAYS use the same size, type, brand, construction, and tread pattern supplied with the vehicle. If not, it can damage the related parts or make it work irregularly.

NOTICE

- It is permissible to add 20 kPa (3 psi) to the standard tyre pressure specification if colder temperatures are expected soon.
Tyres typically lose 7 kPa (1 psi) for every 7 °C (12 °F) temperature drop. If extreme temperature variations are expected, recheck your tyre pressure as necessary to keep them properly inflated.
- Tyre inflation pressures may differ depending on changes in elevation (about 10 kPa (2.4 psi) for every mile (or kilometer) elevation change). If driving in areas of higher or lower elevation, be sure to check and adjust for proper tyre inflation.
- Do not exceed the maximum inflation pressure, as found on the sidewall of the tyre(s).

Load and speed capacity tyres

Items	Tyre size	Wheel size	Load capacity		Speed capacity	
			LI*1	lbs. (kg)	SS*2	mph (km/h)
Full size tyre	235/55 R19	8.0J X 19	105	2,039 (925)	W	168 (270)
	255/45 R20	8.5J X 20	105	2,039 (925)	W	168 (270)
	255/40 R21	8.5J X 21	102	1,874 (850)	Y	186 (300)

*1: LI: Load Index

*2: SS: Speed Symbol

Air conditioning system

Items		Weight of volume	Classification
Refrigerant	Type A	32 ± 0.9 oz. (900 ± 25 g)	R-1234yf
	Type B	34 ± 0.9 oz. (950 ± 25 g)	R-134a
Compressor lubricant		6.7 ± 0.35 oz. (190 ± 10 g)	POE

We recommend that you to contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products for more details.

Light source

Light source			Source type	Specification
Front	Headlight	Low	LED	LED
		High	LED	LED
	Turn signal light		LED	LED
	Position light		LED	LED
	Daytime running light		LED	LED
	Puddle light		LED	LED
	Side repeater light		LED	LED
Rear	Stop light		LED	LED

Light source		Source type	Specification
	Tail light	LED	LED
	Turn signal light	LED	LED
	Backup light	LED	LED
	License plate light	LED	LED
	High mounted stop light	LED	LED
	Fog light	LED	LED
Interior	Map lamp	LED	LED
	Room lamp (without vision roof)	LED	LED
	Personal lamp (with vision roof)	LED	LED
	Vanity mirror lamp	LED	LED
	Glove box lamp	LED	LED
	Mood lamp/Foot lamp	LED	LED
	Cargo area lamp	LED	LED
	Tailgate emergency lamp	LED	LED
	Front boot lamp	LED	LED

Recommended lubricants and capacities

To help achieve proper vehicle performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality.

These lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle.

Lubricant			Volume	Classification
Reducer fluid	2WD	Rear	2.99-3.08 Imp. qts. (3.4-3.5 ℓ)	HK ATF 6S SP4M-1
	AWD	Front	2.82-2.90 (3.2-3.3 ℓ)	
		Rear	2.99-3.08 Imp. qts. (3.4-3.5 ℓ)	
Coolant	Standard	2WD (168 kW)	15.35 Imp. qts. (17.45 ℓ)	Mixture of antifreeze and water (Phosphate-based Ethylene glycol coolant for aluminium radiator)
		AWD (74 kW + 160 kW)	15.20 Imp. qts. (17.28 ℓ)	
	Performance	AWD (160 kW + 160 kW)	15.22 Imp. qts. (17.30 ℓ)	
Brake fluid			As required	SAE J1704 DOT-4 LV, FMVSS 116 DOT-4, ISO 4925 CLASS-6

Vehicle load limit

Two labels on your driver's door side centre pillar show how much weight your vehicle was designed to carry: the Tyre and Loading Information Label and the Certification Label. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, from the vehicle's specifications and the Certification Label:

Base Kerb Weight

This is the weight of the vehicle including high voltage battery and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Vehicle Kerb Weight

This is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

Cargo Weight

This figure includes all weight added to the Base Kerb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

Gross Axle Weight (GAW)

This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle kerb weight and all payload.

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)

This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the Certification Label. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)

This is the Base Kerb Weight plus actual Cargo Weight plus passengers.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). The GVWR is shown on the Certification Label located on the driver's door sill.

Overloading



WARNING

The GAWR and the GVWR for your vehicle are on the Certification Label attached to the driver's (or front passenger's) door. Exceeding these ratings can cause an accident or vehicle damage. You can calculate the weight of your load by weighing the items (and people) before putting them in the vehicle. Be careful not to overload your vehicle.

Vehicle weight and luggage volume

Items	Standard type		Performance type
	2WD	AWD	AWD
Gross vehicle weight	5,534 lbs.	5,798 lbs.	5,897 lbs.

Items	Standard type		Performance type
	2WD	AWD	AWD
	(2,510 kg)	(2,630 kg)	(2,675 kg)
Luggage volume (SAE/VDA)	24 cu ft./15 cu ft. (680 ℓ/432 ℓ)		

Reference weight and distance when towing a trailer

The following table indicates the maximum trailer weight for your vehicle. Do not exceed the maximum allowable trailer weight. The maximum trailer weight includes the weight of the trailer, any cargo, and equipment or items attached to the trailer. The towing load in excess of these limits can seriously affect vehicle steering and performance, and may damage the motor and drivetrain.

Any additional weight, cargo, or accessories in your vehicle will reduce the maximum trailer weight and corresponding tongue load limits.

Items		With trailer package
Maximum trailer weight	With brake system	3,527 lbs. (1,600 kg)
	Without brake system	1,653 lbs. (750 kg)
Maximum permissible static vertical load on the coupling device		220 lbs. (100 kg)
Recommended distance from rear wheel centre to coupling point		33.9 in. (860 mm)

- The technically permissible maximum load on the rear axle(s) may be exceeded by not more than 15 % and the technically permissible maximum laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by not more than 10 % or 220.4 lbs (100 kg), whichever value is lower. In this case, do not exceed 62.1 mph (100 km/h) for vehicle of category M1 or 49.7 mph (80 km/h) for vehicle of category N1.
- When a vehicle of category M1 is towing a trailer, the additional load imposed at the trailer coupling device may cause the tyre maximum load ratings to be exceeded, but not by more than 15 %. In this case, do not exceed 62.1 mph (100 km/h) and increase the tyre inflation pressure by at least 0.2 bar.

* M1: passenger vehicle (9-seater or under)

* N1: commercial vehicle (3.5 ton or under)

Vehicle identifications

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

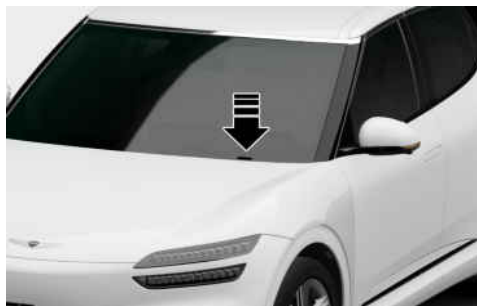
Frame number



The VIN is the number used in registering your vehicle and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.

The number is punched on the floor under the right front seat. To check the number, open the cover.

VIN label (if equipped)



The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the left side dashboard. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the windshield from outside.

Vehicle certification label



The vehicle certification label attached on the right front seat side centre pillar gives the VIN.

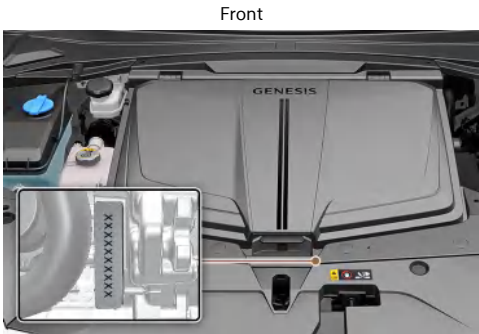
Tyre specification and pressure label



The tyres supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

The tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar gives the tyre pressures recommended for your vehicle.

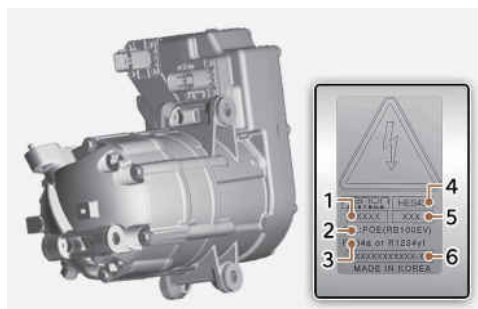
Motor number





The motor number are stamped as shown in the drawing.

Air conditioner compressor label



1. Lot number
2. Refrigerant oil
3. Refrigerant
4. Model
5. Serial number
6. Supplier part number

A compressor label informs you the type of compressor your vehicle is equipped with such as lot number, refrigerant oil, refrigerant, model, serial number, and supplier part number.

Vehicle data collection and event data recorders

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was travelling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

NOTICE

EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (for example, name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Declaration of conformity

 if equipped



CE CE 0678

The radio frequency components of the vehicle comply with requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.

Further information including the manufacturer's declaration of conformity is available on Genesis Branded Vehicle web site as follows:

<http://service.hyundai-motor.com>

Importer information (for Europe)

Genesis Motor Deutschland GmbH

Strahlenbergerstraße 110-112, 63067 Offenbach am Main, Germany

T +49 800 724 4161

genesis.com/de

Importer Information For United Kingdom



Name: Genesis Motor UK Limited

Address: Lantern House, 1 Marlow Road, Maidenhead, SL6 7AA, UK

Open source software notice

This vehicle contains software with open source licenses. Open source software information including the source code, copyright notices and referred license terms may be obtained on the website

<https://www.genesis.com/worldwide/en/opensource.html>.

Hyundai Motor Company will provide the open source code to you in storage medium such as CD-ROM for minimum charge covering the cost of performing source distribution upon email request to opensource@genesis.com within a period of 3 years from the date of product purchase.

Manufacturer Information for Antenna

- Winnercom Co.
 - Address: 1000 Great West Road, Brentford, TW8 9DW, UK
- Ace Technologies
 - Address: 47 Wynwards Road, Swindon, SN254ZP, UK
- INFAC Elecs
 - Address: Unit 6, Benford Court, Warwick, CV34 5DA, UK
- Molex
 - Address: Molex B.V., Ascent 1 Aerospace Boulevard, Farnborough, GU14 6XW, UK

